

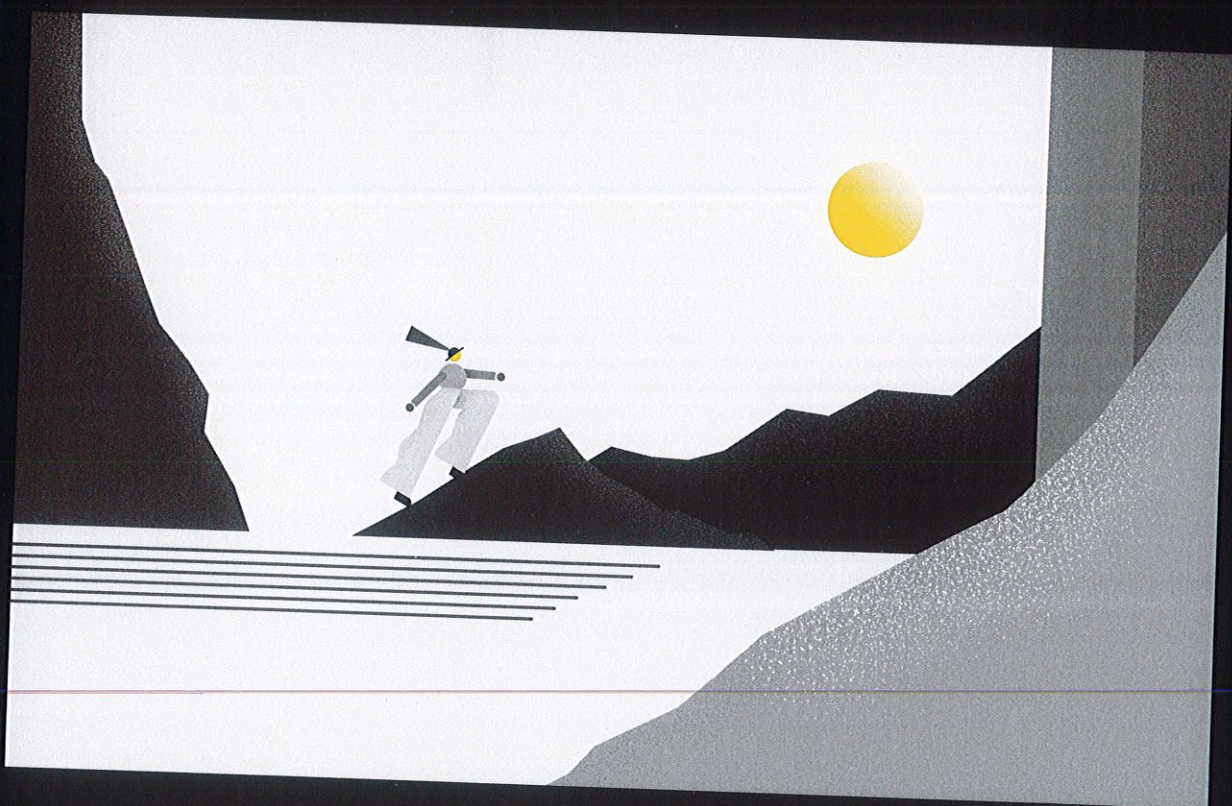
考虫

无考虫  
不青春

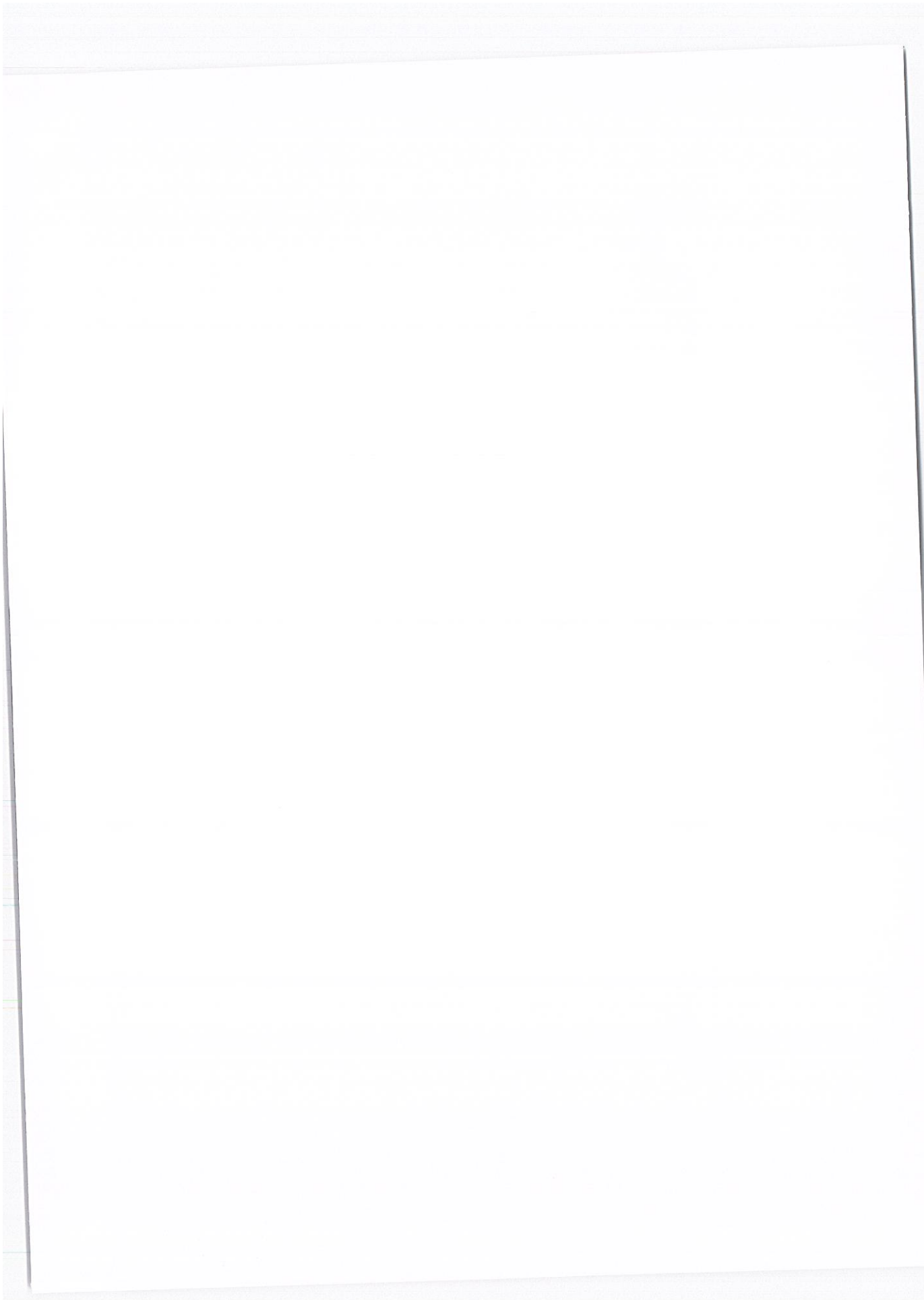
雅思分手指南系列

# Speaking module

口语篇

















每一个人的18岁都特别重要，不仅仅是因为18岁代表了成熟和责任，更因为18岁是一个有梦想也敢做梦的年龄。儿童时期的梦想过于虚幻天真，而成年人的梦想又过于急功近利。只有18岁所代表的青春让我们既有敢于梦想的勇气，又有实现梦想的决心。

2005年我18岁，和大家一样，我曾经也有一个属于18岁的梦想，那就是出国学习美术专业并成为一名画家，而且在这之前我也为之付出了近十年的努力和汗水。这个梦想曾经离我并不遥远，但人生从来不会如我们所愿。出于各种原因，我成了一名老师。掐指一算，我作为“老师”的日子已经十年了，而我每天的日常工作就是帮助“风华正茂怀揣梦想的你”实现出国学习的愿望。

在我超过一万个小时的大班还有VIP课程中，我见到过无数中国学生是那么全心全意、心无旁骛地期望自己的雅思成绩顺利过关，但同时又因为各种错误的学习方法而被自己的雅思成绩一次次地伤害。甚至有人发明出“雅思虐我千万遍，我待雅思如初恋”的口号，决心和勇气可嘉，但仔细想想多么悲凉！其实只要方法得当，一两次也就够了，何苦要考“千万遍”呢？

不过我理解这样悲凉的气氛和态度。中国有句老话“无知是福”，放到现在的雅思考试备考还是很有适用性的。和十年前相比，现在的考生对于雅思考试的了解程度已经很高。例如大家都知道中国考生的雅思平均分不高，根据British Council最新公布的数据显示，中国考生的雅思平均分为5.7分，口语单项平均分则为5.4分，并始终徘徊在世界倒数。虽然集合均分不代表个体表现，但是多多少少说明考试的难点更多地集中在口语这个拖后腿的单项。

这种残忍的事实往往让“烤鸭”们对考试有了先入为主的恐惧感，进而影响备考效果和心态。而有恐惧的地方就特别容易滋生所谓的“捷径”、“法宝”以及“谣言”。培训圈子里曾经流行过的“谣言”有很多，例如：某个考官或者某类考官（女性考官）一定会给口语打低分；某个单



词（例如：interesting）在考试时一定不能使用；口语考官如果对考生说“Good Luck！”意味着考生分数必定低于5分……不可否认，也许其中有些事情确实发生过，但是这种特例不应该作为一种规律进行总结，更不应该作为恐吓考生的武器。

“烤鸭”们一定要明白，只要方法得当，大家都是可以在有效的学习后获得高分的。那么考生应该从哪些方面下功夫并备考雅思口语呢？

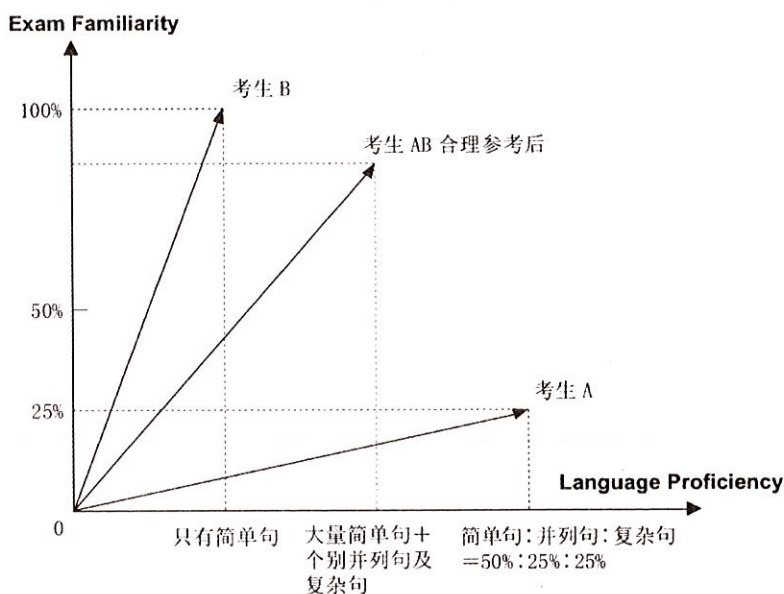
## 一、语言熟练度与考试熟悉度必须齐头并进

其实从本质上来说，雅思考试的任何单项都和以下两个方面有关系：“Language Proficiency（语言熟练度）”和“Exam Familiarity（考试熟悉度）”。只是熟悉考试题型和考法，或者只是英语很好，都不能保证大家获得高分。举个例子：

A 考生英语水平很好，在简单复习一周后，首次考雅思却成绩平平，表现一般。经过40天的培训和刷题，最终获得了高分。

B 考生英语水平很不好，已经考过多次雅思考试且间隔时间很短，经过90天的培训刷题以及大量单词背诵后再考，提分幅度较大。

如下图所示：



以上两个学生的首次雅思考试都失利了，但原因却是不一样的。



首先，A 考生英语水平很好，但是因为复习时间过短、对考试很不熟悉，考试成绩并不理想。但是经过 40 天的培训和刷题，考生对题目的考法、考点有了全新的认识，从而获得高分。这就是考生因为“Exam Familiarity”的提高而获得高分。

而 B 考生英语水平一般，即便多次考试也是没有提分效果的，因为，该考生对考试已经非常熟悉，无论考多少次都在“Exam Familiarity”上没有多少可以进步的余地了，但是 90 天复习后成绩提分幅度较大。这 90 天该考生主要改善的是“Language Proficiency”，例如刷题及大量背诵单词，进而获得了高分。

所以考生都应该尽量让自己在上图中走在居中的位置，这样才能覆盖图中较大的面积，即获得高分。而当一个考生在以上两个方面都准备得足够充分的时候，他所获得的雅思分数才能真正地反映他的英语水平。

雅思口语备考就更是如此了，只有将雅思口语考试的时长、形式、常见问题类型等全部准备好，才能在“Exam Familiarity”方面获得相应的提高；而只有将自己的词汇量增大、句型丰富度增加并改善自己的语音语调等英语语言能力，才能在“Language Proficiency”方面获得好的表现。

## 二、口语备考的文字准备和输出练习

雅思口语考试有四个评分标准，其中有一些需要在准备文字材料时就提前准备好，例如单词、句子多样性及准确度等。很多考生总是希望自己在考试的时候能够超水平发挥，在平时的准备中并不在意所谓的单词替换或者语气词的添加使用，也没有专门练习句型替换等。像“you know”之类的话语标记其实应该在准备文字稿的时候就撰写好，而不是寄希望于自己在上考场时能突然“有如神助”般脱口而出，那样最后的结果只能是惨败。

另外，文字的准备也应当尽量口语化。很多考生明知道自己在准备口语话题的参考素材，还是会写出类似“Many people holds the opinion that...”这样书面化的句型，考官当然一眼就会识破这是背诵的内容。

除了口语材料的书面化准备之外，考生还经常忽略或者排斥另一个口语高分必备的环节，那就是口语的输出练习。很多考生虽然花大量时间准备了素材甚至文章，但是出于种种原因他们忽略了练习环节，于是他们在考场上就会出现各种非正常停顿、不自然语速等扣分点。而这些扣分点都是可以通过科学的考前训练减少甚至消除的。具体的方法都在本书后面的章节中，其中包含了同学们需要知道的各类和考试相关的内容，不论是不熟悉考试还是没有回答思路，本书都可以提供解决方法，希望对大家有所帮助。



为了让不同程度的考生都能够在本书快速定位到自己需要的章节和题目，我在本书的“*How to Use This Book*”部分专门对考生的需求进行了分类，不同程度的考生需要的章节也相应地作出了推荐。例如基础较好且考过考试的考生可以跳读本书的部分章节，而备考时间短的考生则需要专门学习另一些章节。这样，考生就可以更快地找到自己掌握不好的知识点，无需在已知的内容上浪费时间啦。

另外，与一般的雅思口语书籍每个 Part 1 问题只给出一个标准答案的做法不同，我对每个话题的指导思想是做“加法”，即每个话题都撰写了“赞同”和“反对”两大类观点，而每一大类观点下都有许多个不同的原因来支持这个观点，这样考生就更有可能会找到符合自己心意的素材，而且稍加修改就能把与其他考生答案雷同的可能性降到最低。

与 Part 1 做“加法”的指导思想相反，我在 Part 2 中以做“减法”为主，每个话题大类给出了话题合并的核心素材及素材的写法，这样考生就可以通过较少的素材解决较多的问题，把复习时间及复习内容的性价比发挥到最大。

而 Part 3 则重在思路的培养。在我的点题班的帮助下考生往往可以轻松应对 Part 1 和 Part 2，但 Part 3 却没有这类的辅助，所以同学们必须学会相应的回答思路并勤加练习。

学习完本书的同学确实会因为自身英语基础的不同而考出不同的口语分数，但是我希望同学们在本书的帮助下都可以在自己目前的英语基础上考出最好的水平。

最后的最后，我要感谢我可爱的学生们，没有你们就没有我！谢谢！

谢昭奕 / 谢绍东 字

新浪微博 / 微信公众平台：谢绍东 Shadow





# 目录

How to Use This Book 使用指导.....	xi
<b>第壹章 雅思考试 101——入门介绍 .....</b>	<b>1</b>
IELTS 01 什么是雅思考试? / 3	
IELTS 02 雅思考试流程 / 5	
IELTS 03 雅思考试时间及考位信息 / 7	
IELTS 04 雅思考试报名方法 / 7	
<b>第贰章 Part 1 &amp; Part 3 万能理由——只为临时抱佛脚的你 .....</b>	<b>15</b>
IELTS 01 “经济适用版本” 万能理由 / 17	
IELTS 02 “奢华土豪版本” 万能理由 / 18	
<b>第叁章 雅思口语单项介绍 .....</b>	<b>21</b>
IELTS 01 考试形式 / 23	
IELTS 02 题型介绍 / 24	
IELTS 03 评分标准 / 25	
IELTS 04 雅思口语考试的两大利好条件 / 27	
<b>第肆章 雅思口语四大评分标准详细解析——像考官一样思考 .....</b>	<b>29</b>
雅思口语考试入门介绍 / 30	
IELTS 01 发音 (Pronunciation) : Google 真人发音能得几分呢? / 31	
IELTS 02 词汇 (Lexical Resource) : 不要走入偏、怪、难的误区, 准确得体最重要 / 33	
IELTS 03 语法 (Grammatical Range and Accuracy) : 拒绝英文版甄嬛体 / 35	



IELTS 04 流利度 (Fluency and Coherence): 语速快得像机关枪一样不是好 / 38

第伍章 雅思口语必问的四大问题：虽然简单，不算正式考试内容，但是你敢出错吗 ··· 43

第陆章 Part1 初体验 ..... 47

IELTS 01 Part 1 基本介绍 / 49IELTS 02 Part 1 考题结构及数量分布 / 49IELTS 03 Part 1 三大题目类型 / 49IELTS 04 Part 1 回答策略及 5K 法则 / 52第柒章 Part 1 真题语料库——自选超市..... 55IELTS 01 必考话题 / 57IELTS 02 选考话题 / 80

第捌章 Part 2 初体验 ..... 281

IELTS 01 Part 2 基本介绍 / 283IELTS 02 Part 2 考题结构及数量分布 / 283IELTS 03 Part 2 八大题目类型 / 284IELTS 04 Part 2 回答策略 / 285IELTS 05 Part 2 是否应该使用模板 / 286IELTS 06 Part 2 的 4S 黄金法则 / 288第玖章 Part 2 话题合并 DIY ..... 291IELTS 01 人物类 / 292IELTS 02 地点类 / 313IELTS 03 媒体类 / 334IELTS 04 工作事件类 / 349IELTS 05 家庭事件类 / 366IELTS 06 物品类 / 391



IELTS 07 户外活动类 / 415	
IELTS 08 学术科目类 / 430	
<b>第拾章 Part 3 初体验 .....</b>	<b>455</b>
IELTS 01 Part 3 基本介绍 / 457	
IELTS 02 Part 3 考题结构及数量分布 / 457	
IELTS 03 Part 3 三大题型分类及答题 3R 法则 / 460	
<b>第拾壹章 Part 3 真题演练三大题型及高频答案思路串讲 .....</b>	<b>461</b>
IELTS 01 条件型问题 / 463	
IELTS 02 列举型问题 / 470	
IELTS 03 优缺点型问题 / 474	
<b>第拾贰章 考前冲刺 .....</b>	<b>481</b>
IELTS 01 雅思口语模拟测试题 / 482	
IELTS 02 雅思口语 9 天冲刺复习计划 (搭配预测使用) / 490	
IELTS 03 雅思口语预测的使用方法 (视频) / 491	
IELTS 04 雅思口语预测听不懂考官说话应该怎么办 (视频) / 491	
IELTS 05 雅思成绩是如何计算的 (视频) / 491	
<b>附录一 雅思考生注意事项 .....</b>	<b>492</b>
<b>附录二 “剑 10” 口语真题解析 .....</b>	<b>500</b>







# 第柒章 Part 1 话题索引

## 必考话题

1. Your Study/Work / 57
2. Hometown / 66
3. Your Home (Accommodation) / 73

## 选考话题

1. Advertisement / 80
2. Art / 82
3. Bag / 84
4. Bicycle/ Bike / 86
5. Bird / 88
6. Birthday / 90
7. Boat / 94
8. Book / 96
9. Building / 101
10. Car / 102
11. Card / 105
12. Cellphone/ Mobile Phone / 107
13. Children / 110
14. Collecting / 111
15. Colour / 113

16. Computer / 115
17. Concentration / 118
18. Concert / 119
19. Dancing / 120
20. Dictionary / 124
21. Drawing and Painting / 125
22. Family & Friends & Relatives & Parents / 127
23. Fashion & Clothes / 131
24. Flower / 135
25. Food & Cooking / 139
26. Game / 146
27. Gift / 150
28. Healthy Lifestyle / 153
29. History / 153
30. Holiday & Festival / 156
31. Housework / 157
32. Internet / 156
33. Language / 162
34. Leisure Time & Weekends & Evening / 164
35. Letters & Writing & Emails & Cards / 166



- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 36. Library / 168                     | 63. Swimming / 229                              |
| 37. Magazine / 169                    | 64. Time Management & Daily Routine / 230       |
| 38. Maps / 171                        | 65. Toys / 232                                  |
| 39. Movie / 173                       | 66. Transportation / 235                        |
| 40. Museum / 176                      | 67. Travel / 237                                |
| 41. Music / 179                       | 68. Trees / 240                                 |
| 42. Name / 183                        | 69. TV / 242                                    |
| 43. Neighbour / 187                   | 70. Visitor / 245                               |
| 44. News / 190                        | 71. Climate&Season&Weather&Sunshine&Rainy / 247 |
| 45. Newspaper / 191                   | 72. Wedding / 250                               |
| 46. Noise / 194                       | 73. Your Country / 252                          |
| 47. Park & Garden / 196               | 74. hats / 253                                  |
| 48. Party / 198                       | 75. Handicraft / 255                            |
| 49. Patience / 201                    | 76. Science / 258                               |
| 50. Photography / 202                 | 77. Walking / 261                               |
| 51. Plan & Goal / 207                 | 78. Robots / 265                                |
| 52. Politeness/Helping others / 208   | 79. Mirror / 265                                |
| 53. Private transportation / 210      | 80. Watch / 266                                 |
| 54. Punctuality & Being Late / 211    | 81. Dearm / 269                                 |
| 55. Rain / 213                        | 82. Teacher / 270                               |
| 56. School / 214                      | 83. Celebrity / 272                             |
| 57. Shoes / 216                       | 84. Chocolate / 273                             |
| 58. Shopping / 217                    | 85. Ocean / 274                                 |
| 59. Singing / 220                     | 86. Teenager / 276                              |
| 60. Sleeping / 221                    | 87. App / 277                                   |
| 61. Sports & Outdoor Activities / 223 | 88. Animals / 279                               |
| 62. Street Market / 227               |   |



# How to Use This Book

## 使用指导

小伙伴们好，我是东东老师！很高兴你选择了我的这本雅思口语书。这本书是我十年教学经验的总结，也是我对自己一万多个小时授课的一次回首。大家都说书是一位 24 小时全天候的老师，任何时候，只要你想学习，书都会伴你左右、助你前行。

本书实际上是一个雅思口语题库及答案库，大家需要结合我每月发布的雅思口语预测来进行阅读，这样可以事半功倍地准备考试。例如，我在本书中详细解析了近 100 个 Part 1 的话题，而每月我预测中的话题则只有 30 个左右，大家很显然不需要去看预测中没有圈出的 70 多个。当然了，我的预测每隔一段时间就会发生变化，也许上个月不用看的话题这个月就要准备起来了。不过只要跟上我的预测这都不成问题。

我的预测可在我的新浪微博：“谢绍东 Shadow”及微信公众平台：“谢绍东 Shadow”中找到。

可惜，所有书都有一个共同的缺点，就是无法与读者“及时”互动交流。很多同学在学习上常常遇到这样的问题，即看完了整本书才发现对自己有用的部分是哪些，但是备考时大家的每一分钟都是宝贵的。为了不浪费大家的时间，我来帮助大家找到这本书应该看的章节，请大家按照自己的情况对号入座。

读者分类及需要阅读的章节：

### 一、“五分熟烤鸭”

已经参加过雅思考试，对雅思口语考试的流程、时间安排及基本的问题类型都很熟悉的考生，请学习本书第二章、第三章的第三节、第四章、第五章、第七章、第九章、第十一章、第十二章及附录二。

### 二、“七分熟烤鸭”

已经参加过雅思考试，并且获得雅思口语 6 分或以上分数的“烤鸭”，请学习本书第四章、第七章、第九章各话题中“如何选择并制作自己 DIY 的素材”部分、第十一章、第二章以及第十二章前两节。

### 三、“很着急的小白烤鸭”

因为各种原因，准备裸考或半裸考，且复习时间小于 15 天的“烤鸭”，请学习本书第一章、第二章、第三章、第四章、第五章、第七章“必考话题”部分、第八章、第九章“如何实际运用自己 DIY 的素材”部分、第十章、第十二章的第一、三、四、五节及附录一。



#### 四、“很着急的七分熟烤鸭”

因为各种原因，需要在接下来的 15 天左右再次考试并且希望口语成绩能够比上次有所进步的考生，请学习本书第四章、第六章最后一节、第七章“必考话题”部分、第九章“如何实际运用自己的 DIY 的素材”部分、第十章第三节、第二章及第十二章第一节。

#### 五、“不着急的小白烤鸭”

深谋远虑地决定出国并给自己留下三个月以上备考时间的考生，请从头开始看到尾，谢谢。

另外，通篇阅读的“烤鸭”会发现本书偶尔会有简单的重复，主要是为了照顾到跳读的同学，虽然只有几处，还是请海涵啦～

好了，现在你知道需要看的章节了，



# 第壹章

---

## 雅思考试 101——入门介绍



每一个雅思考生都被我亲切地称之为“烤鸭”，而“烤鸭”们的每一次雅思考试都是他们的“屠鸭之旅”。如果现在正在读书的你是一个刚刚接触雅思考试的“烤鸭”，那么本书的第一章节对你至关重要，因为这一章就是我们常说的“101 课程”。

“101 课程”通常是指某一门学科的入门级课程。因为许多教程的第一章或者导论部分都会用“101”做标注，这个词汇渐渐地就被用来表示基础入门级课程。本书的第一章就是雅思考试的“101 课程”，这一章将帮助大家从以下四个方面了解雅思考试的基本内容：

- 什么是雅思考试？
- 雅思考试流程
- 雅思考试时间及考位信息
- 雅思考试报名方法



# IELTS | 01 什么是雅思考试？

雅思其实是 IELTS 的小名，IELTS 的全名叫 “International English Language Testing System”，也就是 “国际英语语言测试体系”。由剑桥大学考试委员会外语考试部、英国大使馆文化教育处及 IDP 教育集团共同管理，是专门针英语能力，为打算到使用英语的国家学习、工作或定居的人们设置的英语水平考试。不管大家想要出国留学还是工作移民，都需要紧紧抱住雅思考试的大腿。

雅思考试已获得全球 135 个国家逾 9,000 所教育机构、雇主单位、专业协会和政府部门的认可；每年有超过 200 万人次的考生参加雅思考试。看到这么多人和自己一起走在 “屠鸭” 的路上，是不是有点小兴奋呢？

雅思考试包含听、说、读、写四个部分，满分 9 分。总分计算方法是将四个单项所得分数相加并经过平均后，取最接近的整分或半分。总分和四个单项成绩均允许出现半分。大家可不要小瞧这 0.5 分哦，很多 “烤鸭” 的命运就是因为 0.5 分的差别而发生了改变。

在此四个部分的基础上，考试被分为学术类（Academic，俗称 “A 类”）和培训类（General Training，俗称 “G 类”）两种：

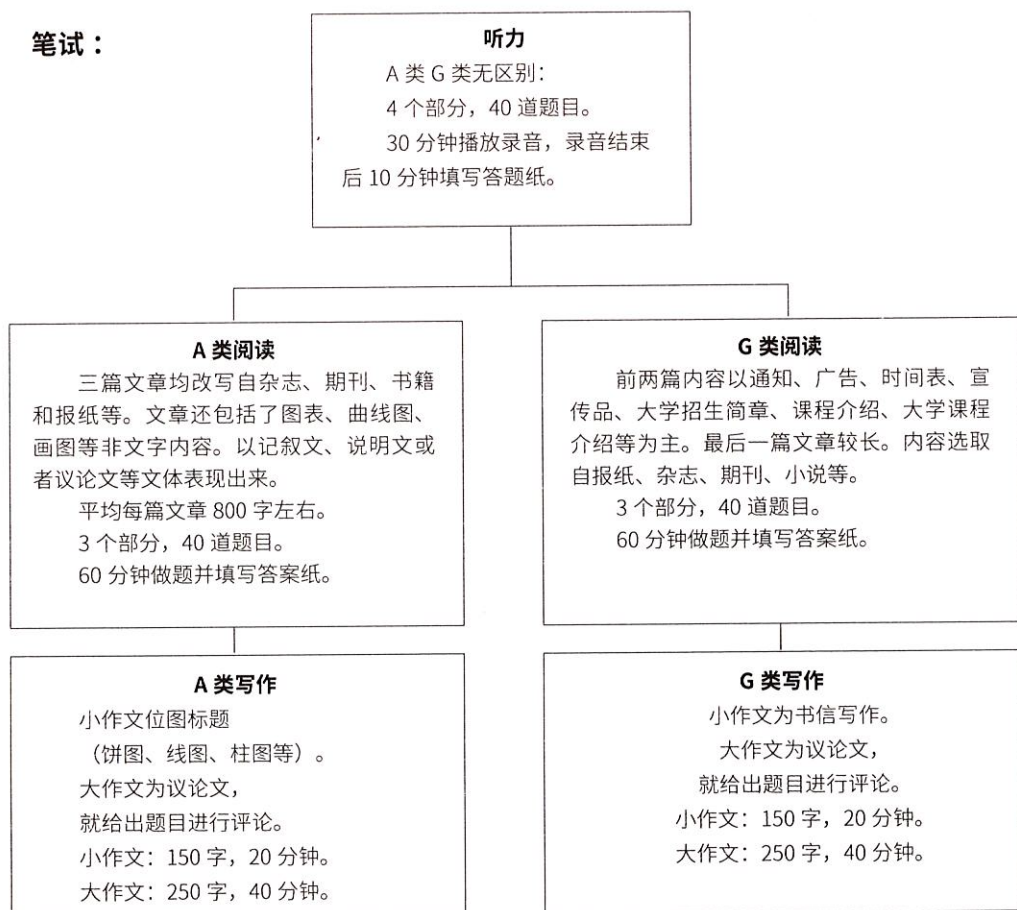
学术类（A 类）考试：对考生的英语水平进行测试，评估考生的英语水平是否满足申请本科及研究生及以上学位的要求，适合准备出国留学的同学。

培训类（G 类）考试：着重考核基本语言技能，适用于计划在英语国家（如澳大利亚、加拿大、新西兰及英国）参加工作或移民，或申请培训及非文凭类课程的人士。

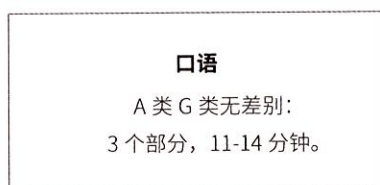
A 类和 G 类考试的题目在阅读和写作中有明显的差异，而口语和听力中则没有区别，大家可以通过以下表格对比了解：



**笔试：**



**口试：**



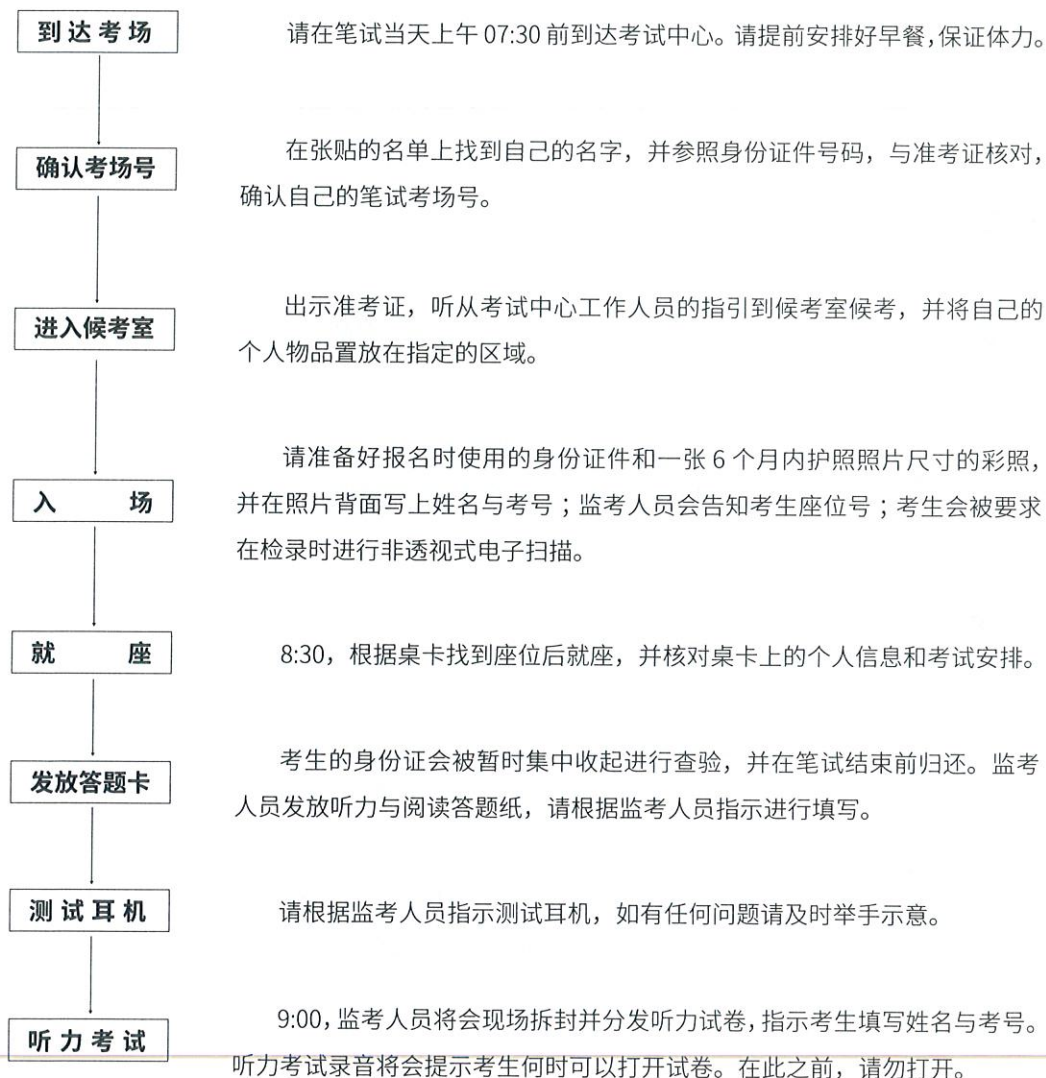
雅思考试的三个笔试环节是紧密连接在一起的，从考试当天上午开考到结束基本一气呵成。但是口语考试的时间安排非常灵活，从笔试前一周至笔试后一周均可安排考试，例如：

“烤鸭”Grace已经报名参加2015年6月13日的雅思考试，笔试时间在13日当天，但口语考试则有可能安排在2015年6月6日至20日中间的任何一天，包括笔试当天的下午。不过根据往年经验，比较常见的口语考试时间安排围绕在笔试前后三天。因此大家一定要在自己考试日期前至少一周关注雅思报名网站的信息，并及时刷新自己的雅思口语考试时间安排。

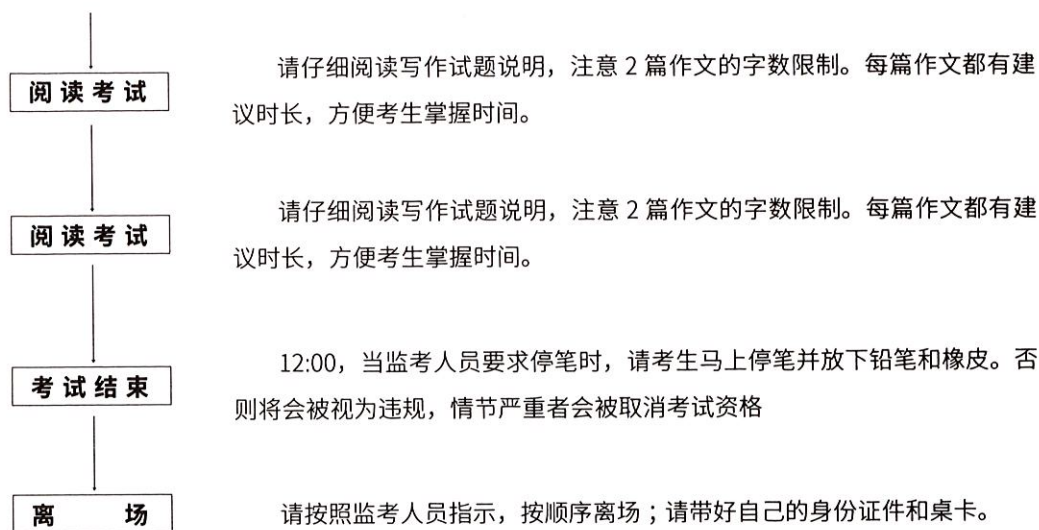


IELTS  
雅思考试流程 | 02

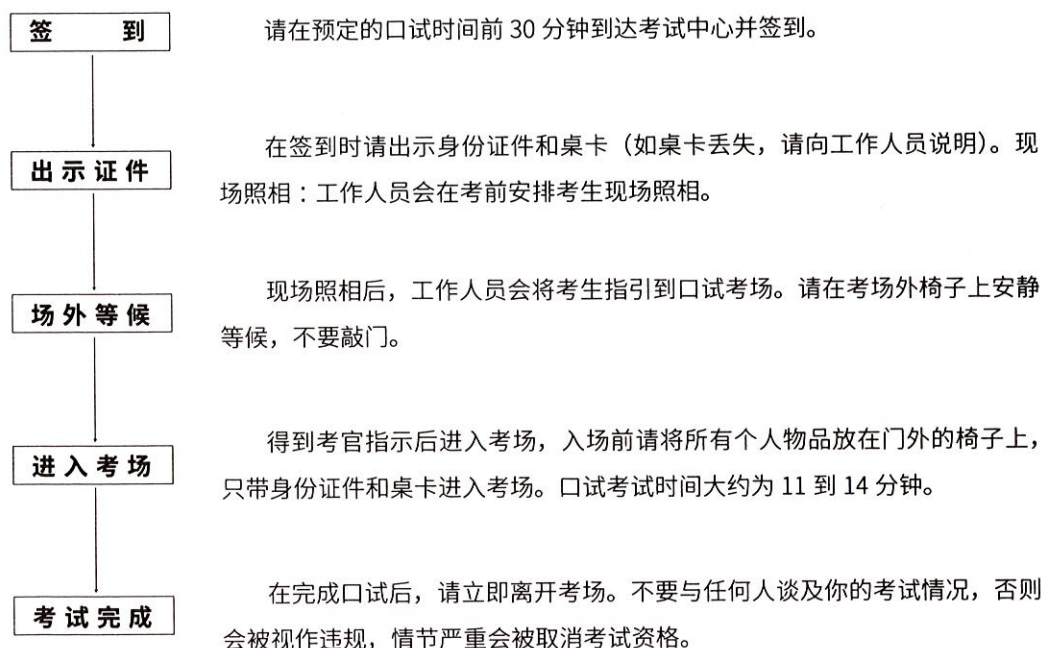
## 1、笔试







## 2、口试





## IELTS | 03 雅思考试时间及考位信息

雅思考试一般每月安排四场，每年年底放出下一年全年的考位信息。因为考试时间安排会有更新，所以不在书中体现。

如果大家需要查询最新的雅思考试时间安排或各地雅思考点详情，只需要扫描二维码，关注东东老师的微信公众平台“谢绍东 Shadow”后回复关键词“最新考试时间安排”即可查询最新的考试时间安排；回复关键词“各地雅思考点”即可查询各地雅思考点信息。



## IELTS | 04 雅思考试报名方法

### 报名流程图





### 报名流程说明

在中国大陆地区，考生可以通过教育部考试中心（NEEA）雅思报名网站报考：雅思考试 - 纸笔、雅思考试 - 机考、用于英国签证及移民的雅思考试 - 纸笔、用于英国签证及移民的雅思考试（学术类） - 机考、雅思生活技能类考试。在报名前，请仔细阅读以下说明以完成报名流程。

### 报名前的准备

**电脑要求：**您的电脑需联网，装有网络浏览器（建议使用 IE 高版本或火狐浏览器）及简体中文输入系统，推荐显示分辨率为 1024X768。

**付费须知：**您可以使用支付宝或首信易支付来支付考试费、转考费及考后服务费。如果您取消报名，您所支付的考试费在扣除退考费后将自动退回到您的 NEEA 账户中。如需更多了解，请咨询两家支付服务提供商。支付宝客服热线：95188 首信易支付客服热线：(010) 4008182626 或 82652626 转分机 6644,6829,6851 (9:00-17:30) (010) 82652963,82652961 (9:00-17:30) (010) 59321108 (24 小时)

**所需个人资料：**网上报名所需的个人基本资料有：

- 中文姓名
- 姓名拼音 / 英文姓名
- 有效身份证件类别
- 有效身份证件号码
- 身份证件有效期
- 身份证件签发机关
- 出生日期
- 手机号码
- 电子邮箱地址

请您务必确保网上报名时提交的个人信息与身份证件上的信息完全一致。如果报名时提交的个人信息与考试当天身份证件个人信息不相符，您将被取消考试资格和考试成绩，并不得转考、退考或退费。请务必在提交网上报名信息之前仔细核对，由于输入错误或虚假信息而引发的一切后果将由您本人承担。

**考试政策：**在报名之前，请详细阅读教育部考试中心雅思报名网站首页以下考试政策文件：

- 考生须知
- 考生声明
- 考生信息：关于考试
- 报名流程及详细说明



- 考试当日流程
- 常见问题

## 报名程序

要进行考试报名，您必须按顺序完成下列步骤：

1. 注册成为教育部考试中心雅思报名网站用户
2. 预存考试费
3. 选择考位
4. 填写报名表并确认付费

只有在完成这四个步骤之后，您的报名才正式生效。

### 第一步：注册成为教育部考试中心雅思报名网站用户

如果您从未使用过教育部考试中心雅思报名网站，您必须先注册成为网站用户。在注册之前，您将看到网上报名协议，您必须点击“同意”按钮接受并遵守这些条款，否则，系统将不允许您进行注册。在提供个人基本信息、证件信息、联系信息并设置密码后，您将得到教育部考试中心报名系统分配给您的一个 NEEA 用户号 (NEEA user ID)。

#### 重要提示：

- 每位考生只可以注册一个 NEEA 用户号 (NEEA User ID)
- 您必须牢记自己的 NEEA 用户号 (NEEA User ID) 和密码，我们建议您将这些资料存放在一个安全的地方。与他人分享您的 NEEA 用户号 (NEEA User ID) 和密码将有可能导致在未经授权的情况下，您个人的报名信息遭到篡改或损害。
- 您的个人信息将得到有效的安全保障和严格保密。您所填写的个人信息将用于联络您本人以及其他与考试相关的事宜。
- 每次进入教育部考试中心雅思报名网站时，您可以选择使用您的 NEEA 用户号 (NEEA user ID)、电子邮箱或者手机号码和密码进行登录。只有登录后，您才能进行各项操作。
- 您可以使用您的 NEEA 用户号 (NEEA User ID) 在网上同时报考多场考试，报考次数不受限制，但任意两场考试日期必须间隔 7 天以上。
- 您可以在您的个人主页查看个人信息以及更改安全信息。
- 请注意您的姓名（中文和拼音 / 英文）、性别、身份证件类型、身份证件号码和出生日期属于重要个人信息，您必须确保这些信息的真实性和准确性。一旦您将重要个人信息输入系统，系统将不允许您进行更改。如果发现以上重要个人信息输入错误，请在报名截止日期前联系教育部考试中心雅思考试全国服务热线（电子邮箱：ielts@mail.neea.edu.cn，电话：010-82345671（服务时间：周一到周五：8:30 - 17:00；周六、周日：08:30-13:00（如遇因国家法定节假日调休需上班：8:30-17:00）；



国家法定节假日除外)) 申请更改, 下载《雅思考生更改信息申请表》并提供证明文件以便顺利参加考试。如果在报名截止日期后发现重要个人信息输入错误, 请在第一场考试日期前(口语或笔试)联系教育部考试中心雅思考试全国服务热线申请退考, 并提供证明文件。

### 第二步: 预存考试费

您支付足额考试费后方可注册考试。请您在报名前根据自己的考试目的谨慎选择注册合适的雅思考试(包括雅思考试、雅思考试机考、用于英国签证及移民的雅思考试、用于英国签证及移民的雅思考试学术类机考及雅思生活技能类考试)。

雅思考试费(含税金额): 2,170 元人民币

用于英国签证及移民的雅思考试费(含税金额): 2,220 元人民币

雅思生活技能类考试费(含税金额): 1,350 元人民币

网上付费: 请点击支付宝或首信易支付按钮, 您将被引导到相应支付平台进行网上支付。当付费完成后, 请记录下报名网站系统所提供交易订单号, 以便日后用于核对和查询您的付款。通常教育部考试中心雅思报名网站会立即收到您的付款确认。在极少数情况下, 系统会延迟确认考生的付款。因此, 请在支付成功 24 小时之后, 登录教育部考试中心雅思报名网站, 核实您的付费和报名状态。如果届时仍未看到您的付费确认信息, 请拨打教育部考试中心雅思考试全国服务热线(电子邮箱: [ielts@mail.neea.edu.cn](mailto:ielts@mail.neea.edu.cn), 电话: 010-82345671(服务时间: 周一到周五: 8:30-17:00; 周六、周日: 08:30-13:00(如遇因国家法定节假日调休需上班: 8:30-17:00); 国家法定节假日除外)) 寻求帮助。

### 第三步: 选择考位

当您成功将考试费预存到您在教育部考试中心雅思报名网站的账户之后, 您的个人主页会显示您的帐户余额。只有当余额大于等于考费时才可以选择考位。

选择考试月份和城市后, 您将看到所对应的考试日期的页面, 及考试类型/模式/级别按钮:

雅思考试提供“学术类”和“培训类”两种考试类型, 纸笔和机考两种考试模式, 机考可以选择上午场、下午场或者晚场。

用于英国签证及移民的雅思考试提供“学术类”和“培训类”两种考试类型, 纸笔和学术类机考两种考试模式。

雅思生活技能类考试分为 A1、A2 及 B1 三个级别。点击相应的考试类型/模式/级别按钮可以预定座位。如果无法点击按钮, 则意味着这个考试类型/级别已经报满或者该考试日期不提供相应的考试。

在点击考试类型/模式/级别按钮之后, 就完成了选择考位, 您的个人主页中即可显示目前报名的信息, 这些信息包括考点名称, 考试日期, 您的注册号(Registration ID)和应支付的考试费金额。您可以通过点击“填写报名表并确认付费”或者“取消预定”这两个按钮来选择进入下一步操作。

如果点击“填写报名表并确认付费”按钮, 您将会看到报名表。当您填写完报名表并提交后, 系统将提示您确认支付考试费。



如果点击“取消预定”按钮，系统将取消您所选的考位。在这种情况下，系统不会从您的帐户中扣除您的考试费。

#### **重要提示：**

- 考试报名、转考和退考截止日期请参见报名网站，请您在选择考试日期时予以留意。由于考位有限，我们建议您尽早报名。
- 在报名截止日之前，先前已无法选择的考位有可能因其它考生取消预定而被重新释放。如果您没有选择到理想的考试日期或考点，建议您经常到选择考位页面查看您希望报考的日期是否有新释放出的考位空额。
- 请记录下您的注册号（Registration ID）并把它存放在一个安全的地方。注册号（Registration ID）及雅思考号（IELTScandidate number）都将用来确认您参加考试的资格，并凭此享受考试相关服务。
- 如果您在没有确认支付考试费的情况下离开或意外掉线，请务必在选择考位后的 30 分钟内回来完成所有步骤并确认付费，否则选择无效。在选择无效的情况下，系统不会从您的 NEEA 帐户中扣除考试费。

#### **第四步：填写报名表并确认付费**

选择考位后，在个人主页上有“填写报名表并确认付款”按钮。请点击此按钮填写报名表。

当您进入报名表页面前，请详细阅读《雅思考试考生须知》，并在阅读之后点击接受按钮。如果您拒绝点击此按钮，将无法继续报名程序。

当您看到报名表后，请按照屏幕上的指令进行操作。请注意系统不允许您重复输入您的姓名、性别、生日，身份证件号码，考试日期和考点信息，因为在此之前，您已输入上述信息。

当您填写完成报名表后，请点击提交按钮并接受《雅思考试考生声明》。之后系统将引导您进入“用余额付款”页面，此页面将显示您的 NEEA 账户余额，并提示您确认支付考试费。确认支付考试费后，您就完成了所有报名步骤。此时系统将引导您进入个人主页，如有需要，您可以选择点击下列其他服务按钮：“修改报名表”；“转考”；“取消报名并退回部分费用”。

#### **其他服务**

**修改报名表：**点击“修改报名表”按钮将允许您修改此前所提交的报名表信息。这一功能将在您所选择的考试报名截止日期后失效。

**转考：**在成功报名后，您如果想要改变考试日期和 / 或考点，可以在报名截止日期之前登录教育部考试中心雅思报名网站个人主页，交纳转考费用后点击“转考”按钮选择新的考试日期和 / 或考点。报名截止日期之后不再受理转考申请。

转考费用：420 元人民币

#### **重要提示：**

- 不同考试（雅思考试 - 纸笔、雅思考试 - 机考、用于英国签证及移民的雅思考试 - 纸笔、用于英国签证及移民的雅思考试（学术类）- 机考、雅思生活技能类考试）之间无法直接转考。如您需要报

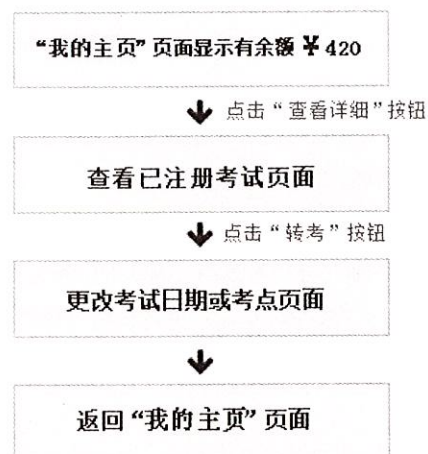


考其他考试，请在报名截止日期之前取消已经注册的考试后重新报考。

### 转考第一步：支付转考费



### 转考第二步：执行具体的转考操作



取消报名并退回部分费用：报名截止日期之前，您可以登录教育部考试中心雅思报名网站取消已经注册的考试，得到扣除 420 元人民币退考费后的已支付考试费余额。请进入个人主页，选择“查看已注册考试”，点击“退考”按钮取消报名。在您确认后，此前的报名将被取消，扣除退考费后的余额将保存至您的 NEEA 帐户余额中，您可以在个人主页查看退款记录。余额可以用于再次报考。

获得退款：您如果需要将 NEEA 帐户余额退回至自己的银行账户，请登录个人主页，选择“申请退款”项目，根据网站提示提交退款信息后，下载《退款申请表》，填写完整并发送至教育部考试中心雅思考试全国服务热线（电子邮箱：ielts@mail.neea.edu.cn，电话：010-82345671（服务时间：周一到周五：8:30-17:00；周六、周日：08:30-13:00（如遇因国家法定节假日调休需上班：8:30-17:00））；



国家法定节假日除外))。在您的申请表确认无误后的四至六周内,退款将退还至您的原银行帐户或通过银行转账至您所指定的账户。如果您有任何问题或没有收到退款,请及时联系教育部考试中心雅思考试全国服务热线。

#### 退款注意事项如下:

- 一年以内网上支付的考生,您可以选择将退款退至原支付卡,不收取银行手续费。
- 如原支付卡无法接收退款或网上支付已超过 1 年,可采用银行汇款方式接收退款,退款将通过银行转账汇至您提供的银行账户。

#### 重要提示:

- 您的报名一旦取消,将无法恢复。如果您想再次报名,必须从上面所介绍的第二步开始做起。
- 没有按照以上规定办理转考或退考手续,以及在考试当天缺席的考生,考试费用将无法退还。

#### 打印准考证

当您完成付费程序之后,个人主页将显示付费确认,整个报名程序也随之完成。您在报名注册成功后,将收到电子邮件确认。

考生需要在如下时间登录雅思报名网站个人主页打印准考证并作为考试当天入场的凭据。准考证也可以通过打印通知提供的网址下载。如果准考证打印时间有所变化,教育部考试中心雅思报名网站将发布公告。请务必随时关注最新通知

报考雅思考试 - 纸笔、用于英国签证及移民的雅思考试 - 纸笔的考生:笔试日期前 10 天。报考用于英国签证及移民的雅思考试 - 学术类机考、雅思考试 - 机考的考生:笔试日期前 3 天。

#### 重要提示:

- 请务必在考试之前打印准考证,并在考试当天带到考点作为入场凭据。
- 请注意如果未能及时打印准考证,可能导致您错过口语考试。

#### 友情提示:

##### 1. 个人主页

您的个人主页是了解整个报名过程中每个步骤所处状态的核心。成功报名之后,您将在个人主页了解到考试安排的重要的信息(雅思考号,口试时间,口笔试安排等等)。此外,您可以进入个人主页来进行下列操作:

- 在报名截止日期之前更改报名表上的可更改信息
  - 在口试预定服务开放期间在可供选择的日期预定上午/下午的口语考试
  - 在报名截止日期之前更改考试日期及/或考点(将额外收取转考费并取决于实际座位情况)
  - 在报名截止日期之前取消报名(将扣除 420 元人民币退考费)
  - 报考雅思考试 - 纸笔、用于英国签证及移民的雅思考试 - 纸笔的考生在笔试后第 13 天查看分数;报考用于英国签证及移民的雅思考试 - 学术类机考、雅思考试 - 机考的考生在笔试后第 3 天查看分数。
- 如遇公共节假日则可能顺延。



- 在考试后申请考后服务

## 2. 关于 NEEA 用户号 (NEEA User ID)、注册号 (Registration ID) 和雅思考号 (IELTS Candidate Number)

教育部考试中心雅思报名系统向考生提供下列号码。他们的名称和用途如下，请了解它们的区别，正确使用：

**NEEA 用户号 (NEEA User ID)：**每位考生只有一个 NEEA 用户号，与用户密码共同使用，是考生用于登录教育部考试中心雅思报名网站的身份证明。没有您的授权，他人无法登录获知您的个人信息。

**注册号 (Registration ID)：**在您完成所有报名程序后，由教育部考试中心雅思报名系统生成的一个唯一确认号码。每位考生在成功报考每一次考试后都会收到一个不同的注册号，在您向教育部考试中心全国服务热线咨询时需提供该号码，同时这个号码也是您获得雅思考号的依据。

**雅思考号 (IELTS Candidate Number)：**在通过教育部考试中心雅思报名网站得到考生的报名数据之后，由雅思全球考务系统自动生成的一个号码。考生可以在个人主页查询到自己的雅思考号，准考证上同样会显示雅思考号。雅思考号用于考试当天答卷，申请考后服务并将打印在考试成绩单上。

<http://www.britishcouncil.org.cn/zh/china.htm><http://www.ielts.org/><http://www.neea.edu.cn/>  
British Council is a proud co-owner of IELTS

**关注雅思：**<http://weibo.com/ieltschn><https://www.chinaielts.org/>

Copyright ©2021 教育部考试中心 雅思报名网站

值得注意的是，并不是所有城市每周都有考试的，有的城市每个月只有 1 次或是 2 次考试，所以东东老师还是建议“烤鸭”们提前 2 个月进行雅思考试的报名，以免出现意外，影响自己的出国计划。

另外，雅思考试最近连续涨价，大家一定要准备好“银子”啊。“烤鸭”可根据考试时间及考点分布选择适合自己的考位报名。



## 第貳章

---

**Part 1 & Part 3 万能理由  
——只为临时抱佛脚的你**



本章节很短，主要为很懒的“烤鸭”准备。在 Part 1 及 Part 3 中，都有不少需要考生回答优缺点的问题，而考生也一直非常希望能够有所谓的“万能理由”拯救他们。

根据多年的教学经验，我发现在考生备考和考试的过程中，确实有一些关键词甚至句子，它们出现的频率远远高于其他答案。经过对这些素材的总结、提炼，我为大家写成了以下万能理由，并且根据考生基础分为“经济适用版本”和“奢华土豪版本”两种。虽然这两个版本的思路是完全一样的，但是前一种在句子的变化、单词的使用以及答案的长度上都要比后一种难度小很多，希望大家量力而行。

当然了，大家也要记得我在本书中一再强调的灵活使用，不要生搬硬套、强词夺理才是。



## “经济适用版本” 万能理由 | IELTS 01

### 1 针对物品 / 活动

#### ① 积极正面：

1. It can help me relax myself.
2. It can help me release the pressure. / It is less stressful.
3. It can make me healthy.
4. It can make people feel happy.
5. It is very entertaining/ interesting and funny.
6. It is very exciting and energetic/ full of energy.
7. I think it is very convenient/ efficient/ effective.
8. I think it is very comfortable.
9. I can learn a lot from it.
10. I think it is very practical and useful.
11. This can help me make a lot of friends.
12. It is very beautiful. It is very tasty. I show talent in it.

#### ② 消极负面：

1. It takes too much of my time/ energy.
2. It is a waste of time.
3. I cannot learn anything from it.
4. I don't have interests in it.
5. I don't have the talent.
6. I think it is very boring.
7. It is very expensive.
8. It upsets/ bothers/ disturbs me.



## 2 针对人的优点

1. He is a very nice friend.
2. He is generous and friendly.
3. He is so cool.
4. She is very entertaining/ interesting and funny.
5. She is very vigorous and energetic/ full of energy.
6. He is willing to help others.
7. He is unexpected/ different and charming/ attractive.
8. We have a lot of common hobbies. / We have a lot in common.
9. He is honest and straightforward.
10. He is very mature and experienced.
11. He is patient and thoughtful.

# 02 | IELTS “奢华土豪版本” 万能理由

## 1 针对物品 / 活动

### ① 积极正面：

1. This is really a great way for not only me but everyone to have a moment of relaxation.
2. This is an amazing way for me to release the pressure, you know, it is less stressful.
3. It is a wonderful way to stay healthy and acquire a peaceful mind, which is beneficial both physically and mentally.
4. For no obvious reason, it somehow makes people feel happy and delighted.
5. It is very entertaining and interesting; many people think it is funny.
6. It is very exciting and energetic, which makes people full of energy.
7. Personally, I think it is very convenient; it saves people a lot of trouble.
8. I think it is very comfortable. You know, it makes people feel pleasant and at ease.
9. I think it is kind of educational. Well, I can learn a lot of things from it, which is actually very cool for me.



10. I like things that are very practical and useful, and I am not a dreamy person.
11. This is actually very social, and I can meet a lot of people and make more friends.
12. I am the funding member of the good-looks club. I love beauty, and anything or anyone that is beautiful will get my attention and leaves me a great impression.
13. I am a foodie, I love tasty food, and nothing will stop me from having marvelous dishes or snacks. I am born for that.
14. I am very interested in it. I think I am born with a gift, because I can do it better than others.

④ ② 消极负面：

1. Some people may like it, but it really takes too much time, and I don't have that much time for that.
2. It is a waste of time and energy. Not everyone has that much time to do everything that they want; people's time and energy are limited.
3. I think it is really shallow; I cannot learn anything from it. If I don't gain, I will just give it up.
4. I'm not interested in it, no reason why. You know, people's interests differ. You can't be interested in everything.
5. Not everyone was born with gifts or talents. I guess I just don't have the talent.
6. I think it is very boring. You know, it is kind of repetitive and monotonous, and nothing new comes out from it.
7. It is too expensive. You know, it is not affordable for me. I don't have a lot of money, so I have to use them reasonably. Even if I am rich, I shouldn't be this indifferent.
8. It consumes a lot of my energy. I have a lot of things on my plate right now, so it is really hard for me to deal with it properly.
9. It is tasteless comparing with other things.

## 2 针对人

1. He is a very nice friend, devoted and caring.
2. He is generous and friendly in many ways, and sometimes he even sacrifices his own interests in order to help others.
3. He is so cool, not only from the outside, but on the inside as well.
4. She is very entertaining/-interesting and funny. Parties will never be boring as long as we



have her.

5. She is very vigorous and energetic/ full of energy, and always inspires others to think positively.
6. He is willing to help others, since whenever I need him, he will be there for me.
7. He is unexpected/ different and charming/ attractive, always thinks outside of the box and chooses the unexpected journey.
8. We have a lot of common hobbies. / We have/ share a lot in common; we talk about those things all the time, and it is really hard to find someone else like that.
9. He is honest and straightforward/ upright, and we all trust him very much.
10. He is very mature and experienced, and most of our friends would love to go and ask him for advice when they are in trouble.
11. He is patient and thoughtful, and everyone around him would feel at ease and relaxed.
12. He is patient and polite, and he always compliments others and behaves properly.



# 第叁章

---

## 雅思口语单项介绍



雅思口语考试是目前众多国际语言考试中的异类，“面对面 / 人对人”这样的特点让它不能通过文字轻而易举地解释清楚，最好的准备方式是通过视频或者老师做示范讲解，而不是纯粹地写成文字让学生自学。在练习的过程中也往往需要有一个懂得雅思考试的导师陪伴练习并点评。但很多“烤鸭”的第一次考试就是他们第一次体验雅思口语全过程，这样不充分的准备肯定非常不利于大家获得自己应得的分数。

今天，我们将从以下四点为大家介绍雅思口语单项的考试形式，另外大家可以进入东东老师的微信公众平台回复 :5.5、6.0、6.5、7.5 获得雅思全真模拟考试视频，帮助大家直观体验雅思考试全过程。

- 考试形式
- 题型介绍
- 评分标准
- 雅思口语考试的两大利好条件



IELTS  
考试形式 | 01

雅思考试是一个比较传统的考试，听力、阅读、写作这三个单项是纸笔作答，而口语这个单项则是一对一的面试，整个过程不需要借助电脑设备。

雅思口语考试时间一般是在 11 到 14 分钟之间。雅思口语考试时，考官和考生一对一、面对面地坐在一间教室里进行考题的问答和互动，因此口试和笔试的时间安排是分开的，通常口试是在笔试之前或之后；即使口试、笔试被安排在同一天，也是上午先考完笔试，下午才进行口试，中间至少要间隔吃午饭的时间。

雅思口语考试在相对独立的教室里面完成，因此口语考试的环境非常安静和封闭，“烤鸭”们不用担心被别的考生打扰到，比起托福口语考试来说，待遇好了很多。不过雅思口语考试大部分时间是考生在说话，考官在听，这对考生的口语水平是种更大的挑战。

考官与考生采取面对面交流的形式，具体可参考下图：





# 02 | IELTS 题型介绍

雅思口语考题有三个部分，分别是 Part1, Part2 和 Part3。具体情况见下表：

	Length of time	Interaction	Topics	Functions
<b>Part 1</b>	4-5 minutes	Conversation: The examiner asks questions and the candidate answers them.	Personal—e.g. The candidate's home, hobbies, friends, English studies, etc.	Describing. Giving factual information. Expressing opinions. Expressing attitudes. Expressing preferences, Giving reasons for opinions, preferences and attitudes.
<b>Part 2</b>	3-4 minutes	Monologue: The candidate has 1 minute to prepare a short talk for 1-2 minutes. The examiner may ask one or two questions at the end.	Personal—e.g. A book that the candidate has read; a city the candidate knows; a sport the candidate knows, etc.	All the functions from Part 1 plus: Comparing and contrasting. Expressing feelings. Explain facts. Imagining.
<b>Part 3</b>	4-5 minutes	Further Discussion: The examiner asks questions.	Academic—e.g. the media, education, the environment, communication systems, culture, etc.	All the functions from Part 1 and 2 plus: Describing situations. Describing attitude. Describing events in the past. Speculating on the future. Describing problems, causes, effects and solutions. Assessing positive and negative points. Describing roles, functions, rights and responsibilities. Using conversational skills.



Part1: Interview, 就是简单的对话和访谈形式, 一个问题一个答案。官方指出, 在 Part1 会考查三个话题 (Topic), 而就每一个话题会提出四个小问题 (Question), 因此在 Part1 考生总共要回答 12 个问题。虽然问题数量较多, 但是因为话题都是与日常生活相关的内容, 所以总体来说其难度是口语三个部分中最低的。

Part2: Monologue, 即个人独白, 也叫做 Individual Long Turn。这部分会有一分钟的准备时间, 接下来要求考生说一到两分钟的时间, 不足一分钟会导致失分, 超过两分钟会被打断, 是否扣分取决于关键采分点 (即得分点) 是否已经阐述清楚。Part2 的考试形式是中国考生最不习惯的 “Presentation”, 虽然从专业的角度来看, Part2 并不是口语考试最难的模块, 但是对于大部分中国考生来说, 这一部分确实是最容易造成紧张和丢分的部分。具体情况将在后面的章节中详细解释。

Part3: Further Discussion, 即深入讨论环节。从形式上来说, 它和 Part1 相仿, 也是问答形式, 但从内容上来说, Part3 其实是和 Part2 紧密相关的, 也就是说 Part3 是在 Part2 的基础之上进行发散、提高和抽象的一些发问。另外, Part3 的问题数量是没有限制的, 因此很多考生可能会发现自己和其他 “烤鸭” 在口语考试 Part3 所遇到的问题数目有比较大的差距。

## IELTS 评分标准 | 03

有关评分标准, 雅思口语考试官方公布的评分标准包含四个维度, 分别是:

Fluency and Coherence: 流利度和连贯性。主要考查的是考生在回答的过程当中语言是否流畅。如果考生经常出现犹豫不决、自我更正, 或自我重复, 那么流利度和连贯性的分数肯定是要打折扣的。另外连词及话语标记的使用, 都可以帮助大家在这个维度加分。

Lexical Resource: 词汇丰富度, 即词汇量。很多 “烤鸭” 有一个误会, 认为一定要选择长、难、偏、怪、奇的词汇才能获得雅思口语高分, 其实这是不得体的。

Grammatical Range and Accuracy: 语法广度及准确度。要求考生能够正确使用句型结构, 也就是少犯语法错误, 另外还要求 “烤鸭” 能够使用不同类型的句子结构, 比如简单句、并列句和复合句。

Pronunciation: 发音。发音当然是越像外国人越好, 但是这只是发音中的一个采分点, 语调、连读、省音等都可以帮助大家获得更好的发音分数。



# 雅思考试口语评分标准

Band	Fluency and coherence	Lexical resource	Grammatical range and accuracy	Pronunciation
9	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>speaks fluently with only rare repetition or self-correction; any hesitation is content-related rather than to find words or grammar</li> <li>speaks coherently with fully appropriate cohesive features</li> <li>develops topics fully and appropriately</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>uses vocabulary with full flexibility and precision in all topics</li> <li>uses idiomatic language naturally and accurately</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>uses a full range of structures naturally and appropriately</li> <li>produces consistently accurate structures apart from 'slips' characteristic of native speaker speech</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>uses a full range of pronunciation features with precision and subtlety</li> <li>sustains flexible use of features throughout</li> <li>is effortless to understand</li> </ul>
8	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>speaks fluently with only occasional repetition or self-correction; hesitation is usually content-related and only rarely to search for language</li> <li>develops topics coherently and appropriately</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>uses a wide vocabulary resource readily and flexibly to convey precise meaning</li> <li>uses less common and idiomatic vocabulary skilfully, with occasional inaccuracies</li> <li>uses paraphrase effectively as required</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>uses a wide range of structures flexibly</li> <li>produces a majority of error-free sentences with only very occasional inappropriacies or basic/non-systematic errors</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>uses a wide range of pronunciation features</li> <li>sustains flexible use of features, with only occasional lapses</li> <li>is easy to understand throughout: L1 accent has minimal effect on intelligibility</li> </ul>
7	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>speaks at length without noticeable effort or loss of coherence</li> <li>may demonstrate language-related hesitation at times, or some repetition and/or self-correction</li> <li>uses a range of connectives and discourse markers with some flexibility</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>uses vocabulary resource flexibly to discuss a variety of topics</li> <li>uses some less common and idiomatic vocabulary and shows some awareness of style and collocation, with some inappropriate choices</li> <li>uses paraphrase effectively</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>uses a range of complex structures with some flexibility</li> <li>frequently produces error-free sentences, though some grammatical mistakes persist</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>shows all the positive features of band 6 and some, but not all, the positive features of band 8</li> </ul>
6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>is willing to speak at length, though may lose coherence at times due to occasional repetition, self-correction or hesitation</li> <li>uses a range of connectives and discourse markers but not always appropriately</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>has a wide enough vocabulary to discuss topics at length and make meaning clear in spite of inappropriacies</li> <li>generally paraphrases successfully</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>uses a mix of simple and complex structures, but with limited flexibility</li> <li>may make frequent mistakes with complex structures, though these rarely cause comprehension problems</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>uses a range of pronunciation features with mixed control</li> <li>shows some effective use of features but this is not sustained</li> <li>can generally be understood throughout, though mispronunciation of individual words or sounds reduces clarity at times</li> </ul>
5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>usually maintains flow of speech but uses repetition, self-correction and/or slow speech to keep going</li> <li>may over-use certain connectives and discourse markers</li> <li>produces simple speech fluently, but more complex communication causes fluency problems</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>manages to talk about familiar and unfamiliar topics but uses vocabulary with limited flexibility</li> <li>attempts to use paraphrase but with mixed success</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>produces basic sentence forms with reasonable accuracy</li> <li>uses a limited range of more complex structures, but these usually contain errors and may cause some comprehension problems</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>shows all the positive features of band 4 and some, but not all, the positive features of band 6</li> </ul>
4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>cannot respond without noticeable pauses and may speak slowly, with frequent repetition and self-correction</li> <li>links basic sentences but with repetitious use of simple connectives and some breakdowns in coherence</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>is able to talk about familiar topics but can only convey basic meaning on unfamiliar topics and makes frequent errors in word choice</li> <li>rarely attempts paraphrase</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>produces basic sentence forms and some correct simple sentences but subordinate structures are rare</li> <li>errors are frequent and may lead to misunderstanding</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>uses a limited range of pronunciation features</li> <li>attempts to control features but lapses are frequent</li> <li>mispronunciations are frequent and cause some difficulty for the listener</li> </ul>
3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>speaks with long pauses</li> <li>has limited ability to link simple sentences</li> <li>gives only simple responses and is frequently unable to convey basic message</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>uses simple vocabulary to convey personal information</li> <li>has insufficient vocabulary for less familiar topics</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>attempts basic sentence forms but with limited success, or relies on apparently memorised utterances</li> <li>makes numerous errors except in memorised expressions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>shows some of the features of band 2 and some, but not all, the positive features of band 4</li> </ul>
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>pauses lengthily before most words</li> <li>little communication possible</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>only produces isolated words or memorised utterances</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>cannot produce basic sentence forms</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>speech is often unintelligible</li> </ul>
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>no communication possible</li> </ul>			
0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>no rateable language</li> <li>does not attend</li> </ul>			



## IELTS | 04 雅思口语考试的两大利好条件

1. 灵活性强。对比托福口语考试的分秒必争（非常精确地限制说话时间长度），雅思口语考试更加灵活。因为是对人的考试，所以雅思口语考试的答案长度在一定的范围内都是可以接受的，例如 Part2 要求考生的回答时间在 1~2 分钟，答案只要在这个区间内都是可以接受的。考官有的时候可能会根据内容来打断考生，有的时候也可能多给考生两三秒钟让他把话说完。所以雅思口语考试更加灵活、有弹性。

2. 整体打分。雅思考试严格要求考官听完学生所有的内容后综合打分，所以不会出现 Part1 先打分，Part2 再打分，Part3 最后打分的情况。考官听完整个口试部分进行一次打分，这样如果考生有一个问题发挥得不好，并不代表他的口语考试分数就会不好，整体打分的好处在这里得到体现。

如果以上介绍不能给你直观的感受，请扫描二维码加入东东老师的微信公众平台“谢绍东 Shadow”，回复关键词“雅思口语考试实景模拟及点评”即可观看四个雅思口语考试实景模拟及点评视频。









# 第肆章

## 雅思口语四大评分标准详细解析

---

——像考官一样思考



## 雅思口语考试入门介绍

在雅思考试听、说、读、写四项考试中。大部分学生听力、阅读可轻松获得 6.5 分甚至更高的分数，而口语成绩往往不尽人意，因此如果学生希望获得高分，雅思口语就在复习的过程中占有十分重要的地位。

该项考试主要包括身份确认和正式考试两个环节，身份确认只有四个问题（将在本书第二小节详细讲解），正式考试则由以下三个部分组成：

Part 1：为基本的交流型问答，考官会就相关话题对考生展开提问，考查的内容往往是学习、工作、衣食住行以及兴趣爱好之类的话题，时间一般在 4～5 分钟。

Part 2：为个人独白，考官给考生一张话题卡，要求考生就话题卡上的话题进行 1～2 分钟的阐述，考生阐述完毕后，考官可以有选择地就考生的阐述内容提一两个相关问题，由考生简单作答。第二部分时间一般在 3～4 分钟。

Part 3：为互动讨论，考官就第二部分所提及的话题与考生进行更深入的讨论，或者考官就其他相关话题拓展并与考生进行讨论，难度较大，时间在 4～5 分钟。

想考出雅思口语高分，一定要从考官的角度和立场来理解口语考试。如果考生只是一味地从学生的角度复习准备，很容易钻入死胡同。而理解考官的第一步就是了解和熟悉考官如何给我们打分，即真正理解雅思口语考试的评分标准。

对雅思考试稍有了解的考生，都会对雅思口语考试的四大评分标准有所耳闻，而雅思考试官方目前在网上放出的公开版本更是将雅思口语从 0 分至 9 分的评分条目罗列了出来。然而，对于考生来说这样简单的表格和抽象的描述完全无法让考生得到任何实质性的帮助。

因此，我将雅思口语的四大评分标准进行分析具象、重新整合后整理出了我个人全新解读的、更加具体适用的雅思口语四大评分标准。



# IELTS 发音 (Pronunciation): 01 Google 真人发音能得几分呢?

对于发音，很多考生对于它的解读很单一，认为发音越像外国人这个单项的分数就会越高。不可否认这确实是一个很重要的因素，但是这绝不是这一项评分标准的唯一因素。

语调在这个评分标准中同样起到非常重要的作用。举个例子，众所周知“Google 真人发音”是一款全真模拟真人发音的应用，用这个应用发音的每一个单词都非常标准且没有错误，但是如果“Google 真人发音”参加雅思口语考试，它在发音这个单项上又能得几分呢？肯定不会是大家以为的7分或者更高分，因为它缺少语调，如机器人一般没有任何起伏的语调变化已经决定了它低分的命运，而缺少必要的连读和省音更是让它的发音分数雪上加霜。

现在我来为大家剖析一下发音这个评分标准到底需要“烤鸭”们做些什么。具体又有哪些加分项及扣分项。

## 1、语音加分点

### ① 标准清晰的发音 (Pronunciation)

在这一点上，雅思考试方和国内的英语教师达成了惊人的一致：雅思是一门语言考试，发音标准清晰是一个很必然的评分标准；如果考生的发音像英语母语国家的人一样标准自然，这确实是一个获得高分的必要条件。

但是不像很多考生揣测的那样，所谓的“雅思考试会对英式口音更有偏好或者更照顾”——其实只要考生发音标准清晰，美式口音、英式口音或者澳大利亚口音都不会对发音这个打分点造成实质性的影响。

当然了，这并不意味着大家可以随意选择自己喜欢的口音模仿学习。虽然雅思听力考试的录音中常出现日本口音和印度口音，但这两种口音就不适合大家模仿，主要也是因为这两种口音已经严重影响了发音的清晰度和准确度。

### ② 自然流畅的语调 (Intonation)

自然流畅的语调是考生普遍会遇到的问题，因为语调不仅要求考生掌握每个单词的发音，更要求考生能够在恰当的语境下在自己的回答当中注入语气上的变化以显示自己的情绪态度或者对于事物的喜好。

我们普遍使用的语调其实就是升调 (rising)、降调 (falling) 或者先降后升 (falling-rising) 这



三种情况。而主要的目的就是以下两点：

- showing the rise and down during the speech
- showing the feeling, attitude and emotion during the speech

大家一定都有这样一种经历，很多喜欢日本动画片的朋友虽然不会日语，但是有时候哪怕不看字幕也能判断动画片中的角色是高兴还是沮丧。而原因恰恰就是配音演员在配音过程当中注入了恰当的语气、语调，从而帮助观众更好地理解和欣赏这些动画作品。

雅思考试作为一个人对人的考试当然也需要大家以自然流畅的语调去强调、削弱或者转折自己所阐述的内容。

## 2、语音扣分点

### ① 口误 (Lapse)

口误是一种失常的发音表现，是说考生虽然掌握了这个单词的发音，但是因为考试时气息不稳、一时嘴快或者大脑停转而导致的偶然间出现的发音错误。例如：

考生本想说：“I like riding a horse.”

结果说成了：“I like riding a house.”

考生本身是掌握了这个单词的，因此话一说出口就意识到自己犯了错误。

于是考生马上更正：“Sorry, not house, horse.”

口误这个扣分点属于典型的频率型扣分点，即扣分的严重程度与错误出现的频率有关，口语考试期间考生口误频率越高，对考生的发音这个评分项影响越大。而如果考生整场考试只出现了一次口误并马上改正，那么对于打分的影响则小到可以忽略不计。

但是，如果考生像上面的例子中的情况一样回去修改，则会导致在第四个评分标准：流利度及连贯性上的扣分。具体扣分情况请参见对第四个评分标准：流利度及连贯性的详细解析。

### ② 错误的发音 (Mispronunciation)

错误的发音有两种情况。第一种属于对单词的错误认识。例如考生本身发音没有问题，但是对某些单词掌握了错误的发音。这种情况是很容易改正的，一经指出基本可以在极短的时间之内改正。

第二种错误的发音属于考生对于音标发音特点掌握不到位。例如考生无法正确发出某个或某些元音、辅音。这与考生长期生活的地域及使用的方言很有关系，例如四川的考生常常分不清楚辅音 /n/ 和 /l/，进而导致他们分不出“night”和“light”这两个词的发音区别。而这种错误往往需要一定时间的模仿及跟读练习才能改正过来。



# 词汇 (Lexical Resource) : 不要走入偏、怪、难的误区, 准确得体最重要

IELTS

02

雅思口语考试对于词汇的考查分为“输入”和“输出”两个部分, 因此考生也普遍存在这两方面的问题, 即听不懂和答不出。

对于“输入”, 考生应该做到听得懂考官问题中的所有单词, 或者至少听懂核心单词。这一点主要与考生的词汇量和听力能力有关, 因此考生必须进行一定量的单词背诵及听力练习。

而针对“输出”, 即考生答案当中使用的单词, 我们却有很多的技巧和注意事项, 也就是词汇这个评分标准的加分点。

## 1. 词汇加分点

### ① 词汇分布的广度 (A wide range of vocabulary/discuss a variety of topics)

雅思口语考试的话题以广泛著称, 上至天文下至地理均有涉猎, 花鸟树木均出现在往年真题中。但是和 LSAT 等专业考试不同, 雅思考试毕竟只是语言考试, 所以并不会考查过于专业和学术的内容和知识, 无非就是问问相关的名词和优缺点之类。因此词汇的广度比深度重要, 例如考树木, 就不会考根茎叶之类的内容, 但是常见的树木的名字, 如 willow, birch 等还是要能够掌握一些的。

另外, Part1 及 Part3 最常用的就是表示赞同 / 肯定或反对 / 否定的表达。在这里给大家列出, 请大家务必掌握。

YES	absolutely, totally, of course, definitely, exactly, yep, certainly, indeed, you bet, positive, affirmative
NO	I seriously doubt it, I wish I could, I am afraid not, nope, never, hardly, certainly not, of course not, negative

### ② 使用更加精准的单词 (Use less common and idiomatic vocabulary)

雅思的单词和 GRE 这样的考试有明显的差别, 几乎每一个考过 GRE 的学生都同意一个观点, 那就是 GRE 的词汇不仅量大, 而且偏、怪、难。于是一些考生便觉得如果能够在雅思考试时使用一些 GRE 词汇一定能够起到震撼考官及加分的效果。其实不然。

注意, 雅思考试对于口语考试使用的词汇的要求永远是更加精准, 而不是更具难度。

例如, 桌子上放着一盏台灯。



考生可以说它是“Bromine tungsten lamp”（溴钨灯），但是考官不仅不会被震撼到，还会觉得这个考生的描述非常累赘且不必要。

考生当然也可以说它是“light”，不可否认，只要是灯，用“light”表达在原则上其实是没有错的。但是既然放在桌子上，最为简捷有效且得体的表达其实是“lamp”，即台灯。

比较一下，我们发现“lamp”这个词无论从发音还是拼写上都不比“light”更复杂。而考官认可它的原因是因为它更得体、准确。

### ③ 单词的位置及搭配 (Show awareness of style and collocation)

正确控制词汇的位置和搭配是可以帮助考生获得高分的。而搭配错误却往往是中国考生常犯的错误，例如形容词修饰名词时应该放在修饰词的前面，而副词修饰动词时应该放在修饰词的后面等。

比如有些考生会说：“I very like my major.” 即是犯了位置搭配的错误。而这样的错误往往是因为汉语使用习惯的语言迁徙导致的，这种迁徙的结果其实就是大家常说的“Chinglish”。

以上句子应该是：“I like my major very much.” 虽然“very”既有形容词词性也有副词词性，但是“like”是一个动词，所以这里应当把它放在“like”的后面而不是前面。如果经常有类似这样的问题出现，考生就会因此而丢掉一些分数。

### ④ 转述 (Paraphrase)

所谓“转述”(paraphrase)即用不同的单词形容同一件事物。转述是词汇的一个大的加分、高分评分单项，在官方给出的评分标准中，如果考生的词汇没有转述，那么他的词汇分数基本不会超过6分。只有正确、成功地使用一定量的转述，考生的词汇方面的得分才能有所提高。

其实所谓的“转述”如果说得朴素一些就是用不同的单词和句式形容同一件事物。

例如，我个人非常喜欢美国歌手布兰妮，在口语考试第二部分的个人独白中，我说了这样一段话：

“As a **mother**, **Britney** is also a pop **diva**, who is recognized as one of the most famous **singers** in the world.”

这里有几次转述呢？最显而易见的转述就是加粗的四处，布兰妮是一位母亲、天后、歌手。而在一句话当中使用这么多的转述是很能够体现单词量和单词灵活运用能力的。

第一部分问题的答案一般比较短，所以使用转述的困难比较大。我会建议我的学生在第二、第三部分的考试中主动积极地使用转述，因为第二部分的独白需要围绕着同一个人或事物展开，这就为使用不同的单词创造了便利条件。

## 2. 词汇扣分点：错误的词汇选择 (Errors in word choice)

词汇的错误选择有两种情况，一种情况是选择错误的名词或代词来指代事物。如考生时常不分“he”



与“she”，明明在描述自己的母亲，却不时用“he”来指代一下。这实际上就是词汇的错误选择。

第二种则是词性错误。例如：考生要表达的意思是“我会成功”，但是张口说出了：“I shall success.”其实应该说：“I shall succeed.”这就是词性的错误，本应该选择动词形式但却选用了名词形式。

因此大家在备考中积累一些固定的词组搭配显得尤其重要。一个比较简单的办法就是规避写作老师推荐的词汇。口语老师和写作老师推荐的词汇有极大的不同，主要体现在书面语和口头语的区别上。一般口语老师和写作老师教的单词，除了名词可以互相借鉴之外，动词、形容词及副词都不能跨科游走。例如，写作老师推荐的一些具有得分价值的形容词或动词，通常都是书面用语，用在口头表达中往往不恰当，而且会让考官认为考生分不清书面表达和口头表达的差异，从而导致扣分。只要能够明确书面表达和口头表达的区别，大家就可以顺利选出可用于口语的表达了。

## IELTS 语法 (Grammatical Range and Accuracy) : 拒绝英文版甄嬛体 03

雅思口语考试和写作考试同为输出型考试（即需要考生主动从自己的知识储备中选择单词、语法进行答题），从某种程度上来说确实有不少共同点，但是考生对于这两者的混淆却导致了考生在错误的场合使用不得体的句型结构而扣分。

例如：

考官：“Do you like reading?”

考生：“Many people hold the opinion towards this issue that by reading we enrich the mind,by conversation we polish it.”

考官这个时候一定是呈现出了“石化”的状态，因为这个考生使用了英文版“甄嬛体”（即使用书面用语，不自然且矫揉造作）。虽然这个回答单从语法的正确性上来判断确实没有什么明显的错误，但是这样的回答得体吗？

很多学生以为使用以上回答可以展现自己丰富的词汇量和高难度的语法结构，但是对于考官来说，他观察到的只有学生对于句型和语法结构理解得不透彻，并错误地把书面表达用在日常交流中。

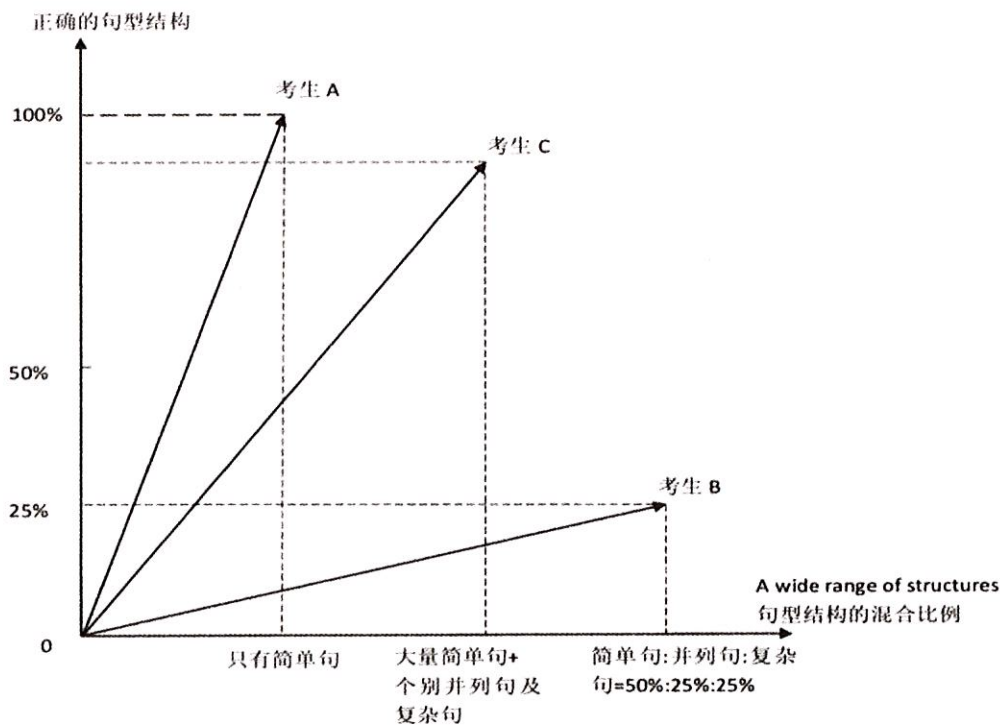
而这样的情况不仅不会帮助考生加分，还会导致扣分。因为只有当考生对语法知识掌握不到位的时候，他才会不假思索地把写作中的句型用到口语考试中，而考生自己还美滋滋地以为这是可以为自己加分的句型结构。



## 语法当中其实一共有两个评分要素：

- 正确的句型结构 (Error-free sentences)
- 句型结构的混合比例 (A wide range of structures)

具体情况请看下图：



我们可以发现考官在语法的打分上实际是希望考生在这两方面都尽量发挥好，而考生最终的分数实际上是在数轴区域内求面积的过程，覆盖的面积越大，这个打分项分数越高。

比如，图中的考生 A 虽然在正确句型结构（纵轴）的百分比上完成得很好，即句型结构基本正确，没有犯语法错误，但是他只用了简单句而没有使用并列句和复合句，导致他在数轴上覆盖的区域很有限，而他的分数也就相应地不会太高。

考生 B 使用了很多句型结构，简单句、并列句和复合句一应俱全，在句型结构的混合比例（横轴）上虽然表现俱佳，但是因为他在句型结构上出错率比较高，在纵轴上达不到很高的点，这样他在数轴上覆盖的区域也相应地较小。

而考生 C 虽然在正确句型结构（纵轴）的百分比上表现不如考生 A，而在句型结构的混合比例（横轴）上的表现不及考生 B，但是他的综合表现很好，所以他在数轴上覆盖的区域最大，而他的语法单项打分也是三人中最高的。

由此可见，考生为了避免犯错而一味使用简单句，或者为了锦上添花而错误地使用自己掌握不佳



的句型结构，都不会带来好的效果。

现在，我们再来具体分析一下这两个评分要素的细节。

## 1. 正确的句型结构 (Error-free sentences)

句型结构的错误可能轻重程度不同，对这种错误程度的界定只有一条标准，即在何种程度上造成了考官的理解障碍 (comprehension problems)。

如果没有造成理解障碍，我们称之为“minor mistakes”，即小错误。例如考生们常出现的第三人称单数动词不加“s”，一般过去式谓语忘记加“ed”。虽然这些是语法错误，但是不影响考官理解考生所说的内容。因此这些错误的扣分和犯错的频率有关，是典型的频率型扣分点。

另一种语法错误则会造成严重的理解障碍，我们称之为“major mistake”，也就是大错误。例如以下错误：

考生 A：friend need be a very helper

考生 B：I threw box it

考生 C：if some don't know person come my home

其实考生想表达的分别是：

考生 A：A friend should be a very generous helper.

考生 B：I threw it into the box.

考生 C：if some one that I don't know come to my home...

对于带有类似以上错误的语句，考官很难把考生说出的话和考生想表达的意思联系起来，这样就导致考官难以理解考生的表述和意图，从而判定考生的语法和句型结构存在较为严重的问题，进而导致大面积的扣分。

## 2. 句型结构的混合比例 (A wide range of structures)

雅思考试讲求一种得体、融洽和平衡，所以单纯追求某一个点的话往往会一无所获。在句型结构的比例上，100% 使用简单句和 100% 使用复合句一样糟糕。

作为一门语言考试，雅思考试希望考生在口语环节展示良好的句子使用能力，而一个优秀的英语学习者应该具备使用简单、并列、复合这三大类句型结构的能力。大家平时所说的“语法加分点”，如强调句、虚拟语气等，也都隶属于这三大类句型结构。



我个人一般会建议考生使用 50% 左右的简单句, 25% 的并列句和 25% 左右的复合句。具体比例在具体操作时微有浮动都是很正常的。

**注意：**语法当中有一个很重要的扣分点, 一旦判定成立扣分非常严重, 即“背诵模板”(memorized utterances/expressions)。

但是, 语言的学习本来就是一个背诵的过程, 所以背诵这个环节并不可能省略。而且我的很多学生也通过背诵模板在短期内获得了自己期望的分数, 由此可见背诵模板也是可行的。

那么为什么我的学生背诵模板就可以顺利通关, 而有的考生就会被判定为背诵模板并被扣分呢? 这其中有两点重要的区别。

第一, 背诵的内容。有些考生的背诵材料为一些作文素材或者报纸杂志选段, 这样的内容本来就是书面用语, 非常拗口, 考官一听就能马上判断这是背诵模板。本书提供的理由和模板变化组合很多, 而且模板本身就是完全口语化的创作, 完全没有书面表达, 并经过几百名我的 VIP 学生亲自考试检验并后续跟踪, 从来没有让考官觉得这是模板背诵的情况。

第二, 背诵的熟练程度和练习次数。很多考生把模板当做小学课文来背诵, 觉得只要背完就算完成任务了, 但是雅思口语考试是一个“人对人”的考试, 要求考生以亲切、自然、流畅的方式进行口语表达, 交流感很重要。仅仅是把模板背诵下来是毫无意义的, 应该在背诵时加上动作、表情, 让考官觉得你是在交流, 而不是在背诵。

## 04 | IELTS 流利度 (Fluency and Coherence) : 语速快得像机关枪一样不是好

流利度是雅思口语中最容易被妖魔化的一条评分标准, 大量考生甚至是部分老师盲目地认为, 流利度就是语速, 并且苛求自己必须在极短的时间内提高语速。

今天我来为大家破除这个迷信, 雅思口语的语速快得像机关枪一样不是好。正常人的语速都是有差别的, 只要在正常交流的时候不造成障碍, 就都是可以接受的。

有的考生平时说汉语的语速大约是每分钟 150 个字, 那么他 / 她在考雅思、说英语时, 每分钟说 150~170 个字是完全可以被接受的。不可否认, 有些考生天生语速就快, 说汉语每分钟说 170 个字, 说英文更可达到惊人的 190 字甚至 200 字, 但是以上这两类考生使用的语速都是符合他们日常说话习惯的语速, 他们的大脑已经习惯了这个速度, 突然加快语速只会让考生的脑子跟不上嘴, 从而出现句与句之间的长停顿或者内容逻辑性差、前后内容不相关等情况。而流利度和连贯性恰恰对内容的连接和逻辑关系有较高的要求。



因此，考生为了考试而将自己的语速突然调快，考官不仅不会为此给考生加分，反而会针对考生由此产生的停顿、语无伦次而进行扣分，可谓得不偿失，事倍功半。

下面我们来看看流利度和连贯性这个打分点到底看重什么。

## 1. 流利度加分点

### ① 连接词 (Connectives)

众所周知，汉语是意合文字，而英文是形合文字，所以英文中为了表达句与句之间的前后联系需要通过词汇来进行连接和提现，这时就需要用到介词、连词，通过它们体现形合文字这种外在的连贯性。

雅思口语考试在流利度及连贯性这个打分点上非常明显地体现了这一点，要求考生能够使用一定量的连词、词组和固定结构来体现句与句之间的关系。如：

- 引申并列连词：and, neither...nor, both...and, not only...but also, as well as
- 选择的并列连词：or, either...or
- 表示转折或对比的并列连词：but, yet, however
- 表示因果关系的并列连词：for, so, therefore
- 引导时间状语从句的从属连词：when, while, as, after, before, since, until (till), as soon as, once
- 引导原因状语从句的从属连词：because, as, since, now that, considering (that), seeing that
- 引导条件状语从句的从属连词：if, even if, unless, in case, provided/providing (that), suppose/supposing (that), as (so) long as, on condition (that)
- 引导让步状语从句的从属连词：although/though, even if (though)
- 引导比较状语从句的从属连词：than, as (so)...as
- 引导目的状语从句的从属连词：lest, so that, in order that
- 引导结果状语从句的从属连词：so...that, such...that

大家千万不要觉得必须使用上面的每一个连词，其实我们在必要的时候客观地使用需要的连词即可。但是我们应该有这种意识，知道英语表达时需要使用连词，并且要进行适当的替换。不要在口语考试结束了才想起来只用过一个连词“because”，那就为时已晚了。

### ② 话语标记 (Discourse markers)

跟很多人所理解的不同，雅思口语考试中是可以适当地出现一些日常对话中的语气词或者插入语的，我们把这些内容叫做“话语标记”。

在语言学中，话语标记是指在句法上独立的一个单词或一个短语，它一般在句中起提示、停顿或



过渡的作用，大多数时候没有实际意义，如果去掉也不会影响句子的意思。比如大家常见到的典型例子有：oh, well, now, then, you know 以及 I mean 等。连词其实也可以被认为是话语标记。比如以下模板答案：

I will ask my classmates for help;you know,we can discuss the problem together.  
(来自本书第六章 Part1 必考话题 1：Study or Work)

在这句话中，“you know”是话语标记，去掉它并不影响整句话的意思，但是它的出现让表述显得自然、生活化且有交流感。

适当地使用话语标记，可为考生的流利度和连贯性加分。

我为大家总结了以下常用的话语标记：

显得比较生活化的插入语		针对比较难得问题，句首使用
句首： well you know	句与句之间： you know actually usually personally/frankly/honestly/generally speaking as a matter of fact in fact	wow oh my gosh It's hard to say let me think about it I never thought about it before

在本书的模板中，我会穿插使用这些生活化的插入语，所以如果大家没有时间准备或者不太熟悉话语标记的用法，我为大家准备的丰富的语料模板已经嵌套了可以为大家加分的插入语供大家直接背诵、使用或者修改。

③ 一定长度 (At length)

这一点是雅思口语一切加分点的基础。试想，假如一个考生回答问题时仅仅说：“Yes,I do/I don't.”那么我们刚才说到的加分点，例如连词、话语标记都应该放在哪里呢？因为答案太短，我们连插入连词或者话语标记的位置都找不到。另外，这么短的答案肯定没有所谓的单词加分点和句型多样性，加分点完全踩空，考生的分数自然可想而知。较为合理的回答长度会在本书第六、八、十章分别讲解，请大家届时查阅。

2. 流利度扣分点

流利度和连贯性中有三个频率型扣分点，分别是自我重复、自我更正和犹豫停顿。



### ① 自我重复 (Repetition)

自我重复主要有两个原因，一是考生不知道接下来要说些什么，于是只好把刚刚说过的前半句话或者前几个单词重复一遍；二是因为考生接下来要说的句型结构比较难，考生第一次组织语言失败了，只好从头开始，于是造成了自我重复。

例如：“I think...I think...I think it is wrong.”

### ② 自我更正 (Self-correction)

自我更正是考生发现自己说错了并回去改正自己错误的情况，有时是因为紧张，有时是因为口误。

例如：“The person I helped is my better friend,oh no,best friend.”

再如：

考生本想说：“I like riding a horse.”

结果说成了：“I like riding a house.”

考生本身是掌握了这个单词的，因此话一说出口就意识到自己犯了错误。于是马上更正道：“Sorry,not house,horse.”

但是无论考生回去改发音还是改单词或句型，应该尽量控制一下频率，不然积少成多，扣分也会越来越严重。

### ③ 犹豫停顿 (Hesitation)

犹豫停顿是考生因为不确定内容或者单词、句型而发生的短暂的停顿，一般情况下为 1~2 秒之间。

例如：

考官问：“Why do people plant trees?”

考生说：“Err...oh...en...It's probably because that trees can help refresh the air.”

这种停顿的发生是很正常的，哪怕口语 9 分的回答也是允许出现这种情况的，但是随着这种现象频率的增加，考生的流利度和连贯性得分是必然会下降的。

流利度和连贯性另有两个较为严重的原则型扣分点：**长停顿和语速过慢**。

### ④ 长停顿 (Pauses)

长停顿是指超过 2 秒以上的停顿，这是比较严重的扣分点，类似于理解障碍（见本章语法评分解析）。这个扣分点，一旦出现就会造成较为严重的后果。因此，考生就算不会回答考官提出的某个问题，也应该礼貌地解释一下，如：“Wow,that is a tough question.Let me think about it.” 绝对不可以什么都不说，傻傻地坐在那里干想。

但是，说完了以上内容并不意味着你回答完这个问题了，这句话只是帮助你争取到一点思考的时



间并且避免出现长停顿而已，说完这句话还是要尽力回答刚才考官提出的问题。至于具体可用的素材，大家可以查阅本书第十章，里面会有详尽的说明。

### ⑤ 语速过慢 (Slowness)

之前我已经提到，只要语速在一个正常说话的范围之内就是可以被接受的。但是有些考生的语速实在太慢，例如每分钟 60 字，这样就超出了考官可以接受的范围，因此大家还是要尽量保证正常语速，一般情况下是 90~150 字，上下微有浮动都很正常。

### 总结四大评分标准：

我们不难发现，在雅思口语的评分标准中以下几个要点贯穿始终：得体 (appropriate)、自然 (natural)、长度适宜 (at length)、灵活 (flexible) 及连贯 (coherent)。

确实无论是单词还是语法的使用，自然得体、灵活连贯都非常重要，而我们的答案过长或者过短实际上都是对打分不利的。因此，这个尺度非常重要。之后的章节中，我会着重讲到每一个部分的答案应该如何拓展并保持适宜的长度。

如果大家想要观看雅思口语考试评分标准的视频讲解，只需要扫描二维码，关注东东老师的微信公众平台“谢绍东 Shadow”后回复关键词“雅思口语评分标准”即可收看相关视频。





## 第伍章

---

**雅思口语必问的四大问题：虽然简单，不算正式考试内容，但是你敢出错吗**



“雅思口语必问的四大问题”也是官方所说的“ID Checking”，这里的四个问题实际上是雅思口语考试的第一个环节：考官与考生入座后，考官会从这四个问题开始发问。它们不是正式的考试题目，考官发问的目的只是为了确认学生的身份。虽然这个时候我们还没有进入正式的考试题目，但是考生这时就应该已经进入考试的状态并以最佳的状态来作答。但是对于这四个问题，大家容易走入误区并进行不必要的拓展，所以大家请一定认真阅读本章内容。

四大问题如下所示：

1. Can you tell me your full name, please? (=Please tell me your name.)
2. What can I call you? (=What shall I call you? =What should I call you? =What would you like me to call you?)
3. Can you tell me where you're from? (=Where are you from?)
4. Can I see your identification, please? (=Could I see your identification, please? =May I see your identification, please?)

### 注意

考生请注意：第一，考官发问的问题顺序并不固定；第二，具体问题可能因考官的不同而在词汇、句型上稍有变化，不过这不影响问题的含义。

这一环节从开始到结束往往不到一分钟，由此可以看出这一环节确实非常简短，也必然不是考试复习的重心。但是这一环节作为考试的必考题目及开场题目，有着“顺利开局，提高士气”的作用，大家有必要把这一部分准备好，所以我们按照考试出现的先后顺序，先解决第一环节。



### Question 1: Could you tell me your full name, please?

这个问题的关键在于不要出现不必要的拓展。很多考生喜欢这样回答这个问题：

My name is Xie Shaodong. Xie means thanks in Chinese, which is also my family name. Shao actually comes from my family tree. And Dong was given by my father, as he thought this character represented power and authority.

以上答案不仅过长，而且针对性很差。考官只是简单询问考生信息，大家实在没有必要小题大做。雅思口语考试第二环节的 Part1 中，也有与名字相关的话题，如果届时大家在 Part1 中遭遇了 Name 这个话题（本书第六章的选考话题部分有详细讲解），确实需要进行延伸和拓展，不过在这里确实是没有必要的。

推荐答案：Well, my name is Xie Shaodong.

很多考生觉得这样的回答过于简短。对于 Part1 的任何一个问题，这种长度的答案往往不符合要求，但是这个问题属于“ID Checking”环节，不是 Part1 考试，所以这个回答绝对已经达到了要求和标准。请大家切记。

### Question 2: What can I call you?/What shall I call you?

Answer: You can call me Bruce./Please call me Bruce.

这个问题一般紧随第一个问题，考官希望得到考生的更加简短、友好的名称，所以考生使用以上两种句型中的任意一种，并直接给出自己的英文名字即可。

针对这个问题，大家注意以下四种错误：

- 含义奇怪的名字。例如女生给自己起名叫做“Apple”。
- 男女名不分。男生给自己起名叫“Christina”，这是一个女名，而这个名字对应的男生版本应该叫“Christian”。
- 使用其他语言的名字。学生说：“My English name is Yuki.”而 Yuki 是个日语名字。
- 绝对不要使用“小王”、“老李”之类的称谓，如“Xiao Wang”、“Xiao Zhang”都是不恰当的。

### Question 3: Could you tell me where you're from?

这个问题有三种思路，考生根据自己的实际情况选择一种来回答问题即可。

思路 A：家乡为大城市

Answer A：I'm from Shenyang, the capital city of Liaoning Province.

思路 B：家乡在小城市



Answer B : I'm from Baiyin City, a small city in Gansu Province.

思路 C : 考生报考的考场在自己的家乡

Answer C : I'm a local person. 或者 I'm from here, Shanghai. 不能说 : I'm a local people.

常见错误 :

- 语法错误。例如 : I am come from Tieling City, as mall city in Liaoning Province.
- 词组含义混淆。例如 :

North-east of China (中国版图外的) 中国东北部 in the north-east of China/in north-east China (中国版图内的) 东北地区

#### **Question 4: Could I see your identification, please?**

Answer : OK. Here you are. / Sure. Here you are.

考官在这个问题中要求查看考生的身份证, 所以考生在回答的同时需要出示自己的身份证并让考官核对信息。

注意, 本问题的失真回答 :

Here you go. / There you go. 太随便。

Here it is. 与问题不匹配。



# 第陆章

---

## Part1 初体验



在上一章讲到的“ID Checking”之后，我们才终于进入到了正式的备考环节，而 Part 1 的准备正是考生备考的第一阶段。这一部分虽然话题主题看似粗浅，但实际包罗万象暗藏玄机，大家切勿轻敌。本章分为四个部分层层推进，为大家介绍雅思口语考试的第一部分——Part 1。

- Part 1 基本介绍
- Part 1 考题结构及数量分布
- Part 1 三大题目类型
- Part 1 回答策略及 5K 法则



## IELTS | 01 Part 1 基本介绍

Part1 话题涉及范围都是个人具体信息，如家乡、学习或工作、爱好，以及衣食住行等日常话题。

Part1 需要花费大约 4~5 分钟左右，在这部分考生不需要深入讨论；给出所需信息，做到流利表达即可。

官方要求考官在本环节不得作过多引申发挥，基本保证照读题库中的问题，保证整体难易程度。

## IELTS | 02 Part 1 考题结构及数量分布

Part1 由话题 (Topic) 组成，例如常考话题 “Study”，“Friends”，“Sports”，“Weather” 等。雅思考试经历了这么多年的积累和沉淀之后其实已经有超过 100 个 Part1 曾考话题。

Part1 的每个话题又是由许多个问题 (Question) 组成的，根据话题的不同，通常有 10~50 个问题不等。

不过就像我在本书第一章节中提到过的，Part1 的考试时长在 4~5 分钟之间，因此每个考生被问到的题目数量还是相对较少的。具体情况如下：

- Part1 考试时，每个考生将面临 3 个话题；每个话题下会包含 4 个问题。
- 每个问题的答案长度因人而异：语速正常的考生需要 2~3 句话，语速很快的考生大约要说 4 句话。每个问题的答案大约 30 字左右。

## IELTS | 03 Part 1 三大题目类型

在备考任何考试的过程中都需要总结规律、提炼技巧，否则将会事半功半。雅思口语也不例外。

我们以 Part1 话题——“Reading” 作为例子，这个话题 (Topic) 包含大约 40 个问题 (Question)。错误的复习思路是把这 40 个问题依次复习，每个问题都准备一个不同的答案，这样备考不仅费时费力，而且为后期复习带来难度。



针对 Part1 题库中的每一个话题 (Topic) 里包含的问题 (Question)，我将它们归为三大类型问题，大家只要掌握这个分类准备的技巧，不仅可以用少量的素材以点盖面，后期复习的内容也相对精简。三大类型问题分别为：

## 1、论证型问题

这种题目往往要求考生对问题中的人或事物发表个人看法，即论述这件事物的优缺点，例如“是否喜欢”、“是否流行”等。很多考生不能拨开云雾看本质，于是以为“是否喜欢”是一类问题，而“是否流行”是另一类问题，并且花费很多时间去分别准备。但是在我看来，这种需要通过论述优缺点来回答的问题都可以划分为论证型问题，例如：

Do you think reading is good?

Why do you think reading is popular among youngsters in China today?

If you had a child in the future,would you ask him or her to read at an early age?

以上三个问题看起来很不一样：问法不一样，用词也不一样，但是这些都不影响它们的本质，即要求考生陈述“reading”的优缺点。参透了这一点，这三个问题的答案就变得异常简单了。

— Do you think reading is good?

— Sure,because I can gain a lot of know ledge from it.

— Why do you think reading is popular among youngsters in China today?

— Well,I think it is because that people can gain a lot of knowledge from it.

— If you had a child in the future,would you ask him or her to read at an early age?

— I guess I would,as my baby would gain a lot of knowledge from it.

以上答案我刻意写得比需要的答案长度略短，主要是为了方便大家看到回答单个话题下同一类问题时的规律，考生在参透 Part1 问题的本质后，可以对问题进行合并，分类准备，既缩短了备考时间，又减少了后期背诵的压力。

## 2、举例型问题

举例型题目从考试的特点上来说主要考查和挑战了考生的词汇量，因为举例子就意味着考生必须使用相关的单词来造句并回答问题。大家在准备 Part1 的过程中，只要发现需要用一个例子（单词）来回答问题的话，基本可以确认这个题目为举例型问题。



我们继续以 Part1 话题——“Reading”作为例子,该话题下的大量问题都属于举例型问题。例如:

What kind of book is popular in your country now?

Are you reading any books now?

Have you ever bought any books as gifts to others?

和论证型问题一样,以上三个问题的问法、用词均不一样,但是这些都不影响它们的本质,即要求考生能够使用相关例子来回答问题。有了这层理解,这些问题就变得非常简单了。

—What kind of book is popular in your country now?

—Actually,I think romantic novels are very popular right now.You know,they really give people a jolly mood.

—Are you reading any books now?

—Yes,I am.I like reading romantic novels right now.You know,they really give me a jolly mood.

—Have you ever bought any books as gifts to others?

—Yes,I have.I have bought some romantic novels to my best friend.You know,they really give her a jolly mood.

同理,以上答案我也刻意缩短了,为了方便大家看到“Reading”这个话题下同一类问题的回答规律。大家会发现在这个话题下,举例型问题使用的具体单词及类型都比较相似。换言之,对于同一个话题,大家并不需要背诵过多的单词。我们以“颜色”这个话题为例,有些考生往往喜欢背诵颜色相关的单词列表,但是就算记住了 30 种颜色的表达,在口语考试的表现和加分上也不会有更多的帮助。因此背诵单词方法要巧而不要钻牛角尖。

### 3、事实信息型问题

在雅思口语 Part1 当中,有一些问题是需要考生根据自身的情况来回答的,例如“与时间长度相关的问题”、“与频率相关的问题”、“与数量相关的问题”等。在回答这些问题时,考生需要根据自己的个人情况作答,所以从答题思路上来说应该没有太多障碍。例如:

Do you have a lot of books?

How often do you read books?

How long have you been reading books?



以上三个问题所代表的就是事实信息型问题，这类题目往往涉及考生的生活情况及相关数据，考生在作答时需要先给出事实信息，再进行相关拓展。但是有了前面两种问题类型作铺垫，事实信息型问题的拓展往往可以借鉴已经准备好的内容。

—Do you have a lot of books?

—Absolutely, I have more than 200 books at home, because I can gain a lot of knowledge from them.

—How often do you read books?

—Well, I read books almost every day. Most of them are romantic novels, as, you know, they really give me a jolly mood.

—How long have you been reading books?

答案一：Frankly speaking, I have been reading books for more than 20 years, because I can gain a lot of knowledge from them.

答案二：Frankly speaking, I have been reading books for more than 20 years. Most of them are romantic novels, as, you know, they really give me a jolly mood.

大家可以看到，第三类问题的答案除了以个人信息作为开头，后段的拓展往往可以借鉴使用前两类中的部分内容。这样考生的准备就更加简化了。

不过很多考生就会有一个疑惑：我准备的内容不是很多，那么会不会出现重复使用的内容？如果是的话，到底准备多少内容为最佳？我在本书第一章已经讲过，每个话题下面通常只会问到四个问题。因此，大家准备的素材数量就很好估计了。我给考生的建议是：同一个 Part1 的话题下，论证型问题准备优点、缺点各两条。举例型问题准备相关单词及短语四个。这样既不需要准备更多的素材，也不容易出现素材重复使用的苦恼。

## 04 | IELTS Part 1 回答策略及 5K 法则

雅思口语 Part1 的考查目标主要集中在日常词汇和基本语法上，因此我为大家准备了 Part1 回答问题的重要原则——5K 法则。所谓的 5K 法则实际上是我根据 Part1 答案的构成总结出的五大采分点，即 5keyfactors。它们是：



① Idea	代表考生的观点、态度等。如：yes/no/it depends 等。
② Argument	代表支持考生观点、态度的理由，可以是优点，也可以是缺点。如：because/cause/as/since/for 所引导的理由。
③ Evidence	代表考生想要举出的例子。如：专有名词、种类等。
④ Extension	代表考生拓展的信息。如：for instance/for example/such as 等所引导的细节或拓展。
⑤ Factual information	代表考生的一些个人信息或数据。如：针对频率、时间长度等做出的回答。

5K 法则可以帮助大家顺利地拓展答案。大家不需要更多的思考，只需要根据自己的喜好适当组合即可。我们来通过例子看看 5K 法则的使用：

— Do you like swimming? Why?

— Definitely, because it can help me relax myself and it also helps me make new friends. For instance, I met my best friend in the swimming class of my high school.

① **Idea:** definitely

② **Argument:** because it can help me relax myself and it also helps me make new friends

③ **Extension:** for instance, I met my best friend in the swimming class of my high school

通过以上例子大家可以清楚地看到 5K 法则的组合使用方法，上题中使用了 Idea, Argument 及 Extension 三大要素。

按照我刚才分出的三大类问题，我为大家总结了 5K 法则的具体使用规律：

- 对于论证型问题：① + ② 的组合最为简捷有效。

① **Idea:** (yes/no/it depends)

② **Argument:** (because/cause/as/since/for)

— Do you like sports?

— Definitely, as I want to lose weight and hang out with my friends, you know, it really helps me to release the pressure.

- 对于举例型问题：③ + ④ 的组合最为简捷有效。

③ **Evidence:** (A, B or C)

④ **Extension:** (for instance/for example/such as)



—What kind of sport is your favorite?

—Well, I like sports that allow me to go to the forests or mountains, such as hiking. You know, the ones that allow me to see some things that other people never get a chance to see.

- 对于事实信息型问题：⑤ + ②或者⑤ + ④的组合都会奏效。

⑤ **Factual information**

+ ② **Argument:** (because/as/since/for), or

+ ④ **Extension:** (for instance/for example/such as)

—How often do you do sports?

答案一：Well, I do sports every day, as I want to lose weight and hang out with my friends, you know, it really helps me to release the pressure.

答案二：Well, I do sports every day. I like sports that allow me to go to the forests or mountains, such as hiking. You know, the ones that allow me to see some things that other people never get a chance to see.

本章节主要帮助大家了解 Part1 的问题分类及回答技巧。只有掌握好以上内容，才有可能在 Part1 的备考和考试时达到理想效果。从下一章开始，我将以话题为单位，为大家提供丰富的相关语料素材，包括优缺点及相关表达。



# 第柒章

---

## Part 1 真题语料库——自选超市





我们在上一章节学习了 Part 1 的结构及答题所需要的技巧。本章节主要针对 Part 1 的话题进行分类分析，并为大家补充高频单词及思路。Part 1 的具体考试流程已经在上一章节讲过，这里不再赘述。

**Part 1 的话题分为必考话题和选考话题两部分。**

**必考话题：**只有三个，不因考试时间、地点的变化而发生改变，一般在考试的过程中会以三选一的形式考查以下三大话题中的一个，因此考生只要参加雅思考试就必须准备这三大话题：

1. Your Study/ Your Work
2. Your Hometown
3. Your Home (Accommodation)

**选考话题：**有近 100 个话题，会根据每月考情发生变化，建议大家关注我每月发布的雅思口语话题预测。使用本书并搭配我每月发布的预测（新浪微博 / 微信公众平台：谢绍东 Shadow），大家可以在极短的时间内完成所有当月 Part 1 话题的备考。

现在大家可以进入 Part 1 的复习，搭配我的预测有选择地进行备考。

## 注意

每一个话题（Topic）我都从“论证型问题”及“举例型问题”等不同的侧面分别给出参考回答，包含多个有关这个话题的优点、缺点及常用单词。大家只需要按照个人情况和需要选择合适的优缺点及单词各 4 个，而不需要把我撰写的理由都背诵。



# IELTS 必考话题 | 01

## 1. Your Study/Work

这个话题的第一个问题都是 “Do you work or are you a student?” 但是之后的问题则会根据这个问题的答案分成 “Study” 分支和 “Work” 分支，大家根据自己的情况各选所需。如果还在上学就只需准备 “Study” 部分，如果已经工作则需要准备 “Work” 部分。

### ① Study



**Do you work or are you a student?**

举例型问题

这个问题不同的考生有不同的回答，我为大家罗列了常见的版本，请大家自己选择。

**常见回答：** Well, I am studying right now/I am a student right now.

**高中生高级版：** Well, I am a first year/second year high school student.

**本科生高级版：** Well, I am a freshman/sophomore/junior student/senior student in college/university.

Well, I am a first year/second year/junior/senior college student.

**研究生高级版：** Well, I am a postgraduate student right now, first/second year actually.

Well, I am a first/second year postgraduate student right now.

**博士生高级版：** Well, I am a PhD candidate right now.



**What school/university do you go to now?**

举例型问题

这个问题难度不高，是典型的举例型题目，考生需要说出自己学校的英文名字，这也要求大家对于自己学校的英文名字一定要熟悉，而且要记得适当拓展自己的答案。具体校名的翻译规则请参考本章选考话题 “School” 部分。

**例句** I go to \_\_\_\_\_.

I'm studying in \_\_\_\_\_.

I go to Harvard University now, which I feel extremely proud of.



★ 选择学校的原因



Why did you choose to go to that school?

论证型问题

**例句** Frankly speaking, I think it is quite easy, because+ 以下理由任选 1~2 条

1. It has great teaching facilities/it is well equipped.
2. Its curriculum arrangement is outstanding; it is efficient and practical.
3. Its extracurricular activities are very diverse and attractive.
4. I am very interested in physics (大家可用自己的专业名称替换左边横线上的单词), and my major in this university ranks on top of China.
5. My university has a very long and colourful history, which is fascinating to me.
6. The students at this school are around my level, and I will have less pressure when I am studying.
7. The students at this school are around my level, and the competitive environment can help me keep getting better every day.
8. The cafeteria of the school is amazing, and the food is very diverse and tasty.
9. I knew I would have many friends in the class, and we would have lots of wonderful time together, as most of the kids in my community went to that school.
10. The teachers and professors there are amazing and very dedicated.
11. Unlike most schools in China, the ratio between teachers and students of this university is very well-balanced, so I have more chance to discuss things with my teachers.
12. The quality of the education there is much better than other schools.
13. The students there are very creative and energetic/friendly and warm-hearted.
14. The students there are willing to learn a lot of things, and thus it has a great atmosphere.
15. It has a great reputation in the region/China.
16. The campus has a beautiful environment and amazing views.
17. You know, the location of my university is an advantage, as I like the climate there, which is humid and cool.
18. It is located in a big city and I will have more job opportunities there.
19. The academic/art environment there is free and full of energy.
20. It is not very far away from my hometown, and I don't want to be homesick.
21. It is located in the centre of the city, so I can go to a lot of different places easily.
22. It is really far away from my home, and I don't want to stay at home any more.



23. All my friends go there, and we want to stay together and have each other's back.
24. It has a great international atmosphere and language learning environment.
25. We have to live in the dorm and do things all by ourselves, so we will be more independent in the future.
26. My father went to that school, and I wanted to be as good as my father, so I went to the same school.
27. It is very free and liberal, so I have many options and choices to do the things that I like.
28. I have a lot of time to explore my interests and discover myself.
29. "Science and democracy" is the motto of our university, you know. I like what it stands for and I truly believe in that. (北大学生专用, 其他学校同学请替换“校训”)
30. Because I am the only Chinese student in the class, I have more chance to practice my English and talk with the local people rather than speak to Chinese people. (如果你在国外学习的话)



### 练习题

以下三个问题和刚才那个问题一样是典型的论证型问题, 虽然问法不同, 但是大家最终会发现它们的答案都会围绕着学校的优点进行论述, 所以以上论据也可以用来回答以下问题。大家快试试吧!

Do you like studying at that school/university?

Do you like studying there?

Do you like being a student there?

### ★专业是什么?

**What's your major?**



**What subject are you studying?**

举例型问题

考生可以基本分为大学生和高中生两种情况。

**大学生：**大学生的专业很多, 在这里不一一举例, 大家可以通过登录外国任意一所大学的官方网站找到自己专业的对应翻译。

**例句** My major is \_\_\_\_, /I major in \_\_\_\_.

1. My major is mechatronic engineering, which is a combination of mechanics and electronics.



2. I major in financial mathematics, which is an interdisciplinary that applies mathematics to the financial industry.
3. My subject is history, which can help me to learn many things from the past and gain a lot of wisdom.

**高中生：**中学生没有专业，但是分为文科、理科和国际班课程。大家一定记得要在这个内容上拓展，素材可以在下一个问题的答案中找到。

**例句** I am studying\_\_\_\_\_.

文科 art subject

理科 science subject

国际课程 international curriculum/course(AP/A-Level/GCSE/SAT/SSAT)

### ★选择专业的理由



Do you like it?

论证型问题

**例句** I like my major very much, as+ 以下理由任选 1~2 条 .

1. It will help me apply for a good university after I graduate.
2. My dream job is\_\_\_\_\_, and this major is the best starting point for me.
3. I think it's easy to learn, and I don't have to stay up late every night in the library.
4. This major is really hard to learn, but I am a warrior, you know, I like challenges.
5. I like this major very much, because I have a great teacher.
6. It suits my personality very well. I don't have to change myself.
7. It is the hottest major in China; it fits people's needs.
8. Our family business needs me to learn this major, so I can help my parents in the future.
9. I was influenced by my parents ever since I was a child, and I have an interest in it.
10. The courses of my subject are very diverse, which means I can have more job options when I graduate.
11. My major in this university ranked on top of China.
12. I think it is the perfect combination of my interest and my future work plan.
13. My major is needed in almost every aspect, so I don't have to worry about finding a job.
14. I think it will have a bright/promising future in the next 10 years.
15. I have been interested in the major ever since I was a high school student.



16. I chose the major in order to get in to the university,which has a great reputation.
17. It will help me to find a good job easily after I graduate.
18. My parents work in the same area as my major,so they can give me a lot of useful information and advice.
19. I want to put my knowledge into practice and this major is very practical.That's why I like it.
20. I don't like to memorize stuff but to create and innovate.That's why I chose this subject.
21. I like art related subjects,and mathematics isn't really my thing,so this major can help me focus on what I'm really interested in.
22. I want to contribute to the society with the knowledge that I learned in this major.
23. This subject can help me go abroad easily in the future,and I really want to see more about the world outside China.

### 练习题

以下两个问题和刚才那个问题一样是典型的论证型问题，虽然问法不同，但是大家最终会发现它们的答案都会围绕着专业的优点进行论述，所以以上论据也可以用来回答以下问题。大家快试试吧！

Why did you choose to study that?

Why did you choose to study those subjects?

### ★最喜欢的科目

### What's your favourite subject?

举例 + 论证型问题

这是高中生很有可能被问到的问题。

**例句** My favourite subject is+ 科目 ,because+ 理由 .

科目	理由举例
Chinese	I love poems and classical Chinese articles.I think they are classic and graceful.
Maths	It is the foundation of many other science subjects.Besides,it makes me a logical person.
English	It suites my interests,and I think it is easy to learn.



Physics	I can use a lot of knowledge that I have learnt from it to solve problems in daily life.
Chemistry	I can use a lot of knowledge that I have learnt from it to solve problems in daily life.
Politics	It helps me view things in a more critical perspective, and be rational.
History	I can learn a lot about the past, so that I can have a better understanding of what's happening now and what will happen in the future.
Geography	I love all kinds of natural views and I want to be a photographer of <i>National Geography</i> someday in the future.
Biology	The eco-biology system is diverse and magical, and I like all kinds of plants and wild animals.
Music	I love singing; it makes me cheerful and happy.
Art	It can help me express myself, and my work of art can inspire others as well.



**How long have you been studying...(your subject)?**

事实信息型问题



**例句** I have been studying \_\_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_\_.

I have been studying accounting for about 2 years.



**How long have you been going to that school/university?**

事实信息型问题



**例句** I have been going to that school/university for \_\_\_\_\_.

I have been going to that school for more than 2 years.

以上两个问题都是 Part1 问题分类中的第三类问题：事实信息型问题。大家需要根据自己的实际情况回答问题，这一类问题我在本书不作大量讲解，请大家以例句为依据加上自己的实际情况即可。

### ★学习中最重要事情

**What's the most important thing in your study life(or part of your study life)?**



**What do you think is the most important part of being a student?**

举例 + 论证型问题



**例句** I think the most important thing in studying is+ 最重要的事 ,because+ 理由 .

最重要的事	理由
the right attitude	If a student has a positive attitude,he or she will put more effort into studying,and more effort means more knowledge.
time management skills	I have to learn so many different subjects with tons of homework every day.If I couldn't manage my time well,it would be impossible for me to finish all of them in time.
the thinking pattern	Most things in this world require people to think in a logical and efficient way,which really helps me to view things clearer.
interest	No one can learn things without interest for a long time.People may get bored and give up at some point.
self-learning	I have such interest in this subject and I will not be satisfied with the knowledge that I merely learn during the class.
a good environment	Studying requires a quiet and peaceful environment,and the academic atmosphere should be positive.
great communication with the teachers	Teachers can help me solve some problems that I don't know how to deal with.
reviewing the lessons	so I can remember more details about the class
an internship	I really need to put my knowledge into practice and use it more freely.
experiments	Doing them with my own hands in the lab leaves me a deeper impression.
paying attention during the class	The most important things are always taught in class, so a good student should pay more attention to what the teacher/professor has to say.
the right study methods	The right methods can help me learn new things independently in the future.
reading a lot of books	I can gain more knowledge from books. They don't have to be academic ones; even novels can help me observe life in different perspectives.



the compulsory course and the special skills that I learned in my major	If I can learn them well, my GPA will be good and I will have a better chance to find a decent job.
motivation	A person will show his best performance when he is motivated and driven, you know, his goal/ plan will push him to go further.
patience and perseverance	With those two qualities, people will establish a well-paced studying habit, which is really necessary for a student to have.

★ 当在学习当中遇到问题怎么办?



What would you do when you have a problem with your study?

论证型问题

**例句** Usually, I will + 以下做法任选 1 ~ 2 条 .

1. Ask my classmates for help, so we can discuss the problem together.
2. Ask my teachers/ professors for help, because they are very experienced and devoted/ dedicated/ responsible.
3. Search on the Internet, as there is nothing that Google cannot solve.
4. Go to the library, because there are a lot of books for me to read and they will help me find answers.

★ 以后的打算



What do you plan to do after you have finished your studies?

举例型问题

**例句** I plan to go to + 地点 for my + 学位 in the future.

地点	学历 / 学位
常见国家: United States, Britain, Canada, Australia, New Zealand	高中文凭 high school diploma 专科 Junior College 本科学士学位 Bachelor's degree 文科学士 Bachelor of Art



城市: London, Paris, New York, Sydney, Boston, Hong Kong, Milan, Budapest, Melbourne	理科学士 Bachelor of Science 管理学学士 Bachelor of Management 工科学士 Bachelor of Engineering 本科双学位 double degree 硕士学位 Master's degree
学校: 大家可根据自己的意向补充学校名称, 如 Oxford University 等。	博士学位 Doctor's degree 本科生 undergraduate 研究生 graduate/ postgraduate 博士生 PhD candidate

1. I plan to go to Britain for my Bachelor's degree in the future.
2. I plan to go to Australia for my Doctor's degree in the future.
3. I plan to go to the Oxford University for my Master's degree in the future.

## 2 Work

“Study”部分针对的是还在上学的雅思考生, 而“Work”这个话题是则针对已经工作的雅思考生, 而这个话题的范围很广, 每种工作的职责也各不相同, 因此本书受篇幅所限无法面面俱到, 只能略举几例。

### ★ 社会人



Do you work or are you a student?

举例型问题

Well, I am working at the moment.



What work do you do?

举例型问题

**例句** I am a \_\_\_\_\_. / I work as a \_\_\_\_\_.

I am a project planner in a company called Oriental Outlook Media Company.



**Why did you choose to do that kind of work (or, that job)?**

**Do you like your job?**

**Would you recommend that job to other people?**



论证型问题

1. It pays quite well, you know, much higher than the average level of the industry.
2. My job fits my major in college perfectly. I am so lucky to get such a suitable position.

**What do you do in this job?**



举例型问题

I do a lot of things, such as project planning and operating/ proposal writing...

★ 未来打算

**Do you plan to continue doing this type of work?**

**Do you plan to continue in this job?**

**What job would you like to do in the future?**



论证型问题

这个问题一般有三种回答：

**决定继续干：** I love my job right now, and the reason why I want to go abroad is that I aspire to do better in this area.

**决定不干了：** Probably no, because I want to gain some different life experiences in the future, so I will quit my job and maybe go to another city.

**不确定：** I'm not sure. You never know, right? Maybe I will keep on doing my job for the next 10 years, or maybe I will change jobs next week. I couldn't predict it.

## 2 Hometown

注意：家乡是自己成长的地方，例如：张三出生在天津，但是一岁时随父母搬家至哈尔滨并一直生活在那里，那么他的家乡就是哈尔滨而不是天津。



## ★ 家乡在哪里

Where's your hometown?

Where's your hometown again?



举例型问题

hometown 这个词指的是一个城市，不是一个省份。要先说城市，后说省份。回答时可以适当拓展一句。

例句

I am a local person.

I am from \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ Province.

I come from \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ Province.

My hometown is \_\_\_\_\_, which is located in \_\_\_\_\_ Province.

1. I come from Taiyuan, the capital city of Shanxi Province.
2. Although I was born in Beijing, I grew up in Tieling and have been living there for 20 years.

## ★ 确定城市大小

Is it a big city or a small town?



论证型问题

城市一般有三种情况：

**大型城市：** It is a big city/ it is a metropolis; everything is so cool.

It is a big city in my mind, and it has everything to make it a big city, you know, the facilities, the education and the living conditions.

It is a big city compared to other cities in the area.

It is a municipality directly under the Central Government, so it is definitely a big city.

**中型城市：** It is a middle-sized city. It is not as big as Beijing or Shanghai, but not a small town either.

**小型城镇：** It is a small town, really in the middle of nowhere.

It is a small town, as it has a relatively smaller population.

It is a small town now, but it used to be big many years ago. You know, how the mighty has fallen.



★ 家乡 / 城市的好处

**Do you like your hometown? (Why?/ Why not?)**

**Did you like growing up there?**



**Would you say it's an interesting place?**

论证型问题

一般城市的好处：

1. It has a long and mysterious history. It is an ancient city.
2. It is very diverse and tolerant, and people can live their own life freely.
3. The resources are rich, and people don't have to worry about the shortage of water or electricity.
4. It is very safe to live there, since there is no protesting or riots.
5. It is very safe to live there, because the people there are very friendly and enthusiastic.
6. It's a very safe place to live in, as the rate of crime is very low.
7. There are a lot of tourist spots/ attractions for people to enjoy, so it is a great place to travel to.
8. Its local snacks are amazing, so it is very cool for people to have a try.
9. All my family and friends are here/ there, and it makes me feel warm and safe.
10. It is an old revolutionary base area, with a famous cemetery of revolution martyrs.
11. There are a lot of former residences where some writers and celebrities used to live.
12. The local dialect/ accent is hilarious. You can't understand most of them, but it is funny.
13. The cultural deposit in the city is unique and charming, and has a huge impact on local people's life.
14. The city planning is marvelous; there are a lot of trees in the parks/ gardens and also along the street.
15. It has four distinct seasons. I get to experience every aspect and attractive part of each season.
16. The climate there is amazing/ awesome/ pleasant. It's like spring all the year round.
17. The climate there is so nice that people take it as a perfect place for retirement/ holiday.
18. It is a coastal city with amazing sea views.
19. I was born and raised here. I have a deep root in this city, and the sentimental value is



irreplaceable.

20. I like the winter in my hometown so much. There are ice sculptures and ice cream, you know, the famous Madier Ice cream.

**大城市的好处：**

1. There are a lot of wonderful entertainment facilities, such as XX park/ XX garden/ XX cinema.
2. People get lots of chances to meet celebrities/ idols.
3. There are a lot of concerts/ shows/ dramas for people to enjoy.
4. It is a modern city, so young people will have a better chance to find a good job.
5. The quality of life there is better, and people will enjoy it more.
6. Life in big city is very convenient, and people can find anything they want there.
7. The quality of education in big cities is much better than in the smaller ones, and students from big cities have a better chance to get accepted by top universities.
8. People in big cities can get access to the latest news and information more easily.
9. It is the economic centre and it will provide enough chances for one to be successful.
10. I can meet more people and friends there. I really love to make new friends.
11. There are a lot of skyscrapers and shopping malls, such as XXX. It is truly a metropolis.
12. People who live in the big cities will have more chance to communicate with foreigners, and more chance to see the world.

**小城市的好处：**

1. The views are fantastic. That's the beauty of small cities.
2. The environment is clean, and the air is fresh.
3. The pace of life in the city is slow and relaxing.
4. The cost of living there is quite low, so people don't have much pressure/ stress.
5. The road condition is amazing, because there are wide roads and fewer cars than big cities, and traffic jams/ congestion are rare there.
6. It is less crowded than big cities, as there is less population, you know, of both the local people and the immigrant workers.



★ 家乡 / 城市的坏处

**What would you say are the bad points of your hometown?**

**Is there anything that you dislike about your hometown?**



**Is there anything that can be improved in your hometown?**

论证型问题

大城市的坏处：

1. The pace of life there is too fast and stressful. I am under pressure every day. (如何改进：I think people should try to enjoy their lives more and get closer to the nature.)
2. It's over-crowded. You will feel suffocated because there are so many people everywhere. (如何改进：I think more small cities should be developed into big ones, so that people wouldn't crowd into big cities only for better job opportunities.)
3. The environment is polluted heavily. The air is very dirty. (如何改进：I think we should reduce the number/ amount of cars and plant more trees.)
4. The air quality is too bad; it is very dusty and the haze happens almost every week. (如何改进：I think we should reduce the number/ amount of cars and plant more trees.)
5. The public transportation system can be improved, since it is painfully crowded, and there are a lot of traffic jams. (如何改进：I think the government should reduce the number/ amount of cars, expand the city and have better city planning in the future.)
6. There are too many car accidents on the roads, which is very dangerous now.
7. There are a lot of people who come from different areas, so it is kind of chaotic and messy.
8. The house prices are very expensive and hard to afford.
9. It is very noisy in the city, which drives me crazy sometimes. (如何改进：We should do better city planning, you know, to keep the community and the highway in different sections.)

小城市的坏处：

1. I don't get to see a lot of new things and my life is exactly the same every day, predictable and boring. (如何改进：The local government should attract more investment so that the local economy can be developed better.)
2. There are few entertainment facilities for people, and the city is not well-developed. (如何改进：I think the local government should build more shopping malls and cinemas,



so that the local people could have more entertainment in their daily life.)

3. There aren't a lot of job opportunities. It is not good for young people's personal career development. (如何改进: I think the local economy should be developed in a relatively faster speed. The more companies, the more job opportunities for young people.)
4. The quality of local education is not as good as in the big cities, and the students in the local area are less competitive than students from big cities. (如何改进: The education system needs to be improved.)
5. The construction of the roads can be improved, coz they have to be repaired every year.
6. There are very few skyscrapers and shopping malls.
7. The city planning could be better, you know, there are a lot of urban villages, which is so chaotic and messy. (如何改进: I think the government should pay more attention and hire more experts to make decisions when it comes to city planning)
8. I think the local government is inefficient. (如何改进: I think the government should have greater supervision regarding officers about corruption.)
9. I think the natural environment is really bad. Serious sandstorms and other natural disasters occur frequently. (如何改进: I think we should plant more trees and introduce some high technology into our city planning.)

### ★ 如何改进城市的缺点



**How do you think your hometown could be improved ?**

举例型问题

此问题一般会跟在上一个问题后,所以上一个问题的每一条坏处后,我都提供了对应的解决方案。除了以上城市坏处后面跟的具体解决方案,所有的坏处都可以通过以下方案解决:

I think the government should devote more money and more attention into the problems that are at hand.

### ★ 最喜欢的地点

**What's your favourite part of your hometown?**



**Are there any tourist attractions in your hometown?**

举例型问题





**例句** My favorite part of my hometown is \_\_\_\_\_.

I like a lot of different places, such as \_\_\_\_\_. I'd like to visit those places next time I go home.

因为考生来自全国各地，所以本章中有关家乡的举例型题目就不再一一列举，大家可以按照以下几个方面去准备。我刻意避开了常见的 Summer Palace/ the Great Wall 等景点，主要是为了让大家的答案能够更好地体现自己的单词水平。一般需要准备五个相关要点：

历史古迹	(参见 Part 1 选考话题 “building”) Prince Gong's Mansion/ the former residence of eunuch Li Lianying/ the Drum Tower/ Lama Temple/ Fort Barbette/ the Terra-Cotta Warrior Museum/ Great Wild Goose Pagoda
现代地标型建筑	Beijing Television Tower/ the Grand National Theater/ Galaxy Soho/ China World Trade Center Tower 3 / the Northern Plaza of Great Wild Goose Pagoda
自然风光	(参见 Part 1 选考话题 “Parks& Gardens”) Fragrance Hill/ Purple Dragon Gorge (青龙峡)
平时常去的地方	(购物中心、电影院、篮球场等) The Joy City (大悦城) / The Gate (新中关) / Solona (蓝色港湾) / Intime City (银泰) / swimming pool/ basketball court
当地小吃	local snacks (参见 Part 1 选考话题 “Food& Cooking”)

以上内容都可以用后置定语从句进行修饰，例如：

My favorite part of my hometown is the Lama Temple, which is a quiet and sacred place for believers to worship and pray.

### ★ 朋友们是否一起长大



**Did your friends also grow up in the same place as you?**

举例型问题

这个问题需要采取抓大放小的策略，使用 most/ some 这种概念是很好的。

**例句** Most/ Some of my friends grew up in the same place as me, but \_\_\_\_\_.

1. ... some of them came from other cities/ countries.
2. ... some of my college friends came from different parts of China.
3. ... some of them moved away.
4. ... some of them went to other cities for university/ college.
5. ... some of them went abroad.



## ★ 是否愿意继续居住在这个城市



Would you like to live there in the future?

论证型问题

这个答案分为四种情况：

1. 如果答案是肯定的，就可以说本话题中“城市的好处”。
2. 如果答案是否定的，可以说本话题中“城市的坏处”，并指出自己想要居住的城市及其好处。如果不举出具体的例子，考官还是会发问的。如：“Which city would you like to live in the future?” 这时大家就需要准备一个具体的城市并加上一条好处。
3. 如果答案不确定，可以说：“I am not sure, as my life after I come back from abroad is very unpredictable/ uncertain. It is really hard to decide now.”
4. 如果想趁着年轻闯一闯，但是老了要落叶归根的话，可以说：“I would love to go to big cities for a better future, but I probably will return to my hometown after I am retired.”

## 3 Your Home (Accommodation)

## ★ 居所的类型



Do you live in a house or a flat?

举例型问题

**例句** Well, I live in a \_\_\_\_\_ ( house/flat/loft), which is located in \_\_\_\_\_ (Haidian/ Chaoyang/ Shunyi) district near the \_\_\_\_\_ ( second/ third/ forth/ fifth) Ring Road.

Well, I live in a house, which is located in Shunyi District near the fifth Ring Road.

## ★ 描述自己的住所

Please describe it a little.



Tell me something about it.

举例型问题

**例句** I've got \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ with a \_\_\_\_\_ as well.

There are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ with a \_\_\_\_\_.

We have two bedrooms, two separate bathrooms and one study with a fireplace/ balcony as well.



**前三空常用词汇：** living room/ bedroom/ dining room/ bathroom/ games room/ kitchen/  
study/ tea room/ basement/ storeroom

**第四空常用词汇：** mini bar/ home cinema/ swimming pool/ garden/ garage/ fire place/  
balcony/ tatami

### 各种家具的英文表达

antique furniture 古式家具	entrance hall furniture 门厅家具
antique reproduction furniture 仿古家具	filing cabinet 文件柜
armchair 扶手椅	fitment 固定家具
bamboo furniture 竹制家具	fittings 家居用品
barstool 吧椅	flap 翻门
bedroom suite 卧室系列家具	flower stand 花架
bentwood furniture 曲木家具	folding chair 折叠椅
beside table 床头柜	foot-stool 踏脚凳
bookcase 书柜	French cabinet 法式桌椅弯脚
bookshelf 书架	French door 落地双窗玻璃门
CD-video storage cabinet 音响组合柜	function sofa 多功能沙发椅
clothes rail 挂衣杆	game table 玩具桌
cocktail cabinet 吧柜, 酒柜	gate-leg table 折叠桌
coffee table 茶几, 咖啡桌	glass cabinet 玻璃陈设柜
combine-unit 组合柜	glazed door 玻璃门
composite furniture 复合家具	hall furniture 厅房家具
cupboard 橱柜	hat and coat stand 衣帽架
dining room set 起居室配套家具	headboard 床头
dining table 餐桌	high chair 高脚椅
divan 长沙发, 沙发床	household furniture 家庭家具
DIY furniture 自装式家具	hutch 碗架
double-bed 双人床	junior desk chair 学生书桌椅
double function sofa-bed 双人沙发床	kitchen cabinet 餐具柜
dressing table 梳妆台	kitchen fitment 厨房固定家具
easy chair 轻便椅	kitchen table 厨房餐桌
end table 茶几	kitchen unit 厨房成套家具



lamp table 灯桌	secretaire 写字台, 书桌
locker 衣帽柜	sectional sofa 拼合沙发
louvered door 百叶窗柜门	semi-CKD 半拆装家具
margin flush door 镶边平板门	shoe rack 鞋架
mattress 床垫	side table 小桌
mirror for chest of drawers 多屉柜梳妆镜	simmons bed 席梦思床
multi-purpose sofa 多用沙发	single bed 单人床
multi-purpose table 多用桌	slat stool 板条凳
nest 茶几	sleeper sofa 可睡沙发
occasional table 休闲桌	sofa bed 沙发床
office furniture 办公家具	sofa table 沙发桌
office seating 办公座椅	soft chair 软椅
office table 办公桌	spring bed; steel cot 钢丝床; 弹簧床
partition wall 隔断	spring-seat chair 弹簧座椅
pembroke table 折叠式桌子	square stool 方凳
planters chair 园艺工用椅	square table 方桌
rattan furniture 藤家具	steel chair 扶手椅
recliner 躺椅	step stool 梯凳
refectory table 长餐桌	straight back chair 直背椅
rocking chair 摇摆椅	studio couch 单人沙发床
rotary chair 转椅	swivel armchair 帆布折叠躺椅
rustic style furniture 乡村风格家具	umbrella stand 伞架
screen 屏风	wardrobe 大衣柜

### ★ 各种住所的好处和坏处

**What do you think are the advantages of living in a house/ flat?**

**Would you say it's a comfortable (or, pleasant) place to live?**



**Do you like to live in a house/ flat?**

论证型问题

**House 的好处：**

1. It is very spacious; I can put a lot of my stuff in my bedroom.
2. Its facilities are amazing, such as the garden/ swimming pool/ garage/ balcony.



3. It is quiet and independent; I won't be bothered by others.

4. I am bored of living in the flat; it would be very refreshing to live in a house for a change.
5. I want to keep pets, so a house could provide more space for them to live a comfortable life.
6. We have a garden where we can plant some fruit and vegetables. It is safer to eat them.

**Flat 的好处：**

1. It is very cozy/ intimate. I will have a closer relationship with my family members.
2. It is very convenient. I don't have to walk far away to get things that I need.
3. It is easy to clean up. I won't feel tired.
4. The view outside of my window is amazing, because we chose to live on a higher floor.
5. The transportation is amazing, since there is a subway station and several bus stops in front of my home.
6. The neighbours in the community can be a real help when I am in need/ trouble.
7. The location is really good, as it is in the city centre; it is very convenient for me to go everywhere.
8. The environment in the community is very nice, and the afforest area is quite huge.
9. My best friend lives next door/ nearby, so it is very convenient for us to hang out or go shopping together.

**★ 具体的房间的好处**

**What's your favourite room in your home?**



**What's your favourite place in your home?**

举例型问题

**例句** I think it is my bedroom, because\_\_\_\_\_.

1. It is a quiet place. I can go to sleep easily without being disturbed.
2. I feel tired easily, and I can fall asleep quickly there.
3. It is my own space. I can let down my guard and do whatever I want.
4. I can listen to some music/ watch movies/ read some books without being disturbed.
5. It is private. I can do whatever I want in it.
6. The view from the window is amazing.
7. The decoration is very cool. I myself picked the colour of my bedroom walls.



8. My computer is in that room and I will not be interrupted by others when I am surfing on the Internet.
9. The ambient lighting of my room is amazing!
10. I love my bed. It is huge, and it is neither too soft, nor too hard. It's really comfortable.
11. There is a home cinema in that room. I can watch movies with my parents or friends there.
12. I can watch DVDs there, or hold a small party.
13. I can turn it into a home cinema, as when I shut my windows and door, it becomes so quiet and peaceful. I can watch movies comfortably.

### ★ 具体房间的坏处



### Is there anything that you dislike about your home? Why?

举例 + 论证型问题

#### 没有坏处：

Since I have been living there for such a long time, I think I have got used to everything. I have nothing to complain about. You know, home, sweet home.

#### 有坏处：

1. I want to have a better air conditioner; the old one is not functioning well.
2. I want to have some new furniture; the old stuff is very out of fashion.
3. I want to change the decoration style. I don't like it now; it is really old-fashioned.
4. I want to have some sports facilities, because I think my family members and I should pay more attention to our health.
5. The bathroom is too narrow for me. I can't move freely when I am taking a bath.
6. I want to rearrange the position of my furniture; it's really inconvenient right now.
7. I want to change the location of my home, because it is very noisy outside.
8. I want to live in the city centre in the future; now it is too far away from work.
9. I don't like my neighbours, as they are very noisy.
10. I want to have a better heating system. The present one is not efficient, and we all feel very cold in winter.
11. I want to have a more spacious room in the future, so I can put more stuff in my home.
12. The bathroom is a little bit too small. I always feel uncomfortable and inconvenient when I am taking a bath/ shower.
13. I think it is a little bit noisy outside. We should change the windows into sound proof



ones.

14. I think the location of my home isn't good, as we don't have enough space to do some leisure activities in the community.
15. The wall of the room is so thick that I cannot get a clear Wi-Fi signal.
16. I cannot get a good Wi-Fi signal in my bedroom; I have to go to the living room to surf on the Internet.
17. I want to live on a higher floor, because there is a huge garden behind our living room, so there are a lot of bugs and flies, phew, so creepy.
18. I don't like the living room, as my father always turns on the TV and it is really loud.
19. I wish we could have an elevator in the building. You know, I live on the 5th floor, and it is so tiring and time-consuming to go up and down the stairs every day.
20. I wish we could have a real gardener someday in the near future, as our garden is not well planned and the design is painfully ugly.
21. The natural light in my bedroom is horrible, you know, our flat is on the wrong side of the building, so I can hardly see the sunlight during the day.
22. I want to change the colour of the floor/ wall. It is not my favourite colour now.

### ★ 房子的装修风格



#### What's the decoration like in your home?

举例型问题

1. It's European style, and there is a lot of exquisite furniture/ a fireplace and a carpet in my home.
2. It's traditional Chinese style. There is some red wooden and bamboo furniture with embossing on them, as well as root carving/ sculptures on the wall.
3. It's modern style. Everything is simple and fashionable. It is kind of like IKEA.
4. It's Japanese style. I think it is very neat, you know, we have a tatami.
5. It's wooden style. I especially like the solid wood furniture, the colour, the handicrafts and the maturity in it.
6. It's pastoral style. People find it relaxing and refreshing, and the colour of this kind of home furnishing is very vivid and bright.
7. It's Mediterranean style. Everything is white and blue. It is so refreshing and cool.



## ★ 如何让自己的房子更好看

**What have you done to your room to make it look nice?**



**How have you decorated your bedroom?**

举例型问题

1. I picked up the colour of my wall paper. I think colour influences me very hugely. I need to see the colour that I like, which is pink. (颜色可以随自己的喜好改动, 具体可参考 Part 1 选考话题 “Colour”。)
2. I chose my own furniture for my bedroom, so it can show my style and taste.
3. I put some pictures/ posters/ paintings/ photos on the wall to make it look nice, such as pictures of my favourite movie star/ basketball player.
4. I grow some plants/ flowers in my room. They can help purify/ refresh the air.
5. I have a wooden sign hanging outside my bedroom door with my name on it, so everybody knows that it is a private place.
6. I painted some paintings on my wall. They are unique and distinct, and there is nothing that can be compared with it.
7. I put a huge bookshelf in my bedroom so that I could read whenever I wanted.
8. I kept some fish in a glass tank. It made my room look so bright/ colourful and lively.
9. I had a glass cabinet to put all my childhood toys in it. It is my mini exhibition.
10. I kept pets in my room to make it look nice. I think they can make the room look alive and warm.

## ★ 未来梦想的居所



**In the future, what sort of home (flat, house etc.) would you like to live in?**

论证型问题

这个答案分为两种情况：

1. 如果答案是 flat, 就可以说 “flat 的好处”。
2. 如果答案是 house, 就可以说 “house 的好处”。



## 02 | IELTS 选考话题

### 1 Advertisement

“广告”这个话题其实在 Part 2 是比较常见的，考生在准备的时候通常以 Part 2 的形式来准备，所以当这个话题在 Part 1 出现的时候考生的素材和题目的对等性往往是比较差的，在回答举例型题目时与本话题相关的单词往往储备不够，论证型题目的论据就更不要提了。所以虽然这个话题在 Part 1 和 Part 2 的题目核心词是一样的，大家还是要单独准备。

#### ★ 广告的优缺点

**Do you like advertisements?**

**Why do you think there are so many advertisements now?**

**Do advertisements (ever) influence your choice about what to buy?**

**How do you feel about advertisements?**

**Do you like the advertisements on TV?**

**Do you think advertising plays a very important role in today's world?**

**Are there many advertisements in your country?**

**Do you think there are too many advertisements (in society/ on TV/ in magazines and newspapers/ on the street)?**



论证型问题

广告的好处：

1. They can help sell more products.
2. People can get more information about the new things in the market.
3. Some advertisements are very attractive and entertaining.
4. Some companies would invite movie stars or singers to be their spokesperson in the advertisements, and I love to watch them very much.
5. Some advertisements influence people's choice about what to buy, as they offer explanations of the usage of the products.
6. Advertisements have become an industry now, and provided a lot of job opportunities.



7. Advertisements provide a perfect opportunity for me to go to the bathroom while I watch TV, as the TV shows are so interesting that I don't want to miss anything.

**广告的坏处：**

1. It is a waste of my time to watch advertisements.
2. Some advertisements are exaggerating the effects of the products. It's kind of like lying.
3. Advertisements always interrupt the TV shows that I like watching.
4. Many advertisements are very biased; they only show the positive side of the goods rather than the negative points.
5. Some advertisements are inappropriate, and they are not good for children.
6. Advertisements during the TV episodes are so teasing that they keep me waiting and waiting.
7. When I watch TV plays, I really want to know what will happen in the end, but right before that, the advertisements always keep me waiting for at least several minutes, and I hate it/ I am sick of it/ I cannot stand it.
8. Some advertisements have no creativity. They just repeat the name of the brand over and over again; it drives me crazy.
9. Some advertisements are printed on stickers, and it is very hard to clean them or take them off the walls.
10. Some advertisements are wrongly investment. The company should put the money into better use.

**★ 广告的种类**

**What kinds of advertisements do you like the most?**

**What kinds of advertisements do you find most interesting?**



**What sorts of advertisements have the deepest impression on people?**

举例型问题



**例句** There are advertisements for\_\_\_\_\_, which are pretty good. You know, they're really helpful in boosting sales.

- food and drink, such as instant noodles and coke
- clothes, such as Dior and Chanel
- cosmetics, especially the perfumes
- electronic devices, such as cellphones



- daily goods, such as tooth paste
- movies, such as a trailer of X-Men
- music festivals or concerts, such as concerts of Britney
- public welfare or interest, such as noncommercial advertisements
- product placement, such as embedded advertisements
- philanthropic reasons, such as advertisements for charities

★ 可以看到广告的地点

What are the various places where we see advertisements?



Where can we (or, what are the various places where we can) see advertisements?

举例型问题

**例句** I can see advertisements in a lot of places, everywhere, actually, such as \_\_\_\_\_. Those places are the best spots for advertising displays.

magazine 杂志

newspaper 报纸

TV 电视

computer 电脑

cellphone 手机

shopping website 购物网站

cinema 电影院

subway 地铁

bus/ bus station 公交车 / 公交车站

plane 飞机

train 火车

taxi 出租车

billboard 广告牌

YouTube

★ 两选一型的论证型题目



Which one do you like better, advertisements on TV or advertisement in magazines?

论证型问题

喜欢杂志广告：

Well, I think I like advertisement on the magazine much more, as I cannot control the advertisements on TV, you know, I have to wait for them to end, but I can choose to ignore the advertisements in magazines.

## 2 Art

“艺术”这个话题是中国考生普遍觉得比较难的雅思口语话题，因为雅思口语考试 Part 1 中大部



分的题目都是比较贴近生活的，但是“艺术”这个话题与考生的日常生活很远，很多中国学生会认为艺术和自己的课业成绩没有关系，也不能帮助自己上好大学，所以忽略了艺术方面的修养。而在雅思口语考试中被问到与艺术相关的话题时，自然没有什么思路，回答也就不是很好了。

### ★ 艺术的优缺点

**Do you like art? (Why?/ Why not?) (If yes: Give more details. If no, say why not.)**

**How do you feel about art?**

**Do you think art is an important part of life?**

**What benefits does (participating in) art bring to people?**

**How important do you think art is in the lives of people?**

**Why do you think people like to have a painting (or other artwork) in their homes?**



论证型问题

艺术的优点：

1. It is a great way to improve a person's taste.
2. It inspires people in many different ways, and people feel no limits or boundaries when they get inspired by art. I
3. t really makes a person more attractive if he has artistic spirit.
4. Places filled with art are mysterious and unspeakably fascinating.
5. Looking at some paintings or drawings can somehow take me to the places the pictures describe.
6. It can offer me an alternative perspective on life and the world, and sometimes it's really nice that I can have a different viewpoint.

艺术的缺点：

1. It is too abstract for some people to understand and enjoy.
2. A lot of artists are no longer paying attention to art itself but the commercial benefits.
3. I think it is very boring for me to try to appreciate art, because I really don't think I have the gift to understand the meaning that artwork tries to convey.
4. Art is very expensive, and not everyone can have access to it.





### Have you ever been to an art gallery before?

举例型问题

Well, I have been to quite a few art galleries and artistic places, such as the 798 art district, which is located in Beijing, and the Taipa Houses-Museum of Macau.

## 3 Bag

这个话题对于女生的吸引力远远大于男生，但是考试的时候大家遇到这个话题的概率是一样的，所以男生们可不能挑食啊！本话题的属性与本书“Fashion & Clothes”话题的属性非常相似，很多内容都是互通的，大家可以串联学习。

### ★ 包的种类



### What types of bags do you usually use?

举例型问题

**例句** I like \_\_\_\_\_ the most, and I think different people have different ideas about what kind of bags that they want to use, but it is very understandable. You know, people's tastes differ.

#### 包的名称：

shoulder bag 单肩包

messenger bag 邮差包

dinner bag 晚宴包

backpack 双肩包

shopping bag 购物袋

book bag 书包

handbag 女性用的手包

wallet 折叠钱包

briefcase 公文包

laptop/ computer bag 电脑包

rucksack/ haversack 露营用的大的双肩背包

purse 一般指女士钱包，放在 handbag 里面，但是美语中直接指 handbag

#### 包的材质：

leather 皮革

feather 羽毛

fur 皮毛

canvas 帆布





## 练习题

What sorts of bags do women like to buy?



## What do you put in these bags?

举例型问题



**例句** Well, normal things, like \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, also \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

一般包里的物品		男生包里的物品
keys 钥匙	glasses 眼镜	PSP (SONY 公司推出的掌上娱乐平台)
wallet 钱包	pen 笔	NDS (任天堂旗下掌上游戏机品牌)
notebook 笔记本	snacks 小吃	女生包里的物品
tissue 纸巾	cellphone 手机	lipstick 口红
laptop 电脑	iPad 平板电脑	perfume 香水
		hand cream 护手霜

## ★ 包的优缺点



## Do you usually carry a bag when you go out?

论证型问题

包的好处：

1. It can free out my hands and give me some room to put my stuff in.
2. I can put a lot of things in it, so I won't worry about leaving things behind.
3. It is very convenient to carry a bag with me, so I can put some necessary things in it.
4. I feel insecure if I don't have a bag with me.
5. It is a great accessory for my outfit.
6. Bags can protect the important things in them from scratches.

包的坏处：

1. It's too heavy to carry, if it is a long way.
2. The backpack is too hot to use in the summer. I will have a sweaty back.
3. It is inconvenient when the bus/ subway is over-crowded.
4. Some bags are very expensive to buy.
5. Some bags are made of fur or leather, and it is very cruel.



### 练习题

When you are buying a bag, what kind of factors do you consider?

请结合本书 Part 1 中 Shopping 话题下素材解答。

## 4 Bicycle/ Bike

“自行车”是一个题目数量很庞大的话题，面对这种题目考生往往选择半放弃的态度，因为里面的题目数量实在是太庞大了，但是如果科学地进行归类，这些题目还是可以分为论证型和举例型题目的。

**Do you like riding a bicycle?**

**What are the advantages (or, benefits) of riding a bicycle?**

**What are the reasons why people ride bicycles?**

**Do you often ride a bicycle? (Why?/ Why not? Where? When?)**



论证型问题

**骑自行车的好处：**

1. It is environmentally-friendly, as people are paying more and more attention to the environmental protection.
2. Riding a bike allows people to feel free and liberal.
3. It is easy to carry around and go to all kinds of places. I don't need to worry about parking lot.
4. It is very cheap to buy a bike, and it is a form of transport that is available to everyone.
5. It is a good way to exercise every day on the way to work/ school.
6. My friends and I got our bicycles at a very early age. It is a way for us to hang out together, so I had to learn how to ride a bicycle; otherwise, I would have been left behind.

**骑自行车的坏处：**

1. The air in the city is very dirty, so riding a bike is not a pleasant experience.
2. It is slower than the car, and if the place is a little bit far away, it will not be a nice journey.
3. It is very easy to get stolen, and if it was, it would be highly unlikely to be found.
4. Riding a bike is very tiring. I will sweat a lot, which would be really an unpleasant experience.
5. It is not very safe riding a bike in China, as the road conditions are extremely



dangerous, and because there are always some people who don't follow the rules.

### ★ 自行车的作用



**What do you use a bicycle for?**

举例型问题

**例句** I think the use of bicycles is very diverse, people can use them for \_\_\_\_\_.

Frankly speaking, it is very relaxing and good for health.

exercises transport sightseeing

### ★ 骑自行车的人群

**What kinds of people ride bicycles?**

**Who is most suitable for riding a bicycle and who is least suitable?**

**Would you say bicycles are suitable for people of all ages?**

**Do children also ride bicycles in your country?**

**Can you think of any people who are not suited to riding a bicycle? (Hint: very young, very old and disabled people)**



论证型问题

**例句** I think everyone can ride a bike as long as they are properly trained/ taught. As it has so many advantages ,for instance+ 骑自行车的好处 .



### 练习题

Would you say it's difficult to learn how to ride a bicycle?

Are bicycles popular in your city? (Why/ Why not?)

What are the benefits for children to ride bicycles?

Why do children enjoy riding bicycles?

Would you say it's safe to ride a bicycle in the city (or, in China)?

What do you think are the advantages (and disadvantages) of bicycles compared to cars?

Has the number of bicycle riders in China changed much in the past few years?

Do you ever ride a bicycle?

Do you think bicycles are suitable for present society?

How old were you when you first learned to ride a bicycle?



## 5 Bird

“鸟类”是雅思口语中另一个特殊含义型题目，是一个相对较老的考题，覆盖的方面非常多。这种题目要求考生能够说出一些鸟的名字，同时还要说出这些鸟的意义等，考官也很喜欢问考生哪些鸟类有特殊含义，并以此来测试考生的单词量等。

**What kind of birds do you like?**



**What kinds of birds are popular in China now?**

举例型问题

**例句** My favourite bird is the \_\_\_\_\_, as \_\_\_\_\_.

日常生活中可见：

**swallow 燕子：** It means that the spring is coming, and it's also a symbol of going back home.

**dove/ pigeon 鸽子：** It means peace. People usually release the doves when there is a celebration or ceremony.

**magpie 喜鹊：** It can bring good luck to people and many people think highly of it.

**myna 八哥：** It is very clever and can imitate people's words, but its feathers are darker and it comes from China.

**parrot 鹦鹉：** It is very clever and can imitate people's words. It has colourful feathers and comes from Africa.

**mandarin ducks 鸳鸯：** In China, they represent long-term relationships.

**wild goose 大雁：** It is the remainder of autumn, as wild geese head south in the autumn every year.



**What kinds of birds do people in your country like the most? Why?**

举例型问题

**例句** Generally speaking, I think Chinese people like \_\_\_\_\_ the most, because \_\_\_\_\_.

日常生活当中不可见：

**crane 鹤：** It represents longevity and appears in the ancient legends of China as the saddle horse of the gods.

**peacock 孔雀：** In China, it means love, but in other countries, it means



- showing off.
- mockingbird 模仿鸟 :** It can copy the songs of other birds; it is so cool.
- hummingbird 蜂鸟 :** It is very small, tiny actually, but it can fly backwards and stay still while flying, so it is impressive, you know, kind of like the helicopter.
- flamingo 火烈鸟 :** It is said that flamingoes sacrificed themselves to bring fire back for human kind.
- swan 天鹅 :** It symbolizes elegance and grace. People think of swans as the representative of royal and class.
- woodpecker 啄木鸟 :** It means hard working and the protector of forests.
- eagle/ hawk 老鹰 :** It means ambition. People use it to refer to someone who has dreams and goals.
- owl 猫头鹰 :** People always believe that owls are magical and that they are the guardians of humans.



Is there any bird that you dislike?

举例型问题

例句

I really don't like \_\_\_\_\_, because \_\_\_\_\_.

**sparrow 麻雀 :** It is common/ regular and Chinese people believe that it is narrow-minded.

**crow 乌鸦 :** It means bad luck and misfortune, you know, generally negative stuff.



Is there any bird that has disappeared?

举例型问题

例句

There are a lot of birds that have disappeared, such as \_\_\_\_\_, you know, completely extinct. It is so sad.

濒危或已灭绝的鸟类 :

pink-headed duck in India 粉头鸭

dodo 渡渡鸟



**Do you like birds?**

**Do you think people in China like birds?**



**Why do people like birds?**

论证型问题

**鸟类的好处：**

1. They have beautiful feathers and sound, which makes me feel relaxed and peaceful.
2. Most of the birds have amazingly good meanings and symbolize the good parts of people's lives.
3. It is an important part of the eco-biology system. Birds can eat insects/ pests and protect the forests.
4. Some birds are important parts of the local culture and legend.
5. Some people believe that birds can bring them good luck and fortune.

**鸟类的坏处：**

1. They are very annoying, especially in the morning.
2. They poop everywhere; it's very dirty.
3. Some birds eat the crops and damage the plants.
4. It's too noisy if there are too many birds around the places people live in; you know, the birds get up very early every day and chirp loudly.
5. Birds can help spread a lot of transmitted diseases, such as H7N9.
6. I was pecked by a bird when I was a kid, so I am so afraid of them ever since. I know they are good for the environment, but I just couldn't love them anymore.
7. I watched a bird flying towards a window and dropped dead after hitting it. I was terrified and would never forget that sight for the rest of my life.

## 6 Birthday

“生日”这个题目是雅思口语 Part 1 中的一个老牌题目，每隔一段时间就会再次回归大家的视野。这个题目需要使用的词汇很多样，考生的生活相关经验也比较丰富，如果适当熟悉题目一定可以获得极好的答题效果。



## 💡 注意

阳历：solar calendar 阴历：lunar calendar 这两个词组虽然不是雅思考试必考词组，但是大家出国后会经常用到，例如春节的日期每年会变，大家向外国同学解释的时候，就要用到“lunar calendar”这个词，所以也跟大家解释一下。

### ★ 特殊的生日



**Which birthdays are especially important in China (in Chinese culture)?**

举例型问题

**例句** I think there are some birthdays that are very important in China. For instance, when someone is \_\_\_\_ years old, \_\_\_\_.

- 1:** it means the baby has a good start for a long and healthy life.
- 12:** it means a full cycle of the 12 Chinese zodiac signs of the lunar calendar, and people will hold a banquet to celebrate in inner Mongolia.
- 16:** people in the southern Fujian province will consider it as the coming-of-age for teenagers.
- 18:** there will be a coming-of-age ceremony, to celebrate that he/ she has become an adult.
- 20:** a girl can get legally married after her 20th birthday in China.
- 22:** a man can get legally married after his 22nd birthday in China.
- 30:** it means a man should be a grown-up man with his own family and career, not a young lad anymore.
- 60:** there will be a celebration for him/ her, as he/ she has lived a long and healthy life.
- 80:** it means longevity; people consider 80 as a lucky age for old people.



★ 生日的庆祝方式

How do Chinese people celebrate birthdays?

What did you do on your last birthday?

Nowadays, how do young people in China celebrate their birthdays?

How do you like to celebrate your birthday?

Do people in China do anything special to celebrate birthdays?



Nowadays, how do young people in China celebrate their birthdays?

举例型问题

**例句** People celebrate birthdays with \_\_\_\_\_, because \_\_\_\_\_, and of course, gifts and making wishes for the following year is a must.

西式的：

birthday cake：everybody can share the happiness by sharing the cake.

birthday party：people will have so much fun together.

中式的：

red eggs：it is a celebration for a healthy and good year for the new born baby.

birthday noodles：it means longevity, i.e. a long and healthy life.

birthday peach：it is for old people to wish them for a longer life and healthy year.

pocket money：it is a modern gift from parents for children's birthdays.

family gatherings：Chinese people believe that the blessing of the family is important on birthdays.

★ 生日礼物的好处

Do you think it's important to give a special gift to someone on his/ her birthday?



论证型问题

**例句** Definitely, we give gifts, as \_\_\_\_\_.

- it makes people feel happy and respected
- it is the polite thing to do
- it represents people's good intentions and best wishes

(更多理由可参考本书“Gifts”话题。)



**Do you think it's important for people to celebrate birthdays?**

**Do people in China have birthday parties?**

**Do people in China celebrate birthdays?**



**Are people's birthdays very important in China?**

论证型问题

**生日的好处：**

1. It provides a chance for families and friends to get together and celebrate. It is a happy occasion.
2. I think birthday is a great chance for families or friends to go out and have some fun.
3. Some birthdays in China have special meanings, and they are worthy of celebration, such as the age of 1/ 18/ 30/ 60/ 80, etc.
4. It is a great way to have fun with my friends and relieve the pressure.
5. I can get a lot of birthday presents and the blessings from my friends and family.
6. I can have a great meal or a birthday party, regardless of whether it's mine or other people's birthdays.
7. It means that I am getting one year older and becoming more mature.
8. It is very important for kids to have birthday parties with their classmates, so that they can make more friends.
9. It gives adults a good excuse to have some fun with their friends.
10. I can eat the birthday cake, which is very tasty. Although it is very expensive and contains a lot of calories, it is my guilty pleasure.
11. Nobody will hold anything against me on my birthday, and I will be the king/ queen of the day. It's surely nice to be in charge.

**生日的坏处：**

1. Girls don't like to celebrate their birthdays after 25, because they want to stay young and pretty.
2. It is a reminder to tell me that I get one year older, which used to make me feel so happy but now just makes me feel super annoyed.
3. The birthday party will cost a lot of money if I hold it in a club or a bar.
4. If I have a birthday party at home, it will be such a mess, and I will have to tidy things up afterwards.
5. I will feel very lonely and homesick if my birthday is all by myself in a place far away



from home.

6. I don't like my birthday, because my parents always forget it, you know, two or three days later, they will say: "Oh, wasn't it your birthday three days ago?"
7. I hate my birthday, because it is during the winter holidays, and my friends are always far away from me, so we can't celebrate it together.
8. I am not a very sociable person, so sometimes I prefer a private birthday party all by myself, but now my family and friends always hold big parties for me and I don't like it.

★ 两选一题目

**Are birthdays more important for children or for adults?**

**In your opinion, is it more important for children to celebrate birthdays than for adults?**



举例型问题

这两道是选单边的题目，只需要选择 children 或者 adults 一边来说即可，不需要将两边都进行论述。

**孩子如何庆祝生日：**

**Birthdays are such important occasions for children. Children will \_\_\_\_\_.**

- sing birthday songs
- play some games
- look forward to eating cakes

**成人如何庆祝生日：**

**Adults will \_\_\_\_\_. It is a great way for adults to have some fun.**

- drink some beer/ cocktails/ red wine
- go to bars
- throw birthday cake in each other's faces rather than eat it

## 7 Boat

“船”是一个相对来说题目比较少的话题，考查的点基本上维持在个人经历（如，是否坐过船，用船做些什么，哪里可以划船之类）以及船作为交通工具的利弊分析上。这个题目不太符合中国人的生活习惯，因为外国人有钱往往喜欢买游艇或者出海，或者父子两人开条小船去河边钓鱼也是其乐融融，但是大部分中国人没有这种习惯和风俗，这就造成了思路上的盲点。



## 💡 注意

与船相关的单词在话题“Transportation”中已经介绍过，这里着重介绍一下这些单词的区别：

ship：承载量大的船的统称（大型客船、货船均可）

boat：承载量小的船的统称（两人、三人、四人等）

speedboat/ motor boat：快艇，有马达的船

cruise/ tanker：游轮，对豪华大型船只的称呼（“泰坦尼克号”等）

ferry：渡船，渡轮

yacht：游艇（一般用于水上娱乐）

### ★ 用 boat 做的事情



What have you ever done by boat?

举例型问题

**例句** I can do a lot of things on a boat, such as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. Actually, I think it is a kind of relaxing to do things on a boat.

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| ● fishing                                 | ● dating                      |
| ● painting                                | ● sightseeing                 |
| ● listening to music                      | ● taking photos of the views  |
| ● having a small party                    | ● watching birds/ whales      |
| ● having a picnic                         | ● watching the stars at night |
| ● going on a field trip during the spring |                               |

### ★ 划船的地点



Where can people in your hometown go for boating?

举例型问题

**例句** Usually, people from my hometown go rowing \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_, and I think it is the best place to go, as the views and scenery there are so good.

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| ● in the river | ● on the lake |
| ● in the pond  | ● in the sea  |
| ● in the park  |               |



**Do you like boating? Why do you like/ dislike it?**

**Do Chinese people usually travel by boat?**



**Would you like to buy a boat in the future?**

论证型问题

**优点：**

1. It is very relaxing when I am on a boat, you know, feeling the breeze blowing through my hair.
2. It is peaceful and quiet on a boat when I am all by myself.
3. I can do a lot of things on a boat, such as fishing/ listening to music and drawing.
4. I can enjoy the beautiful sea views/ water scenes when I am on a boat.
5. I enjoy the liberty to wheel my boat to anywhere I want to, and I feel so free.
6. I feel excited and nervous at the same time when I am wheeling the boat. It's awesome.

**缺点：**

1. I feel tired easily, so I don't like rowing.
2. I cannot swim, you know, I am a landlubber, so I fear the water and the boats.
3. Most of the rivers and lakes in China are heavily polluted. I don't like rowing a boat in the dirty and smelly water, you know, it would become a disaster if I fell into the water accidentally.
4. I am afraid of water, and I don't like anything related with water.
5. I feel intimidated, as I need to keep alert all the time and keep a reasonable distance from the other boats to avoid accidents when I am wheeling a boat.

## 8 Book

### ★ 书的种类

**What kind of books do you like to read?**

**What kind of books do you read for enjoyment?**

**What kind of books do you usually read?**

**What kind of things do you like reading?**

**What kind of books do average adults in China read?**



What reading materials do different kinds of people like?



Are there any types of books you dislike reading?

举例型问题

**例句** I think \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ are very popular/ attractive. I could read them for hours without noticing the time pass.

类型：

science fiction 科幻小说

fairy tale 童话

horror 恐怖小说

web fiction 网络小说

legend 传奇

myth 神话

love stories 言情小说

poem 诗歌

anime 动漫绘本

drama 戏剧，剧本

history books 历史书

philosophy 哲学

economic books 经济

politics 政治，政治学

reference books 参考书；工具书

social science 社会科学

social commentary 社会评论

professional books 职场书籍



练习题

What sorts of things do children like to read?

What sorts of things do children in China like to read?

When you were young, what books made the greatest impression on you?

What kinds of books did you like reading when you were a child?

What types of things books do you dislike reading?

**补充单词：**

**国内热门书籍**

Journey to the west / Pilgrimage to the West / The Adventures of Super Monkey / A Monkey's Story 《西游记》

Heroes of the Marshes / Water Margin / All Men Are Brothers (赛珍珠译) / Outlaws of the Marsh / Tales of the Marshes 《水浒传》

Romance of the Three Kingdoms / The Three Kingdoms / The Chronicles of the Three Kingdoms 《三国演义》

A Dream of Red Mansions / The Story of the Stone (David Hawkes 译) / Dream of the Red Chamber (杨氏夫妇译) 《红楼梦》



The Art of War 《孙子兵法》

The Analects 《论语》

The Chuang Tzu 《庄子》

Book of Odes 《诗经》

Records of the Grand Historian 《史记》

My Country and My People 《吾国与吾民》(林语堂)

The family 《家》(巴金)

A Surrounded City 《围城》(钱钟书)

Midnight 《子夜》(茅盾)

Love in a Fallen City 《倾城之恋》(张爱玲 Eileen Chang)

Never-flower in Never-dream 《梦里花落知多少》(三毛 Echo)

My Life as Emperor 《我的帝王生涯》(苏童)

Turn Left, Turn Right 《向左走, 向右走》(几米 Jimmy)

Wolf Totem 《狼图腾》(姜戎)

Currency Wars 《货币战争》(宋鸿兵)

The Graver Robbers' Chronicles 《盗墓笔记》(南派三叔)

#### 国外热门书籍

The Hunger Games 《饥饿游戏》(〈美〉苏珊·柯林斯 Suzanne Collins)

The Twilight Saga 《暮光之城》(〈美〉斯蒂芬妮·梅尔 Stephenie Meyer)

Twilight 《暮色》

New Moon 《新月》

Eclipse 《月食》

Breaking Dawn 《破晓》

Harry Potter 《哈利·波特》(〈英〉J.K. 罗琳 J. K. Rowling)

Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone 《哈利·波特与魔法石》

Harry Potter and the Chamber of Secrets 《哈利·波特与密室》

Harry Potter and the Prisoner of Azkaban 《哈利·波特与阿兹卡班的囚徒》

Harry Potter and the Goblet of Fire 《哈利·波特与火焰杯》

Harry Potter and the Order of the Phoenix 《哈利·波特与凤凰社》

Harry Potter and the Half-Blood Prince 《哈利·波特与混血王子》



Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows 《哈利·波特与死亡圣器》

Les Miserables 《悲惨世界》(〈法〉维克多·雨果 Victor Hugo)

The little Prince 《小王子》(〈法〉安东尼·德·圣埃克絮佩里 Antoine de Saint-Exupéry)

A Brief History of Time 《时间简史》(〈英〉史蒂芬·霍金 Stephen Hawking)

How to Win Friends and Influence People 《人性的弱点》(〈美〉戴尔·卡耐基 Dale Carnegie)

War And Peace 《战争与和平》(〈俄〉列夫·托尔斯泰 Leo Tolstoy)

One Hundred Years of Solitude 《百年孤独》(〈哥伦比亚〉加西亚·马尔克斯 Gabriel García Márquez)

Stray Birds 《飞鸟集》(〈印〉泰戈尔 Tagore)

Meditation 《沉思录》(〈古罗〉马克·奥勒留 Marcus Aurelius)

Thus Spake Zarathustra 《查拉图斯特拉如是说》(〈德〉尼采 Nietzsche)

The Notebook 《恋恋笔记本》(〈美〉尼古拉·史帕克 Nicholas Sparks)

Eat Pray Love 《一辈子做女孩》(〈美〉伊丽莎白·吉尔伯特 Elizabeth Gilbert)

P.S. I Love You 《附注：我爱你》(〈美〉西西莉亚·埃亨 Cecelia Ahern)

the lovely bones 《可爱的骨头》(〈美〉艾丽斯·西伯德 Alice Sebold)

The Time Traveller's Wife 《时间旅行者的妻子》(〈美〉奥黛丽·尼芬格 Audrey Niffenegger)

No Complain World 《不抱怨的世界》(〈美〉威尔·鲍温 Will Bowen)

Sleeping Murder 《沉睡的杀人案》(〈英〉阿加莎·克里斯蒂 Agatha Christie)

Norwegian Wood 《挪威的森林》(〈日〉村上春树 Murakami Haruki)

**Do you like reading? (Why?/ Why not?)**

**Is reading books important for you now?**

**Do you think reading is important? (Why?/ Why not?)**

**Do you read a lot nowadays?**

**Do you think adults should read more?**

**Do you think children today should spend more time reading?**

**Do you think children like reading nowadays? (Why?/ Why not?)**



论证型问题

书的优点：

1. It suits my personality. I am a very quiet person, and I like to be in a quiet place.



2. I joined a reading club. It can help me make new friends, because we share the same passion for the same books.
3. It provides a lot of knowledge that I have never encountered before.
4. It will improve my taste in art/ food/ sports.
5. It can help me relieve pressure and relax.
6. It can help me clam down.
7. It can help me learn something new.
8. It can cultivate my imagination and creativity.
9. It will have a positive influence on society and social trends.
10. It can help me express my own feelings.
11. It has a happy ending. I like comedies.
12. It can broaden my horizons.
13. Some books can help people pay more attention to special groups of people or particular social phenomena.

**书的缺点：**

1. Reading takes too much time and energy, and I won't have enough time to do other things.
2. It doesn't help me in my social life, not as much as sports or joining in a club.
3. It will harm my eyes if I read too much.
4. It may contain some inappropriate information.
5. It is not environmentally friendly; people may cut down a lot of trees to make books.
6. It is very inconvenient to carry books around, which are so heavy, such as the encyclopedia.



**练习题**

可借鉴本书“Gifts”话题。

Would you ever give a book as a gift to one of your friends?

Would you like to write a book?

Would you like to receive a book as a gift?

How would you feel if someone gave you a book as a gift?

Would you ever give a book as a gift to one of your friends?



## 9 Building

“建筑”类话题一般考查考生对传统建筑和现代建筑的偏好,例如“更喜欢传统建筑还是现代建筑”之类的问题。同时,考生还需要举例说出常见的传统及现代建筑的类型,所以相关词汇也需要掌握。

### ★ 新老建筑对比

**Compare old buildings and modern buildings. Which do people prefer to live in?**

**How have buildings changed in the past few years in your hometown?**

**How do people in China feel about old buildings?**

**Do old people and young people in China have the same attitudes towards old buildings?**

**Is it important to preserve old buildings? (Why?)**



**Do you think it's worth the money to preserve old buildings?**

论证型问题

**传统建筑的好处：**

1. They are symbols of the traditional culture, representing the art tastes and the intelligence of the country.
2. Old buildings can help people preserve precious memories, especially when they lived there for along time.
3. Many old buildings have historic meanings; maybe something important happened there.
4. Traditional buildings are more valuable, because they are usually in the central area of the city.

**传统建筑的坏处：**

1. They are not as efficient as modern buildings, and their capacities are much smaller than modern ones.
2. The facilities in old buildings always needs mending, which is troublesome.
3. It is not safe to live in the old buildings, as most of them don't have smoke alarms.

**现代建筑的好处：**

1. Modern buildings have advanced facilities, such as elevators/ lifts and fire alarms.
2. Modern buildings are usually very clean and nice, and the services of the community are very good.
3. The water and electricity supply is very stable in modern buildings.



**现代建筑的坏处：**

1. They have no unique character; they all look the same.
2. Modern buildings isolate neighbours from one another, and people have much fewer chances to meet or chat with each other.
3. They are ugly. Some designers just want to show their personality so badly that they ignore the sense of beauty.
4. Modern buildings use a lot of glass. The reflection is too bright and sometimes cause car accidents, so light pollution is very serious.

★ **建筑类型**



**What kinds of buildings are popular in China?**

举例型问题

**例句** It must be \_\_\_\_\_ + 传统 / 现代建筑的好处 .

It must be \_\_\_\_\_ + 现代建筑的好处 .

**传统建筑：**

bungalow 平房

quadrangle dwellings 四合院

palace 宫殿

tower 塔

temple 庙

**现代建筑：**

studio apartment 酒店式公寓

flat 公寓

mansion 宅邸

villa 别墅

skyscraper 高楼

shopping mall 购物广场



**练习题**

What aspects of culture do old buildings reflect?

## 10 Car

“汽车”这个话题是一个比较老牌的题目，在考试中出现的频率也比较高，很多考生都会遇到。这个话题本质上的难点在于，由于很多考生年纪较小，对车关注不多，这样就造成了缺少答题的背景思路，从而导致“烤鸭”们感到困难。



What kind of cars do you like?



What sort of cars are popular in China now?

举例型问题

**例句** I think people's tastes differ, and it also shows in choosing cars. Many people, including me, like \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_.

高档车：

Bugatti 布加迪

Koenigsegg 柯尼塞格（手工）

Pagani 帕加尼（手工）

Lamborghini 兰博基尼

Ferrari 法拉利

Aston Martin 阿斯顿·马丁（部分手工）

Spyker 世爵（手工）

Bentley 宾利

Hummer 悍马（停产）

Porsche 保时捷

Maybach 迈巴赫（民用停产）

LINCOLN 林肯

中档车：

Lexus 雷克萨斯

Chevrolet 雪佛兰

Ford 福特

Mazda 马自达

Renault 雷诺

Chrysler 克莱斯勒

KIA 起亚

HYUNDAI 现代

GM 通用

NISSAN 尼桑

DAEWOO 大宇

TOYOTA 丰田

HONDA 本田

Rolls-Royce 劳斯莱斯

BMW 宝马

Cadillac 凯迪拉克

Audi 奥迪

Landrover 路虎

Jaguar 捷豹

Maserati 玛莎拉蒂

Mercedes-Benz 梅塞德斯·奔驰

Alfa Romeo 阿尔法·罗密欧

Volkswagen 大众

Lotus 莲花

Buick 别克

OPEL 欧宝

SAAB 萨博

Jeep 吉普

Volvo 富豪（沃尔沃）

FIAT 菲亚特

Mitsubishi 三菱

Peugeot 标致

Morgan 摩根

Triumph 凯旋

Dodge 道奇

Subaru 斯巴鲁

Citroen 雪铁龙





**低档车：**

SUZUKI 铃木

BYD 比亚迪

SKODA 斯柯达

Geely 吉利

ISUZU 五十铃

Chery 奇瑞

SANTANA 桑塔纳

**Why do you think so many modern people drive cars?**

**Do you think it's important to get (or, to have) a driver's license?**

**Do you think it's necessary to learn to drive?**

**Do you often drive a car? (Why?/ Why not?)**



**Do you have a driver's license? (Why?/ Why not?)**

论证型问题

**车的好处：**

1. It is more convenient to drive a car, because people can go to a lot of different places without much trouble.
2. If my family members need to go to school or work, I can drive them there.
3. I think it is a relatively safer way to travel, better than by bicycle.
4. If there is anything urgent, for instance, one of my family members gets injured, I can take them to the hospital immediately by car.
5. It is a symbol of one's social status, because people tend to judge others by their cars or clothes. If you drive a fancy car, such as a sport car, people will regard you with special respect.
6. Driving a car needs skills, and it is necessary to learn them, whether you like it or not.
7. It gives me a lot of freedom to go wherever I want to go.
8. Driving a fancy car will definitely make me look cool and attracts a lot of attention.
9. It's like an adventure when I drive a car to a place where I have never been before.
10. I really enjoy the view that I saw along the way when I am driving. I will miss them if I go by train or plane.
11. Driving a car all by myself is very comfortable and clean. If I take a taxi, I would never know who has been sitting there before. I don't like that feeling at all.

**车的坏处：**

1. I get lost all the time. If I have to drive to some place all by myself, I will probably get



lost.

2. The large amount of automobile exhaust is a huge problem for the environment.
3. The safety of cars is always a huge problem. It's actually very dangerous to drive a car on the highway. Everyone with a sense of responsibility should pay attention to safety problems when driving.
4. Sometimes there will be small accidents on the road, which might not be dangerous, but are very troublesome. I really don't like driving when that happens.
5. I usually feel very tired when travelling by car for a long trip; my back hurts.
6. I always have carsickness when I travel by car, and it makes me want to hurl/ vomit/ puke/ throw up.
7. I don't like the smell of gasoline, you know, it makes me sick/ it makes me want to throw up/ puke/ vomit.
8. I think it costs a lot to drive a car. For example, parking lots are hard to find, and the parking fees/ insurance/ the price of gasoline is very high in China.

### 补充知识

SUV——SUV的全称是 Sport Utility Vehicle, 即“运动型多用途车”, 20 世纪 80 年代起源于美国, 是为迎合年轻白领阶层的爱好而在皮卡底盘上发展起来的一种厢体车。离地间隙较大, 在一定的程度上既有轿车的舒适性又有越野车的越野性能。

MPV——MPV 的全称是 Multi-Purpose Vehicle (或 Mini Passenger Van), 即“多用途汽车”。它集轿车、旅行车和厢式货车的功能于一身, 车内每个座椅都可调整, 并有多种组合的方式。近年来, MPV 趋向于小型化, 并出现了所谓的 S-MPV, S 是 Small (小) 的意思, 车身紧凑, 一般为 5~7 座。

RV——RV 的全称是 Recreation Vehicle, 即休闲车, 是一种适用于娱乐、休闲、旅行的汽车, 首先提出 RV 汽车概念的国家是日本。RV 的覆盖范围比较广泛, 没有严格的范畴。从广义上讲, 除了轿车和跑车外的轻型乘用车, MPV、SUV 及 CUV 等都可归属于 RV。

## 11 Card

“卡片”的含义其实比较多元, 圣诞卡、生日卡、明信片都可以归类为“卡片”, 所以如果考生可以将自己的思路放大, 那么一定可以做到“脑洞大开”, 出口成章。



**Do you give cards to your friends?**



**Have you ever given cards to your friends?**

举例型问题

**例句**

**Actually, I like cards very much. I think they are fun and full of artistic tastes, so I give cards to my family and friends all the time, such as \_\_\_\_\_.**

- Birthday card
- Holiday card (Christmas card/ New Year's card/ Valentine's Day card/ Thanksgiving Day card)
- postcard



**Do you receive many letters or cards?**

论证型问题

**卡片的优点：**

1. It has a lot of designs and patterns, and I can have a lot of options.
2. It is lovely and exquisite, making the person who received the card feel warm and happy.
3. It can enhance my relationship with friends and family members.
4. The card can show others that I am more sincere than those who just send emails.
5. I will keep some of the meaningful cards, you know, which will remind me of my friends.
6. It is a great way to keep in touch with other people.
7. It's a way to tell people that they miss each other. For instance, my friends and family will send me a lot of cards when they are travelling.
8. It represents my best wishes and love to my friends when I send cards to them, such as birthday cards.

**卡片的缺点：**

1. There is a huge possibility that the cards will get lost during the delivery.
2. I don't know how to deal with them and how to keep them when I receive too many cards.
3. It is not practical and it wastes a lot of trees to make cards.
4. Usually girls would love to send cards; boys are not very interested in it.
5. I don't have that kind of habit to send postcards to other people.
6. Everyone can see the content of the card, which makes me feel exposed when I receive one.



## ★ 收到卡片的情况

Do you ever receive letters or cards?



When was the last time you received a card?

举例型问题

**例句** I received some cards \_\_\_\_\_, I felt quite happy about it, you know, it meant someone cared about you and missed you.

- during last new year
- during the Christmas season
- on my last birthday
- on Valentine's Day
- when I was in hospital
- when I stayed in the Sofitel/ Bullman Hotel



## 练习题

Which do you think is better, a card or a letter?

## 12 Cellphone/ Mobile Phone

“手机”这个话题是电子产品类话题和通信类话题的结合体，所以有关它的论据包含这两大类话题主体的优点和缺点。如果大家熟悉电子产品类和通信类话题的其他题目，会发现它们有很多相似甚至是相同的点，所以这个题目难度本身不太高，大家同时还需要掌握一些手机的品牌及其发音。

## ★ 电话的品牌



What was your first mobile phone?

举例型问题

**例句** I got my first cellphone when I was 14 as a birthday present. It was a/ an \_\_\_\_\_. I liked it very much, and all my friends were so jealous of me.

iPhone

Motorola

Blackberry/ Rim

Sony Ericsson

Nokia

Sharp

HTC

Oppo

Samsung

Lenovo





### 练习题

Do you have a mobile phone?

### ★ 电话的功能

What do you use it for?



What feature (or, function) of your cellphone do you like the best?

举例型问题

**例句** I use it for many things, such as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. It is truly convenient.

- making phone calls 打电话
- texting short messages 发短信
- having visual meetings 开视频会议
- chatting with my friends by an app called Wechat 发微信
- listening to music 听音乐
- watching movies 看电影
- playing games 玩游戏
- surfing on the Internet 上网
- using it as an alarm clock 当闹钟
- taking photos 拍照
- shooting video clips 拍视频
- calculator 计算器
- using FaceTime with my friends and family 和家人朋友视频聊天

Do you think cellphones are important for modern people?

Is there anything you dislike about using cellphones?



Is your cellphone important for you in your daily life?

论证型问题

手机的好处：

1. I can play some amazing games on my cellphone, such as the Street Fighter 4.
2. There are a lot of applications for me to use or play, such as the Wechat/ Microblog/ Evernote.
3. It can help people to get in touch with others easily, and it's quite convenient.



4. It is a mini multifunctional leisure centre. I can do almost everything on it.
5. I can surf on the Internet with my cellphone and it is very convenient.
6. I can listen to music or watch movies when I am on the bus or subway on my cellphone. It can help me kill some time.
7. It is a great way to learn English through cellphone. I can look up words in the dictionary on my cellphone.
8. It can help me save a lot of time. I remember my mother told me that, 20 years ago, she had to look for a public phone on the street if she wanted to call someone.
9. I feel insecure if I go out without my cellphone, as I need it for many reasons, you know, such as keeping in touch with my friends.

#### 手机的坏处：

1. It gives out radiation, and damages the brain. A lot of people have headaches, because they talk too much on their cellphones.
2. It can be a huge distraction for people when they are at school or at work. People would surf on the Internet or play games when they should be studying or working.
3. Smart phones waste too much battery. I have to recharge it every day and it is very inconvenient.
4. Smart phones become slower or even shut down if I use too much software at the same time.
5. It wastes a lot of my time; every time I download a new app, I will spend a lot of time on it.
6. It can be very annoying if I forget to turn off my mobile phone in public places, as it will bother other people.
7. I feel exposed to the public. People can know my location through my cellphone, which makes me feel insecure.
8. The signal sometimes isn't very good, and it will make people feel worried about me when they cannot reach me through my phone.



#### 练习题

Who do you call?

For what purposes do you make or receive phone calls?



### 13 Children

“孩子”是雅思口语考试 Part 1 中和人物有关的话题之一，这个话题与“family& friends”话题相仿，都需要一些与性格相关的词汇，但是这个话题因为主题集中在低龄，又限制了这些和性格相关单词的使用，所以请大家精确掌握这些性格词汇的含义。



Do you get along well with children?

举例型问题

**例句 1** I can get along with children extremely well, because I think they are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. What's not to like, right?

孩子的优点：

lovely/ cute/ adorable 可爱的

innocent 纯洁的

honest/ earnest 诚实的

talented 有才华的

sweet 甜美的

energetic 有能量的

generous 大方的

lively 有活力的

quite 安静的

**例句 2** I can't bear children, as they are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, just a bunch of little spoiled princes and princesses.

孩子的缺点：

naughty 淘气的

selfish 自私的

cocky 自大的

annoying 闹腾的

arrogant 自大的

crybaby 爱哭鬼



#### 练习题 1

What kind of child were you (when you were little)?



#### 练习题 2

与本书“Game”话题合并即可。

Do you often come into contact with children?

What do you do when you are with these children?

How often do you play with children?





## 练习题 3

与本书“Sports & Outdoor Activities”话题合并即可。

What did you like to do when you were a child?

What did you like to do for play when you were a child?

What activities did you like to do when you were a child?

## 14 Collecting

“收藏”这个话题是雅思口语的老牌题目，多年之前就在考试中出现。但是很多“烤鸭”认为收藏不是平民爱好，觉得有钱人才可以收藏，也认为只有昂贵的字画或者玉石才算是收藏品。但其实几乎每个人都有收藏的爱好，例如：我喜欢《街头霸王》这款游戏，所以我不仅购买了这款游戏，还买了印有“春丽”图案的T恤，以及相关的漫画作品及DVD制品，其实这些都是收藏品。所以大家之前对“收藏”的理解可能是比较狭义的。希望通过本话题的学习，可以让大家更好地理解和体会这个话题。

**Do you collect anything as a hobby?**

**Have you ever collected anything?**

**Do you still collect them now?**

**If you had a lot of money, what would you like to collect?**

**Did you collect anything such as stamps or CDs when you were a child?**

**What are some examples of things that some people collect (as a hobby)?**



**Does anyone in your home collect anything?**

论证型问题



**例句** I think people's interests really affect their choices when it comes to collecting.

For instance, some people may collect\_\_\_\_\_, while others may fancy\_\_\_\_\_.

erasers

perfume bottles

Lighters

Stamps

cards

books

coins, paper money

CDs

magazines

high-heels

ear rings

sun-glasses

postcards

watches

rings

key-chains

jade/ diamond

NDS Game Cards







## 练习题

Do boys and girls usually collect the same things?

**Why do you like collecting things?**

**Is collecting a popular pastime in China?**

**Do people in your country like to collect things?**

**Do a lot of people in China collect things and what do they collect?**

**Why do you think people like collecting things?**

**What are the benefits of collecting?**

**Do you think you will collect anything in the future?**

**Would you collect something that you think will have value in the future?**



论证型问题

**收藏的好处：**

1. Collecting will help people gain some knowledge about the things they collect.
2. I like the design of them. They are exquisite and detailed.
3. I get the sense of satisfaction after I have got a whole collection of them.
4. Some of the collections will be valuable in the future, so I can make profit out of them.
5. It is a hobby for me, and it's wonderful to have a hobby in my life. I'm passionate every day.
6. It will help children learn to classify things and put them into the right order.
7. It will create happy memories for you.

**收藏的坏处：**

1. It will cost me a lot of money. No matter what kind of things I am collecting, as long as I buy them every now and then, it will be a huge cost.
2. It will take up too much of my time, and I will miss a lot of wonderful things in my life if I pay too much attention to my collecting.
3. People's interests change from time to time, so the collection I've made may turn into a waste when I'm not interested in it anymore.



## ★ 值得收藏的物品



What items are considered collectible in your country?

举例型问题

I think there are two kinds of things that are worth collecting. One is something valuable, such as jades or paintings. The other are things that have sentimental value, like gifts from family or friends.

## 15 Colour

“颜色”是雅思口语 Part 1 中另一个特殊含义型话题,“Flower”、“Bird”等话题中也包含不少对于颜色特殊含义的提问,如“颜色是否给人们不同的感觉”,“不同国家的人对于颜色的定义是否不同”等。

## ★ 喜欢各种颜色

What colour would you choose to paint the walls of your room?

What's your favourite colour?

Do you think different types of people like different colours?



Do you usually wear clothes of your favourite colour?

举例型问题

喜欢各种颜色:

1. **Yellow:** It is very warm and bright. It's the colour of sunshine and sunflowers. It makes me feel happy and full of energy.
2. **Orange:** It is the colour of the sun rise. It has so much energy and it represents hope. It is very sweet and warm.
3. **Gold:** It is magnificent, and a lot of palaces are using gold as a great decoration. It represents royalty and nobility. It means rich and wealthy.
4. **Red:** It is very passionate/ attractive and stimulating. It makes people feel hot and excited. There is a colour called Chinese Red. In China, red represents happiness and celebration.
5. **Pink:** It is very cute/ girly and lovely. It suits girls very well, which makes girls feel like princesses. But it is childish and naive for adults.



6. **Green:** It is good for the eyes. What's more, it is the colour of nature. It will cool you down when you feel hot, making you feel like in a forest or on the grassland.
7. **Blue:** It is the colour of the sky/ ocean and makes people feel peaceful and calm down, and it helps people to fall asleep more quickly. But sometimes it makes people feel sad.
8. **Purple:** It is very classic and noble. Besides, it's mysterious. It's also a very picky colour, not suitable for everyone.
9. **Grey/ Brown:** It means depressing and boring. Some people don't like this kind of colour.
10. **Black:** It is very cool, a lot of rock stars like to dress in black. It is mysterious and mature. Besides, it is a very formal colour. What's more, dressing in black will make you look thinner. It has eternal popularity in the field of fashion.
11. **White:** It is very simple and pure. It symbolizes the innocence and purity. White is the best colour to match up with other colours when it comes to clothes.

### Do you think colours are important?



### Do you think it is important to pay attention to colours?

论证型问题

#### 颜色的好处：

1. Different colours will give me different moods, which affects me hugely.
2. It will make my life more vivid and lively. Personally, I think colourful things cheer me up.
3. Wearing different colours will make me look like a different person.
4. I used to learn painting when I was a child and I understand that different colours have different uses.
5. Different colours represent different meanings, and it is very important to me.
6. My lucky colour is \_\_\_\_\_. I feel more fortunate in some important occasions when I am wearing this colour, because it gives me more confidence.
7. Colours have a huge influence on me when I am buying clothes or shoes.
8. Colourful things are more attractive to people than things only in black and white.
9. Colour is very important to you when you are buying clothes/ shoes/ bags or hats.



**颜色的坏处：**

I like things to be simple and easy, and sometimes I feel dazzled when there are too many colours.

**补充单词：**

beige 米黄色

cream 雪白

khaki 卡其色

navy 藏青色

offwhite 灰白色

palegreen 苍绿色

peachpuff 桃色

plum 紫红色

powderblue 粉蓝色

rosybrown 玫瑰棕色

royalblue 宝蓝色

rubine 宝石红

saddlebrown 重褐色

salmon pink 橙红色

sapphire 宝石蓝

scarlet 猩红色

seagreen 海绿色

shocking pink 鲜粉红色

silver 银色

skyblue 天蓝色

smoky gray 烟灰色

snow 雪白色

springgreen 春绿色

stone 石色

tan 棕褐色

violet 紫色

wheat 小麦色

whitesmoke 烟白色

winered 葡萄酒红

yellowish green 黄绿色

**16 Computer**

这个话题的素材可以与 Part 1 的很多其他话题问题合并,如“Computer”的作用与“Cellphone”、“Internet”的作用基本相同,而“Computer”的坏处与“TV”的坏处基本相同。所以如果大家把这个话题复习好的话,那么通过内容迁移也可以顺便解决“Cellphone”、“Internet”、“TV”话题下的部分相关问题。

**What do you use computers for?**

**Have computers changed (= influenced) your life in any way? (If yes, how?)**

举例型问题



**例句** My computer is a PC/ personal computer/ desktop/ laptop, you know. It is a \_\_\_\_\_, and I think I will have to use it every day.

Terrans Force

Alienware



Mac Air

Thinkpad

Sony

HP (Hewlett Packard)

Lenovo

Dell

Toshiba

MSI

★ 电脑的作用



What do you use your computer for?

举例型问题

**例句** I use it for \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, you know, nothing new, just like everybody else. I think it is quiet enough for me.

- receiving and sending emails 收发邮件
- having visual meeting 开视频会议
- listening to music 听音乐
- watching movies 看电影
- watching video clips 看视频
- playing games 玩游戏
- surfing on the Internet 上网
- editing photos 修改照片
- editing video clips 剪辑视频
- calculating 计算器

**Do you use computers very much?**

**What was your impression (or feeling) when you used a computer the first time?**

**Do you think a computer can give you better access to knowledge?**

**Do you think computers are perfect now or do they still need to be improved?**

**Do you think that there are any disadvantages (or, drawbacks) to using computers?**

**Computers are now used a lot in education. What do you think of this?**

**Do you think computers have changed our lives for the better? (How? Compare today & our lives in pre-computer times.)**

**Are computers used much in your country?**



**Do you think computers are useful (or important) in everyday life? (How?)**

论证型问题



**电脑的好处：**

1. There are various information and knowledge online for people to learn and study.
2. My computer can be used as a TV/ MP3/ moving office/ mobile phone and play station etc.
3. It helps people to communicate faster than before. For instance, email is faster than letter; Skype/ Whatsapp is faster than telegram.
4. I finish my homework on the computer and it is super convenient to print or save it on the flash disk.
5. I have some friends who are abroad now, computers can help me to communicate with them easily and it is cheaper than using the phone.
6. I use my computer to design models or draw pictures. It is better than to do it with paper and pencil.
7. It can help me with my studies; for instance, it can do the spelling check automatically.
8. It can help me do better presentations. I especially like the Prezi, a Presentation Software, which is so cool and refreshing in displaying my ideas.

**电脑的坏处：**

1. My eyes and skin will be harmed if I stay too long in front of a computer. It will make me near-sighted and give me spots.
2. It is a waste of time and energy if I spend too much time on it.
3. Some of the information or clips that computers can get access to are not suitable for children.
4. It is very easy to get addicted, because it is so fun for children, you know, compared with their homework.
5. There are too many advertisements when we use computer to surf on the Internet, it is so frustrating when you are forced to watch advertisement.
6. Sometimes when we use computer to surf on the Internet, the advertisements just pop/ come up unexpectedly when the audiences are the most focused.
7. Computers have radiation that can damage people's brains.

**练习题**

When do you use a computer?

When did you start using computers?



## 17 Concentration

这个话题和“Patience”有很多相似的地方，都是和人的精神状态相关的，而且比较抽象，这很容易让考生的思路打结，出现了在 Part 1 不知道该如何作答的情况。考虑到 Part 1 平均难度本来就不高，在这里的停顿或者不流畅就会显得格外明显。这个话题的难点在于如何为论证型问题积累合适的理由。

**Is it important to focus on one thing (you should deal with)?**

**Is it easy to concentrate?**



**Can people deal with two different things at the same time?**

论证型问题

**专注的好处：**

1. It will make me finish the job faster, so it is time saving, you know, efficient.
2. I will make fewer mistakes when I am concentrated.
3. Concentration will improve the quality of the work/ study.
4. Paying attention during a talk or class is an important way to show my respect to others.

**专注的坏处：**

1. I will feel tired and exhausted when I have been concentrated for a long time.
2. I always ignore people when I am concentrated, and this may make them feel offended.
3. People get very sleepy after concentrating for a while, as it takes a lot of energy.
4. I always get disturbed by my friends and the people around me; it is very hard to concentrate.

### ★ 需要集中注意力的场合

**When do people need to focus on something?**



**When do people become most focused?**

举例型问题

**例句 1** There are many different occasions that require people to pay attention. For instance, I need to focus/ concentrate when \_\_\_\_\_.

- I am doing my homework



- I am cooking I am doing sports
- I am driving a car
- there is an exam
- there is a meeting
- I am delivering a speech
- I am listening to classes
- I am walking near the construction site

**例句 2** There are many different occasions that require people to pay attention. For instance, \_\_\_\_\_.

- handicraftsmen need to focus/ concentrate when they are making handicrafts
- painters need to focus/ concentrate when they are painting

## 18 Concert

这个话题与“Music”有许多相关之处，很多考生对于“listen”这个动词有理解不到位的情况，认为必须现场出席才行，但是我们也可以通过 DVD、电视或者网络观看 Concert。只有把“listen”换成“attend”时，大家才需要“现场出席”。

**Have you ever been to a (live) concert?**



**What sorts of concerts do you have in your country?**

举例型问题

**例句** Well, there are many different concerts in the area, such as \_\_\_\_\_, and I have attended some of them. I like concerts, you know, they move me so much that they give me goose bumps.

- symphony 交响乐
- music star/ music group 乐队或者组合
- opera 歌剧
- Peking Opera 京剧



**When was the last time you attended a concert?**

举例型问题

**例句** I can't remember the exact time, but I did attend a symphony concert that was



held at the Grand National Theater. It was really cool. I also like \_\_\_\_\_.

- Vienna New Year Concert 维也纳新年音乐会
- Joe Hisaishi Concert 久石让音乐节
- Concerts of singers/ bands

**Would you like to go to a concert in the future?**



**Are concerts ever held in your hometown?**

论证型问题

音乐会的好处：

1. It's a great way to help people get relaxed.
2. It is a very classical and elegant activity for people to enjoy the art of music.
3. Its music is very fancy and attractive.
4. I think concerts always touch me in a unique way.

音乐会的坏处：

1. It's an elite activity, and not everyone has the chance to get to know it.
2. The price of the concert is usually very expensive.
3. Some of the shows are too controversial for kids or teenagers.



**练习题**

Are there any differences between live music and music played on a CD?

Which would you prefer, to attend a concert of your favourite artist or to buy a CD of this artist?

## 19 Dancing

这是 Part 1 中和艺术相关的话题之一，其他艺术相关的话题包括：“Art”、“Music”、“Drawing & Painting”、“Photography”等。大家会发现它们有一些共同点，例如相似的优点甚至缺点等。

★ 舞蹈的种类

**What kinds of dancing do Chinese people like?**



**What kinds of dancing are popular with young people in China?**

举例型问题



**例句** There are many different kinds of dance in China. The popular ones are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. You know, old people like traditional dance, but young people prefer modern dance.

**民族：**

folk dancing 民族舞

Tibetan Guozhuang 藏族锅庄舞

pavane 傣族孔雀舞

Uygur folk dance 维吾尔族民族舞

Mongol wrestling dance 蒙古族摔跤舞

cap bowl dance 蒙古族顶碗舞

chopstick dance 蒙古族筷子舞

belly dancing 肚皮舞

**Ballroom Dancing 国标：**分为两个大类，共十种舞

### 1. Modern Dance 现代舞

waltz 华尔兹

Viennese Waltz 维也纳华尔兹

tango 探戈

foxtrot 狐步

jigs 快步舞

### 2. Latin 拉丁舞

Rumba 伦巴

Cha-Cha 恰恰

Samba 桑巴

Jive 摇摆舞

Paso Doble 斗牛舞

**其它：**

Ballet 芭蕾

tap dancing 踢踏舞

classical dance 古典舞

disco 迪斯科

senior disco 老年迪斯科

yangko 秧歌



country dancing 乡村舞蹈

**补充单词：**

**street dancing 街舞**

**poppin：** 就是大家说的机械舞，通过肌肉的放松收紧所达到的视觉效果和节奏配合的一种舞蹈。

**hiphop：** 是由自由的舞步及动作组成的舞蹈，以 up-down 以及基础舞步等等为基础。

**jazz：** 爵士舞，现在一般指 New jazz，以性感动作为主。

**locking：** 锁舞，其特点是动作的快速与突然停顿，就像上发条的玩具突然停止。主要以绕手等为基础。

**breaking：** 霹雳舞，需要在力量以及平衡的基础上做出高难度的动作。

**newstyle：** 个人风格很强的一种舞蹈，以 hiphop、locking、poppin、C-walk 等为基础，音乐有 hiphop 的感觉。

**kurmp：** 有点类似打架的感觉，不过在国内跳的是另一种风格，接近 hiphop。

**Raggae：** 雷鬼舞蹈是非常性感的一种舞蹈，一般由女舞者进行演绎。

**Do you like to dance?**

**Do you like to watch dance performances?**

**Why do you think some people like dancing?**

 **Do you think there are any benefits for young people to go dancing?**

论证型问题

**跳舞的好处：**

1. Dancing can help me keep figure and make me more flexible and more attractive.
2. Dancing is a wonderful way to lose weight, and I won't feel bored.
3. Dancing is a traditional way for people to celebrate, especially on some happy occasions.
4. Dancing can help people express their feelings and emotions. People dance when they feel happy.
5. Dancing can help people improve their ability of team work, for in some shows, people have to dance with other members.
6. Some dance is based on the local culture. It's a part of the tradition, and it is very important to keep the tradition.
7. Dancing can help people release the pressure, and lose weight at the same time.
8. Dancing can make people become more confident about themselves, especially the figure of their bodies.



**跳舞的坏处：**

1. I am clumsy. I sometimes fall down for no reason when I am walking. So dancing is definitely not my cup of tea.
2. I could get hurt if I practice in the wrong way. Maybe I will twist my ankle.
3. Dancing class is very expensive and it takes a lot of time for one to practice.
4. I feel tired and exhausted after dancing; it consumes too much energy.
5. It requires talent to learn how to dance. Not everyone can learn it very well.
6. I get bored by dancing. I really don't have the ability to appreciate dancing.
7. I am not flexible enough. As a result, there are a lot of moves and positions that I cannot do well, such as doing the splits.

**★ 跳舞的场合****When was the last time you danced?****When was the last time you went dancing?****When was the last time you went to a party where people danced?****When do Chinese people like to dance?**

举例型问题

**例句** I usually dance when there is a \_\_\_\_\_. You know, it is a happy occasion, I really couldn't help myself.

birthday party 生日派对

competition 比赛

wedding 婚礼

performance 表演

holiday celebration 节日庆典

ball 舞会

Karaoke/ KTV 卡拉 OK

**★ 跳舞的地点****Where can people dance?**

举例型问题

**例句** There are many places for people to dance, such as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. Those places are not hard to find.

square 广场

ballroom 舞池

dance studio 舞蹈教室

stage 舞台

park 公园





### 练习题

Do old people in China like the same kind of dancing as young people?

How do you feel when you watch dance performances on TV?

Have you ever learned to dance?

## 20 Dictionary

“字典”这个话题“年纪”很轻，是一个新出现的话题，所以问题的数量和维度都不是很大，“烤鸭”们的复习压力应该还是蛮小的，大家加油！

**Do you use a dictionary?**



**Do you think dictionaries are useful?**

举例型问题

**好处：Yes, I do. Because\_\_\_\_\_.**

1. I think it provides a really detailed explanation about the vocabulary that we want to look up.
2. Some dictionaries offer vivid examples of the words and phrases.
3. Some dictionaries teach people etymology, which is very academic and classic.
4. The information offered by the dictionary is more reliable and formal.
5. Some electronic dictionaries are light, you know, very portable.

**坏处：No, I don't. As\_\_\_\_\_.**

1. I think it is so out of fashion, you know, people tend to use other methods to learn rather than dictionaries.
2. I think it will take me a long time to look up one word in the paper-made dictionaries. I mean, I have to go through the alphabet.
3. I think the paper-made dictionaries are really big and heavy, and it's really hard to carry them around.
4. I think the Internet can help to solve the problem, while a dictionary is not a must.
5. I used dictionaries when I was a student, but I don't use them often after I graduated from middle school.





### Which kind of dictionaries do you prefer to use?

举例型问题

1. I use paper made dictionaries, such as *Longman Dictionary*, *Oxford Dictionary*, *Collins Dictionary* or *Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*. I think they are very traditional.
2. I like electronic dictionaries, such as Casio. They are so convenient and easy to carry around. There are different versions as well, such as English version, Japanese version and Spanish version.
3. I download an app/ application on my cellphone/ mobile phone, called lingo8s/ Youdao dictionary. It is very powerful, but it can only work well when it connected with the Internet/ Wi-Fi.

## 21 Drawing and Painting

这个题目是艺术类题目的一员，与它类似的还有“Dancing”、“Music”、“Singing”等话题。所有艺术类的题目都和“talent”这个词密切相关，因为喜欢或不喜欢都可以是天分使然，了解了这一个核心论点之后，对于大家精简论据很有好处。

### 💡 注意

Drawing 和 Painting，它们不一样。

Drawing：是干的，用铅笔、蜡笔、碳棒等画的都是 drawing。例如 sketch/ outline。

Painting：是湿的，用画笔蘸水把颜料调匀再画的，都是 painting。例如 oil painting/ Chinese traditional water colour fine painting。

**Do you like drawing (or painting)?**

**Do you draw (or paint) now? (Why?)**

**Do you ever (or, often) draw pictures in your spare time?**

**What do you think are some of the benefits for children from drawing (or painting)?**

**Do you think it's important for children to learn to draw?**

**Do you think it's important for adults to learn to draw?**

**Have you ever learned to draw (or paint)?**

**Do adults draw (or paint) very often?**



**What are the benefits of drawing (or painting) for adults?**



**Did you like drawing (or painting) when you were a child? (Why?/ Why not?)**

论证型问题

**画画的好处：**

1. It is a great hobby that helps cultivate my intelligence and creativity.
2. It will give me a little taste and sense of art.
3. Painting can help me calm down and have a peaceful mind.
4. It will provide a chance for me to get closer to the nature, as I will have to go out to paint sometimes.
5. Some people are born to paint. They have the talent in painting.
6. It can help people kill time and relax themselves more.
7. It can help people express their feelings, through different colours to show their joy and sadness.
8. I can get a sense of accomplishment after I finish a painting.
9. It really helps me become a patient person.
10. I am a huge fan of cartoon and animation. I can draw a lot of my favourite characters after learning painting.
11. Learning art can help me have a better taste in choosing clothes and appreciate beauty.
12. It can help the kids have better personalities like, you know, quietness and patience.

**画画的坏处：**

1. It is very expensive; not everyone can afford that.
2. It takes too much of my time; it is not good for studies.
3. It is not a good hobby, because children who learn painting won't be able to make a lot of friends; they become too quiet, sometimes even autistic.
4. People have to get a talent to learn it. Not everyone can learn painting or dancing. Some people just can't do it very well.
5. Many parents force kids to learn painting, but this is wrong. People are born with a gift, but it does not have to be painting; it could be something else.
6. I think it is very hard to paint, as you need to match the right colours and use a lot of tools.
7. It requires a lot of time and a quite personality, both of which I don't have.



## ★ 画过的主题

Have you ever draw anything when you were a child?



What kind of pictures do you like to draw?

举例型问题

**例句** The most common things for me to draw are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. Seriously, those are required in primary schools, you know, compulsory courses, so I must have drawn them.

eggs

fruits

shrimps

pandas

dogs

cats

fish

Houses

flowers

ships

rivers

mountains

planes

trains

cartoon characters

plaster models

geometry models



## ★ 影响画画的因素（艺术类话题通用）

Do you think drawing (or painting) is difficult?

Do you think a person can teach him or herself how to draw (or paint)?



To draw (or paint) well, what factors do you think are important?

论证型问题

**例句** I think painting requires several important things, such as \_\_\_\_\_.

Talent

funds

a quiet personality

enough time

practice

## 22 Family & Friends & Relatives & Parents

这个四个话题是雅思口语考试 Part 1 的核心话题，它们的相同性很高，不建议大家分开复习，因为那样效率太低。Part 1 当中有很多话题都包含以 who 来开头提问的问题。只要掌握了本话题组下的核心素材，99% 以 who 开头的问题就都可以顺利解决了。



**各种家人、亲戚的考查点及问法：**

1. 最重要的家庭成员 (family member) 是谁？

2. 小时候最常见到的亲戚 (relative) 有哪些？

其实大家对于这些单词本身并不陌生，但是很容易把它们的分类搞混。

有这种情况。考官问：“Which relative did you most often see when you were a child?” 考生居然会回答：“I think it is my mother.” 这个答案虽然没有语法错误，但还是错的，因为 mother 是 parent，是 family member，但不是 relative。这样的错误回答就会导致考生在“单词”这个评分点上扣分，因为他对 relative 的理解错了，所以大家需要注意。

**具体分类：**

**家庭成员 family member** : father/ mother/ grandfather/ grandmother/ sister/ brother

**亲戚 relatives** : cousin/ uncle/ aunt/ nephew/ niece

**家长 parents** : father/ mother

**亲兄弟姐妹 siblings** : sister/ brother (sibling 考查的频率很低)



**Which relative did you most often see when you were a child?**

举例 + 论证型问题

**例句** I think it is my \_\_\_\_\_, because\_\_\_\_\_.

**cousin:** He/ she is 3 years older/ younger than me, so we often played together when we were kids, and it was super fun.

**uncle/ aunt:** We lived in the same community and we did a lot of things together.



**Who do you think is the most important member in your family?**

举例 + 论证型问题

**例句** I think it is my \_\_\_\_\_, because\_\_\_\_\_.

**father:** He is the one who takes care of the whole family and supports us. He is the bread winner, so he needs to be respected.

**mother:** She takes care of everyone in the family and she is so kind and nice. It feels great to go back home and have the yummy food with her.

**grandfather:** He is the one who unite our family together, and he is the reason why we have a very tight family bound.



- grandmother:** She took care of me when I was a child and it was such a wonderful experience. We have a special connection.
- Younger sister:** She is a baby. She needs more attention and care to grow healthily and happily. We all love her.
- Younger brother:** Although he is naughty sometimes, he is truly a sweetheart. Everybody loves him.
- elder sister:** She looked after me when we were kids, and always accompanied me when I was lonely.
- elder brother:** He always protects me when I am in trouble. He is like my guardian angel.

Part 1 中以 who 开头的问题通常是询问考生喜欢和“谁”一起做某事，例如：

**Who do you like to go shopping with?**



**Who would you like to have dinner with when you have free time?**

举例型问题

而我建议大家用以下三个方向中的某一个方向来回答问题：

- 喜欢和家人一起做事
- 喜欢和朋友一起做事
- 喜欢自己单独做事情

这样大家在 Part 1 当中就可以少复习一大批问题类型，对于短期复习突破好处很多。

**喜欢和家人一起做事的理由：**

1. It's a great opportunity for us to communicate with each other and improve our relationship.
2. I want to share happy moments with my family.
3. They can give me mature advice and help me make the right choice.
4. They will love me and support me unconditionally.
5. It is less embarrassing when I do something silly/ stupid in front of my family.
6. I feel like my family members are a part of me. We can help each other when it comes to trouble.
7. I feel so relaxed when I am with my families, because I don't have to pretend to be someone who I am not.



8. My parents will feel happy when I spend more time with them.

**喜欢和朋友一起做事的理由：**

1. Unlike family members, friends won't blame me for small things and they will understand me.
2. We have the same topics and interests with each other, and we can share a lot together.
3. I feel free when I do things with my friends. I have no restrictions.
4. Our friendship will be enhanced greatly.
5. We will have more fun together.
6. I want to share my happy time with others. It would be sad if you don't have anyone to share with.
7. As a group, we can do things better together than we do things separately.
8. Most of my friends are around the same age, so there is no generation gap between each other.
9. We live in the same neighborhood, so it's more convenient for us to hang out together.

**喜欢自己做事的理由：**

1. I don't have to follow somebody else's routine.
2. I don't need to compromise with anyone. I
3. can make my own arrangements, and it can be changed as much as I want.
4. It is free to do things on my own. I have no restrictions or limitations.
5. I will be stronger and more independent than before; otherwise, I will always be in a group and follow others' ideas, not my own.
6. I will not be disturbed by anyone else.
7. I've got used to loneliness, and it is quiet OK if I have to do things all by myself.
8. It's more efficient when I am doing things alone.

另外,这个话题中列举出的一些品质,在 Part 2 的“人物类”题目以及 Part 3 的“列举型”一致。题目当中都能起到极好的点缀及引起话题的效果,也值得大家一记。

**★ 好朋友应该具备的品质或特点**



**What kind of qualities should a good friend/ family member have?**

举例型问题

**例句 1** I think these qualities are important, such as \_\_\_\_\_.



common interests 共同兴趣

similar tastes 气味相投 / 品味相同

having each other's back 两肋插刀 / 互挺对方

**例句 2** I think a true friend should be \_\_\_\_\_.

honest 诚实的

assertive 有主见的

intelligent 聪明的

optimistic 开朗的

open 外向的

kind-hearted 善良的、心肠好的

loyal 忠诚的

positive 充满正能量的

generous 慷慨的

friendly 友好的

modest 谦虚的

knowledgeable 有知识的

energetic 有活力的

amicable 温和的

amiable 亲切的

humorous 幽默的

independent 独立的

responsible 有责任感的

brave 勇敢的

talented 有天分的

supportive 支持的

shrewd 精明的

helpful 有帮助的

reliable 可靠的

genuine 真诚的

talkative 健谈的

handsome 帅气的

beautiful 美丽的

goofy 傻瓜的

independent 独立的

## 23 Fashion & Clothes

“时尚与衣装”这个话题是女生比较熟悉的考查点，但是男生经过准备也是可以顺利回答的。这个话题是一个老牌的雅思口语话题，主要还是考查考生对于服饰以及时尚的看法。考生可以说自己喜欢时尚，但是切记不要把自己塑造成物质女或者拜金男的形象，如果你确实喜欢奢侈品，也应该从它们优良的质量和精美的做工切入，或者说说时尚的历史渊源和文化特点，客观地说出自己的想法即可。同时，考生也可以说自己不喜欢时尚，原因同样需要客观，不要摆出一副嫌弃或者高高在上的态度鄙视时尚。

### ★ 时尚的品牌



Is there any brand of clothes that is important to you? (Why?/ Why not?)

举例型问题

**例句** Yeah, I have to say, luxurious brand is very important. I am not a label queen,



but luxurious brands do have better quality and tastes, such as \_\_\_\_\_ .

**Luxury Brands 奢侈品牌：**

Cartier 卡地亚 (珠宝、手表)

Bvlgari 宝格丽 (珠宝、手表)

Tiffany 蒂芙尼 (珠宝、银饰)

Van Cleef & Arpels 梵克雅宝 (珠宝、手表)

Hermes 爱马仕 (时装、包)

Prada 普拉达 (时装、包)

Versace 范思哲 (时装、包、香水)

Chanel 香奈儿 (时装、包、香水)

Gucci 古驰 (时装、包)

Louis Vuitton 路易威登 (时装、包)

Dior 迪奥 (时装、包、香水)

Givenchy 纪梵希 (香水、时装)

Valentino 华伦天奴 (时装、包)

Dolce & Gabbana 杜嘉班纳 (时装、包)

Armani 阿玛尼 (时装、香水)

MCM (包) Burberry 博柏利 (时装、香水、包)

Coach 蔻驰 (包、配饰)

Hugo Boss 雨果博斯 (时装、香水、配饰)

VERA WANG (婚纱、香水)

Tom Ford 汤姆福特 (时装、彩妆)

**Are you interested in fashion (or, clothes fashions)?**

**What do you think of (or, about) fashion?**

**What do you think about fashion nowadays in your country?**

**What do you think of modern fashions?**

**Do you like the latest fashions? (Why?/ Why not?)**

**Do many people (in China) follow the fashion?**



论证型问题

**时尚的好处：**

1. If I am very fashionable, I will be the centre of people's attention.
2. It can help me dress better and look more attractive.
3. Fashion is a culture that has a colourful history, and it is very interesting to learn something from it.
4. Fashion helps promote the industries related with it, such as media, you know, newspapers and magazines, sometimes even TV shows.
5. Some brands are the sponsors of the sports stars. They always wear that brand and they look really good.
6. Great fashion is designed with style and outstanding quality.

**时尚的坏处：**

1. I will always be a follower if I just stick to the fashion magazines, you know, one step



behind. Then I will always be out of fashion.

2. Some fashions are just not my type. They don't suit me very well. They just make me look really weird.
3. Fashion is too far away from the average people's daily life. It is the product for the rich and vanity.
4. Some clothes and fashion are not my type. If I force myself to follow that kind of fashion, it will only become a disaster.
5. It changes from time to time, and it's really hard and expensive to follow the trend.
6. I am not very interested in fashion. I barely pay attention to it.
7. Some people just take fashion as a way to show off, and they don't really get it.

### ★ 衣服类型及其优缺点

**What kinds of clothes are popular in China?**

**What types of clothes are in fashion now?**

**What kinds/ styles of clothes do you like (or, prefer) to wear? (Why?)**

**What kinds of (or, style of) clothes do people in your country like to wear?**



举例 + 论证型问题

**例句** I like \_\_\_\_\_ the most, as \_\_\_\_\_.

**casual clothes 休闲服饰** : They are comfortable and make me look younger.

**semi-formal clothes 半休闲 (正式) 服饰** : They go well with most situations.

**formal clothes 正装** : They make me mature and official.

**suits with a tie/ bow tie 西装 (男)**

**dress with high heels 礼服 (女)**

**vintage clothes 复古风** : They are classic and elegant; I love Audrey Hepburn.

**sporty clothes 运动服** : They can help me move smoothly when I am doing sports. They are very loose.

**pajamas 睡衣** : They are very comfortable.

**home wear 家居服** : They are very comfortable.

**down coat/ jacket 羽绒服** : It is so warm when I am in the down jacket.

**British style 英伦风** : I love the tartan design of the British style; it makes me look like a real lady/ gentleman.

**American style 美国风** : It makes people feel free and it is very comfortable.



**Korean style 韩国风** : It fits Asian people's body shape and makes us look better.

**Japanese style 日本风** : It is super fashionable and trendy. There are a lot of talented designers in Japan.

**不喜欢穿的衣服及其缺点 :**

**例句** I think most of the clothes are fine, but I really don't like the\_\_\_\_\_, as\_\_\_\_\_.

**school uniform 校服** : Chinese school uniforms are horrible and ugly. Their designs make me feel depressed and look chubby/ gobby.

**bib/ overalls 背带裤** : They are out of fashion for a very long time/ Few people can pull them off; only supermodels can rock these outfits/ It is so troublesome when I need to go to the bathroom.

**revealing outfits 暴露的衣着** : They are too sexy for me; I don't need that kind of attention.

**tights/ leotard/ unitard 紧身连衣裤** : They make me feel nervous and weird/ It is almost impossible to move or breathe in the tights.

**sporty clothes 运动服** : They are very floppy and make me look fat.

**Do you think it's important what clothes a person wears? (Why?/ Why not?)**

**Do you think the clothes a person wears leaves an impression on others?**

**Do you think clothes are important to people? (Why?/ Why not?)**

 **Are clothes very important to you?**

论证型问题

**关注衣装的原因 :**

1. Good clothes can make me look healthier and more attractive.
2. Clothes with great quality can keep me warm and comfortable.
3. Suitable clothes will help me to make a better impression on others.
4. Clothes can show my social status. For instance, if I wear a Chanel dress, people will know that I have a great taste in clothes.
5. For no obvious reason, new clothes just make me feel very confident about myself.
6. Clothes can represent my lifestyle and taste. They are a part of me and part of who I am.
7. Choosing the right clothes for the right occasion can show my respect to others.

**不关注衣装的原因 :**

1. Some people judge me by the clothes that I wear, but the clothes that I wear have



nothing to do with my personalities and who I am.

2. Some people don't really care about clothes, so they merely don't pay a lot of attention to it.
3. I think clothes are just for keeping warm and helping me look decent. They don't really have any other use for me.
4. I think shopping for clothes is so troublesome and time-consuming that I would rather wear the old clothes than go shopping for new ones.

### ★ 购物的地点



**Where do you think you can buy the most fashionable clothes?**

举例型问题

**例句** I love shopping \_\_\_\_\_.

1. ... in the shopping mall/ plaza, such as Solana shopping centre/ Lafayette, because I can have a lot of options, and pick my favourite ones from them.
2. ... in the supermarket, you know, it is very convenient.
3. ... online, because I don't have to go out and walk a lot. It is so efficient.
4. ... on the official websites, and I can order the limited edition of that brand.
5. ... in small shops, because I can find something unique and different.
6. ... abroad, because it is cheaper and the style updates faster than it does in China.
7. ... in outlets, because the quality can be ensured and the prices are really low.
8. ... in flagship stores, because there are more options to choose from.
9. ... in exclusive stores, because the products there are better and the services there are amazing.
10. ... in the flea market/ flea fair, because there are many antiques and interesting things there.

## 24 Flower

“花朵”这个题目是雅思口语中少数几个特殊含义型题目，这类题目有一个共同的特点，即要求考生说出该主题下相关内容的特殊含义。在本话题中，问题往往是“哪些花具有特殊含义、这些特殊含义是什么？”这种题目为我们的话题增加了多样性，同时也增加了难度。另外，大家尽量不要使用过于常见的花朵作为答案，如常见的“5分花朵”：

rose 玫瑰：passionate love



lily 百合 : pure and simple

daisy 雏菊 : the unspeakable love that hidden in your heart

sunflower 向日葵 : silent love (according to myth, it was a goddess who fall in love with Apollo)

paper-made little white flower 小白花

以上花朵虽然也还不错, 但是因为实在太过常见, 往往不能为大家的词汇打分点带来加分效果。

**Which/ What is your favourite flower?**

**What flowers do you like? (Why?)**

**What flowers have special meanings in China?**



举例型问题

**例句** Well, I think flowers are beautiful and elegant, and my favourite flower is

\_\_\_\_\_.

**中国传统花 :**

lotus 莲花 : It is the unbreakable flower/ It means purity and innocence.

plum flower 梅花 : It means perseverance and pride because it only blooms in the coldest moment. It represents people who suffer from the horrible pain and carry on fighting, eventually reaching success.

peony 牡丹 / 芍药 : It is the king of the flowers. It means richness and auspiciousness.

chrysanthemum 菊花 : People usually use it at a funeral to show their grief and heartache.

magnolia 玉兰花 / 木兰花 : It represents the noble soul.

epiphyllum 昙花 : A flash in the pan; it means something that never lasts long.

carnation 康乃馨 : It shows the gratitude for mother's love and kindness.

orchid 兰花 : It shows the noble character of gentlemen.

narcissus 水仙花 : It represents pure love.

fringed iris 蝴蝶花 : It means the happiness is flying towards you.

morning glory 牵牛 (喇叭花) : It represents delusional love that fades away.

fuchsia 倒挂金钟 : It means the passionate and confiding heart.

Chinese rose 月季 : It means youth and beauty.

jasmine 茉莉 : It means loyalty and respect for your beloved ones/ I attach myself to you.

**小资情调花 :**

tulip 郁金香 : noble/ rich/ smart

violet, stock violet 紫罗兰 : eternal beauty which springs from the tears of Venus



cactus 仙人掌 : strong and tough on the outside

gardenia 栀子花 : the unknown joy and hope that filled with the energy of summer

phalaenopsis 蝴蝶兰 : happiness is flying towards you

Chinese enkianthus 灯笼花 : a hidden flower and a joyful heart

Chinese flowering crab-apple 海棠花 : mild and obedient

dahlia 大丽花 : openhanded and magnificent

touch-me-not (balsam) 凤仙花 : don't touch me

azalea 杜鹃花 : joy of love

begonia 秋海棠 : caring

camellia 山茶花 : modesty

India canna 美人蕉 : promising future

lilac 丁香 : flower from heaven

oleander 夹竹桃 : caution of danger

pansy 三色堇 : bittersweet memory

**邪恶之花 :**

datura 曼陀罗 : It means revenge and love, unpredictable death and love.

manjusaka 彼岸花 : It has the magic to bring the sad and lost memory of the dead. It is the flower from hell.

evening primrose 夜来香 : It releases toxic gases in the evening that harm people's body

**Do you like flowers? (Why?)**

**Do old people in China like gardening?**

**Do people in China like growing flowers?**

**Does anyone in your family like growing flowers?**

**Do you like to have flowers in your home?**

**Do you think flowers are important?**



**Are flowers important in your culture?**

论证型问题

**花的好处 :**

1. Flowers are elegant, pretty and colourful. They are the natural beauty.
2. Flowers smell good, and the fragrance gives people a cheerful and happy mood.
3. Some flowers have positive meanings, and people use flowers to express their feelings to their beloved ones.



4. People wear flowers on special occasions, such as a ball or a wedding.
5. Some flowers can be made into food, such as flower salad, which is very refreshing.
6. Some flowers are great tea, and they can help keep a healthier body, for instance, the rose tea and chrysanthemum tea are very popular in China.
7. Some flowers have medical utility. They may be used as some kind of medicine.
8. The touch of the flower is very gentle and it gives you a feeling of nature.
9. It is a way for people to show their love and care for others.
10. I can enjoy the peaceful time of growing flowers.

**花的坏处：**

1. Flowers usually attract a lot of bugs, which is very unsanitary.
2. I have to spend a lot of time on the flowers if I want to take good care of them.
3. Some people are allergic to the pollen of flowers. They cannot stay in a room filled with flowers.
4. Some flowers give off toxic gas during the night, and it harms people's health.
5. It will cost a lot if you want to keep good care of certain kinds of flowers.
6. I think flowers are not practical. I would like to buy a calendar rather than a bouquet.
7. Bouquets never last long. They can only keep for a few days, and then I have to throw them away.

★ 两选一的题目：室内花朵好还是户外花朵好？



**Which one do you like better, flowers indoor or flowers outdoor?**

论证型问题

**例句** I like \_\_\_\_, because \_\_\_\_.

**室内花朵的好处：**

1. They are a great decoration for the house.
2. They smell good, and they make the air in the room smell nice.
3. They can help clean and refresh the air indoors.
4. I can have my own pot of flowers in my living room. I will take good care of them.

**室外花朵的好处：**

1. It is a better environment for flowers to grow. Flowers can receive all the natural elements, such as the sunshine and rain.
2. I think outdoor flowers are tough. They have the perseverance to stay strong and beautiful.



3. Because outdoor flowers can make a great combination with the beautiful views around them, while flowers indoor are too monotonous.
4. I like the visual display. The colours match up with each other and make great scenery.
5. I think flowers are a part of the nature and they should grow outside rather than inside.
6. I think they are a great decoration for the environment and outdoor places, such as parks, the zoo, etc.

### ★ 送花的场合

**On what occasions are flowers important?**

**When was the last time you gave (or, possibly, sent) flowers to someone?**

**When was the last time you bought flowers for someone?**

**When was the last time you bought flowers for yourself?**

**Where did you buy these flowers?**



举例型问题

**例句** People send or receive flowers to others on many occasions, such as \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_. Flowers can make these events more memorable.

mother's day/ father's day

teacher's day

anniversary

wedding

birthday

graduation ceremony

Valentine's Day

on a date

visiting a patient

at a funeral

at cemetery

winning a competition

## 25 Food & Cooking

这两个话题虽然时常在考试中分开考查，但是本质来说有许多共通之处，所以我建议考生们将它们一起解决，以备不时之需。

### ① Food



**Which is your favourite meal, breakfast, lunch or supper?**

举例型问题



**例句** I like \_\_\_\_\_ the most, as \_\_\_\_\_.

I prefer \_\_\_\_\_, as \_\_\_\_\_.

**breakfast :**

1. It benefits my health, or else I will have a bad stomach.
2. It can make me full of energy.
3. Eating breakfast will help me lose weight, and my metabolism will be boosted by this.

**lunch :**

1. I am on a diet, so I don't eat dinner.
2. It's healthier to have a big lunch than a big supper.
3. I can have lunch with my classmates/ colleagues.

**supper/ dinner :**

1. I will have more time to enjoy the meal.
2. There are more choices of dishes during supper.
3. My mother cooks dinner for me and it is delicious (yum/ yummy/ tasty).
4. I can stay at home after dinner and it is very relaxing.
5. I will have the opportunity to spend more time with my parents when we are having dinner together.

**拓展单词 :**

afternoon tea/ high tea 下午茶

midnight snack/ late-night snack 夜宵

★ 按口味分类



**What kind of flavour is your favourite?**

举例型问题

**例句** I think I like \_\_\_\_\_ food the best, and I can always have an extra plate if the meal is to my liking.

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| ● spicy 辣的      | ● pungent 辛辣的 |
| ● salty 咸的      | ● sweet 甜的    |
| ● sour 酸的       | ● bitter 苦的   |
| ● buttery 黄油口味的 | ● greasy 油腻的  |



**Would you like to try some new food if you get the chance?**

论证型问题

**新食物的好处：**

1. It is something different for me to explore. I have tried durian and I really like it now.
2. It offers me a chance to have more options rather than the same old/ cliché.
3. It can help me explore different kinds of culture through food.
4. As long as it is normal, I will try new food as much as possible, but I won't try bugs, turtles or snakes.
5. I think it is nice to have some different cuisine for a change. I may be surprised by the exotic flavour.

**新食物的坏处：**

1. It could be worse than my old menu, and that would ruin my day.
2. If it is not to my liking, it will ruin my whole day.
3. I get really upset when I eat something that I don't like.
4. Some of the new food is very scary/ disgusting you know. They are made of locust/ cicada or pupa.

**Which do you like better, one big meal or several small snacks?**

论证型问题

**大餐的特点：****例句** I really like one big meal, because \_\_\_\_\_.

I fancy a banquet, because \_\_\_\_\_.

- there are more dishes 菜品更多
- there are more people eating together 大家一起
- it is easy to control how much you will eat 更容易控制食量
- a regular eating habit is very important 饭点很固定
- it is formal, especially the western-style food, which contains an appetizer, soup, salad, a main course and dessert 很正式

**小吃的特点：****例句** I like to eat small snacks better, as \_\_\_\_\_.

- it is casual 比较随意
- they are more delicious 更加美味



- I can eat at almost any time that I like 任何时候, 想吃就吃
- it is healthier than one big meal 比吃一顿大餐健康
- this can help me to keep fit 可以帮助保持健康
- I will have more choices 选择更多
- I can have more chances to eat my favourite food in a day 可以在一天中吃多种自己最爱的食物

★ 健康饮食的特点



What kind of diet is a healthy diet?

举例型问题

**例句** A healthy diet means \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. I really think we should follow those advice, as they are from doctors and scientists.

- balanced diet 均衡饮食
- more vegetables 多吃蔬菜
- less meat 少吃肉
- more fish 多吃鱼
- enough milk and fruits 足量的牛奶和水果
- less fried food or fast/ junk food 少吃油炸食物及快餐
- eating on time 准点吃饭
- missing no meals 不漏餐
- drinking some yogurt 喝适量酸奶
- drinking at least 1 liter of water per day 每天喝至少一升水
- less or no food additives/ preservatives 少量或者没有食物添加剂

★ 各类菜的名字

What is your favourite dish?



What dish is popular in your country now?

举例型问题

考法: 特色食物 / 最喜欢的一道菜 / 会做的菜

Lanzhou beef noodles 兰州牛肉拉面  
bean jelly 凉粉

cruded pancake in mutton soup 羊肉泡馍  
cold rice noodles 凉皮



Goubuli stuffed bun 狗不理包子  
 donkey pancake/ burger 驴肉火烧  
 roasted pancake 缸炉烧饼  
 tomato omelette 西红柿炒鸡蛋  
 kongpao chicken 宫保鸡丁  
 kongpao shrimp balls 宫保虾球  
 fried rice 炒饭  
 Sichuan sausages 四川香肠  
 spicy bullfrog 麻辣牛蛙  
 Henan stewed noodles 河南烩面  
 quick-fried tripe 爆肚  
 stir-fried liver 炒肝  
 beancurd jelly 豆腐脑  
 Beijing roast duck 北京烤鸭  
 Beijing bean sauce noodles 北京炸酱面  
 deep-fried dough sticks 油条  
 Yunnan Rice Noodles 过桥米线  
 fish flavoured pork slices 鱼香肉丝  
 Cha siu baau 叉烧包  
 Wuhan hot-dry noodles 热干面  
 duck neck 鸭脖子  
 barbeque 烧烤  
 hotpot 火锅  
 hot-hot-hot 麻辣烫

#### 补充：

Dim Sum 点心  
 sugar coated haws on stick 糖葫芦  
 rice dumpling 粽子  
 milk tea 奶茶

eel with duck blood curd 毛血旺  
 worm jelly 土笋冻  
 Sha-Cha noodles 沙茶面  
 fried oyster 海蛎煎 / 蚵仔煎  
 shaved noodles 刀削面  
 chop suey of cow and sheep/ Haggis 羊杂  
 Shouzhua mutton 手抓羊肉  
 roast/ grilled whole lamb 烤全羊  
 steamed fish 清蒸鱼  
 curry 咖喱  
 sweet and sour spareribs 糖醋排骨  
 fried pork in scoop 锅包肉  
 the pot of stew 东北大锅炖  
 pancake 煎饼  
 Jinzhou barbeque 锦州烧烤  
 steak/ beefsteak 牛排  
 raw 全生牛排  
 rare 一分熟牛排  
 medium rare 三分熟牛排  
 medium 五分熟牛排  
 medium well done 七分熟牛排  
 well done 全熟牛排  
 stew of pork belly/ side pork/ streaky  
 pork and potatoes 五花肉炖土豆  
 bubble tea 珍珠奶茶  
 mooncake 月饼  
 fried (glutinous) rice balls with sesame 麻团

## ② Cooking

“Cooking”和“Food”这两个话题侧重点有不同,大家要注意听清问题中的差别。而“Cooking”这个话题和“Housework”也有很多相似的地方,例如“家里一般谁做饭”这个问题和“家里一



般谁来做家务”完全是一个性质，所以只要复习其中一个，另一个自然也不在话下了。

### Do you know how to cook?



### Do you think it is important for people to learn how to cook?

论证型问题

#### 做饭的原因：

1. I am a foodie, which means I am very picky about food. Most of the time, only the dishes that are cooked by me can make me feel satisfied.
2. I can choose to cook the dishes that I like and make them into my own flavour.
3. Comparing with dinning in the restaurants, cooking in a clean environment and choosing the freshest material to cook is what matters to me the most.
4. It is money saving. Eating at the restaurant every day is just really expensive.
5. It will be very romantic if I can cook for my girlfriend/ boyfriend.
6. I will have a sense of accomplishment after I cooked a wonderful dish for my beloved ones.
7. I can cook for my parents, because they are very tired after work.
8. It is a great way to show that I care about someone/ my family.
9. I think it is very easy to get fat/ obese if I eat at restaurants too often, you know. The food there is greasy and contains a lot of calories.
10. I like cooking, because it is a great way for me to relax.
11. It is a necessary skill that can help me live an independent life.
12. My parents are very busy, so cooking is an essential skill for me.
13. I am good at cooking. It is a great talent and I'd love to show it.
14. My mother told me it would be easier to find a girlfriend/ boyfriend in the future if I can cook.

#### 不做饭的原因：

1. Cooking could be a waste of time. It can be a long process for one dish. Sometimes, it is more than an hour.
2. I have to wash the plates and pans after cooking. I hate washing dishes, you know, the detergent harms my hands.
3. I don't like the smell in the kitchen, you know; it is very greasy and hard to get rid of, and will stick with you for the whole day.



4. I have to wash the dishes by hand, and as Chinese food is very greasy, it is impossible to be cleaned by the dish washer.
5. My friends always ask me to cook for them, but I feel so tired and bored.
6. I am very lucky. It's not necessary for me to learn cooking, as my mother/ girlfriend/ roommate cooks for me.
7. It is too hard for me to cook. My dish is either overcooked or undercooked. My friends usually say that they would rather choose the poison than the dishes cooked by me.
8. Some people are just very lazy, such as me, and cooking takes too much energy. I would rather order pizza online.
9. I think it is very troublesome, as I have to go shopping for the cooking ingredients, and wash them and everything.
10. I think cooking is very dangerous for me. I don't want to get oil splashed on my hand or even face.
11. I don't have the talent to cook. I can't learn it well.
12. Some people are simply too busy to cook, as they spend every minute on work.
13. I don't know why, but cooking is so tiring for me. I just don't have the spirit to do it.

★ 比较喜欢的吃饭地点 (两选一题目)



Where do you prefer to eat, eat at home or out?

举例型问题

这是一个两选一的题目，考生只需要选择一边即可，比如选择“在家”，就只需要说“在家的好处”，一般不需要赘述相反的方面。

在家吃饭的好处：

**例句** I prefer to eat at home, as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

1. I can take my time to enjoy the meal.
2. I can watch TV while eating.
3. It is healthier, and my stomach is very delicate/ fragile.
4. It tastes better.
5. The materials/ ingredients for the food are clean and secured.
6. It is less time-consuming.
7. It is very comfortable for me to eat at home.
8. I don't have to behave like a lady if I eat at home. (女生专用)



在外面吃饭的好处：

**例句** I prefer to eat out/ in restaurants, because \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

1. I will have a lot of choices.
2. I can enjoy the service.
3. It is a good way to hang out with my friends.
4. I don't have to wash the dishes.
5. The taste is better.
6. I can follow the latest menu in the restaurant and cook it for myself later.
7. I am lazy.

★ 家里经常做饭的人

 Who usually cooks in your home?

举例 + 论证型问题

**例句** Usually, \_\_\_\_\_ do/ does the cooking in my family, 'cause \_\_\_\_\_.

**I:** I have more free time.

**my mother/ wife/ sister:** she is careful and she is good at it, you know, males always over-fried the dishes.

**my father/ husband/ brother:** he wants to share the responsibility and show his love.


**the household services/ nannies:** they get paid, and it's their job.

**nobody:** every family member of mine is very busy, so we don't have time to cook.

## 26 Game

“游戏”(Game)不是“运动”(Sport)，这是两个话题，不要混为一谈。其实“Game”的答案可选范围非常多，比如：跳棋、丢手绢、纸牌游戏、电脑游戏、猜字谜等等，但是如果每一个类型都准备一遍显然是没有必要的，而且论据也会很分散。在这里建议大家把这个话题引向电脑游戏，因为它的优点非常多，媒介丰富，分类清晰，普及率高，好处和坏处也比较集中，而且举例时还能说出一些颇具难度的单词，实在是众多备选当中的上上之选。

What kind of games did you like to play when you were a child?

 What kind of games were popular 10 years ago?

举例型问题



**例句** I used to play \_\_\_\_\_ when I was a child, but it was many years ago.

以前的游戏：

Tetris 俄罗斯方块

Super Mario 超级玛丽

Battle City 坦克大战

Contra 魂斗罗

Street Fighter II 街头霸王 2

Magic: the Gathering 万智牌

Pocket Monster 宠物小精灵

Red Alert 红色警戒

Monopoly/ Zillionaire 大富翁

Five-in-a-row 五子棋

hopscotch 跳房子

hide-and-seek 捉迷藏

poker/ cards 扑克牌

origami 折纸

**What games do you like to play?**

**What games are popular in China?**

**What's the most popular game in China?**



**Do different age groups of people like to play different games?**

举例型问题

**例句** I think now we have so many games to play, such as \_\_\_\_\_.

现在的游戏：

Street Fighter V 街头霸王 5

Angry Birds 愤怒的小鸟

Plants VS Zombies\* 植物大战僵尸

Cutting Ropes 切绳子

Killers of 3 Kingdoms 三国杀

Fruit Ninja 水果忍者

Monster Hunter 怪物猎人

Residence Evil 生化危机

World of Warcraft (Online) 魔兽世界

Warcraft (Dota) 魔兽争霸

Mass Effect Series 质量效应

Final fantasy 最终幻想

Call of Duty 使命召唤

Counter-Strike 反恐精英

Cross Fire 穿越火线

Dragon Nest 龙之谷

Silent Hill 寂静岭

League of Legends 英雄联盟

Need for Speed 极品飞车

Temple Run 丛林逃生

StarCraft 星际争霸

Pro Evolution Soccer 实况足球

Link Game 连连看

Crysis 岛危机

The New Paladin 仙剑奇侠传

Assassin's Creed 刺客信条

NBA 2K14 NBA 篮球

注：VS 是 versus 的缩写，读的时候不要读成“VS”。



Can you play this game with friends?



How do people learn to play this game?

举例型问题

**例句** I can learn/ play those games by \_\_\_\_\_, such as \_\_\_\_\_, with my friends.

玩游戏的媒介：

- computer
- game console:

Xbox 360 (家用机) of Microsoft

PS3 (家用机) / PSP (掌机) / PSV (掌机) of Sony

NDS/ 3DS (裸眼 3D) / Wii of Nintendo

iPod: iPad/ iPhone/ ITouch

Smart Phone: Android phones

补充素材：

RPG = Role-playing Game：角色扮演游戏，如《最终幻想》《暗黑破坏神》。

ACT = Action Game：动作游戏，如《超级马里奥》《波斯王子》。

AVG = Adventure Game：冒险游戏，如《生化危机》《古墓丽影》。

SLG = Simulation Game：策略游戏，如《三国志》《樱花大战》。

RTS = Real-Time Strategy Game：即时战略游戏，如《魔兽争霸》《星际争霸》。

FTG = Fighting Game：格斗游戏，如《街霸》《拳皇》。

STG = Shooting Game：射击类游戏，如《自由空间》《星球大战》。

FPS = First Person Shooting Game：第一人称视角射击游戏，如《半条命》《反恐精英》。

PZL = Puzzle Game：益智类游戏，如《俄罗斯方块》。

RCG = Racing Game：竞速游戏（也有称作为 RAC 的），如《极品飞车》。

CAG = Card Game：卡片游戏，如《信长的野望》《游戏王》。

TAB = Table Game：桌面游戏，如《大富翁》《拖拉机》。

MSC = Music Game：音乐游戏，如《劲乐团》。

SG = Sports Game：运动游戏，如《实况足球》、NBA 2K 及 MLB。

MUD：泥巴游戏，如《侠客行》《子午线 59》《万王之王》。

WAG = Wap Game：手机游戏，如《水果忍者》。



**Do you often play games?**

**Do you like to play games? (Why? What games?)**

**What benefits do you get from playing this game?**

**What benefits do people get from playing games?**

**Why do you (or do people) play games?**

**What can people learn from games?**



论证型问题

**室内游戏的好处：**

1. Some specially designed computer games can help children develop their intelligence.
2. They are so attractive. For instance, in RPG (role playing games), I can experience a different life as a hunter or a soldier and so on.
3. They are safer than outdoor games. I won't get into accidents, such as breaking my leg or twisting my ankle.
4. They can train people's brains, making them react fast.
5. They can improve the ability of working as a team, and make a person more cooperative.
6. They can help the players form a whole and mature perspective on things after they played the game, because they have to think about how to use the resources on hand.
7. They can help people release the pressure that they've got in the real world.
8. I, sometimes, can learn some English when I am playing computer games, especially the role-playing games and first person shooting games.

**室内游戏的坏处：**

1. I think they're boring. It's worse than watching TV.
2. It's bad for people's health. For instance, it will make them near-sighted, and their fingers will suffer if they play games for too long. What's more, their spines could be twisted into a wrong position.
3. They take too much time of my real life and study/ work.
4. They will make people gain more weight (increase the obesity) if they sit in front of the computer for too long.
5. They are easy to get addicted to it. It is so hard to control myself when I am addicted to something.
6. Some people use them as a tool to escape from the real world, because they feel little sense of accomplishment in the real world, but it is of no help at all.



**Can you get information about this game on the Internet?**



**Are there other ways to get information about this game?**

举例型问题

得到游戏信息的方法：

I can get information from the Internet about games. Besides, I can watch the videos of the games and learn from them.

## 27 Gift

“礼物”这个话题是一个举例型题目多过论证型题目的话题，大家可以通过对于礼物的梳理来了解中国人对于礼物的一些理解，而且涉及的单词和“Collecting”这个话题有不少相似的地方，如果这两个题目都在同一个月份考查的话，大家一定是非常占便宜的。

**Do you often give gifts to people?**

**What was the last gift you received?**

**Have your friends ever given you gifts?**

**What was the last gift you gave someone?**

**What sorts of gifts do you give to your friends?**

**What sorts of things do they bring?**



**What sorts of things do people in China usually give as gifts?**

论证型问题

**例句** Usually, I consider/ believe the following things as suitable gifts. For boys, it could be \_\_\_\_\_; for girls, people often choose \_\_\_\_\_.

送男生常见的礼物：

lighter (zippo) 打火机

shoes (air Jordan) 鞋子

wallet 钱包

watch 手表

belt 皮带

iTouch video games 电子游戏

送女生常见的礼物：

flowers 花

X-box one 游戏机

Nintendo 任天堂

PSV 掌上游戏机

notebook 日记本

memo 备忘录

cuff button 西服袖扣

chocolate 巧克力



teddy bear 泰迪熊

barbie doll 芭比娃娃

clothes 衣服

hair bend 发带

cup/ mug 杯子 / 马克杯

sun glasses 墨镜

bags 包

perfume 香水

accessory 配饰, 如手包、手套等

aromatherapy candle 香薰蜡烛

essential oil 精油

rings 戒指

necklace 项链

books 书

pet 宠物

**Do you like giving presents to other people? (Why?/ Why not?)****Do you often give presents to other people? (Why?/ Why not?)****Do you and your friends or family members give each other gifts?****Do you often buy gifts for friends or family members?****Do you think gift-giving is very important?****Do people in China like to give gifts (to other people)?****Why do people give these gifts?****In China, is it necessary to bring a gift when you visit someone?****In China, is it necessary to bring gifts when you return home after travelling to another place (such as overseas or a different part of China)?**

论证型问题

**送礼物的理由：**

1. Gifts will make people feel thrilled and excited.
2. People will feel respected or a sense of importance when they receive a gift.
3. It makes my friend feel happy, and as long as my friend is happy, I am happy.
4. Gifts represent my love to them, because I made them all by myself.
5. Gifts will be a great reminder for the ones who receive them. They will remember their friends through the gifts.
6. It is a way to show people's feelings towards someone in a more indirect/ implicit way. I could show my feelings, such as respect/ gratitude/ love, or even sorry.
7. Gift is a great way to show/ improve the friendship between friends.

**不送礼物的理由：**

1. The care/ attitude and intention is more important than the gift itself.
2. Some gifts don't meet the needs of my friends, and it would be risky to buy something



that my friends don't like.

3. It is a waste of money for people to buy gifts. Some of them are really expensive.
4. Sometimes, people buy gifts for others not because they care, but because they have to. I think it is very superficial/ shallow.
5. When I give gifts to others at a wrong time/ occasion, people may wonder why I give presents to them. Basically, they will think I want to ask them for favours.
6. People have different tastes on gifts, and it is really hard to choose the suitable ones.
7. Usually, I don't give gifts to someone whom I am not familiar with.
8. I have a choice phobia disorder, and it always takes me hours before I can decide what to buy.

### ★ 送礼物的场合



**When do people in China give gifts? (On what occasions?/ In what situations?)**

举例型问题

**例句** People usually give gifts when there is a \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_, because it is the polite thing to do, you know, it makes people feel happy and excited.

wedding 婚礼

farewell party 欢送派对

date 约会

welcoming party 迎新派对

birthday party 生日派对

holidays (such as Valentine's Day) 节日 (如

patient-visiting 看病人

情人节)

housewarming party 暖房派对

### ★ 好礼物的定义

**Have you ever given someone a gift you made yourself?**

**What are some of the gift-giving customs in China?**

**Do you think it's important to give expensive gifts?**

**Do you think it's easy to choose what to give other people?**

**When considering a present to give to someone, how do you (or, how do people) select this gift?**



举例型问题

**例句** I think a good gift should be \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. People would love it, if a gift can possess these two qualities.



- expensive/ valuable 贵重的 / 有价值的
- meaningful/ filled with sentimental value 有意义的 / 有感情价值的
- the ones with great quality 质量好的
- what people want the most 符合人们需求的
- unique 独特的
- hand-made 手工制作的
- practical 实用的
- creative 有创造力的
- suitable 合适的

## 28 Healthy Lifestyle

“健康的生活方式”是一个与“Relax”极其相似的空壳题目，我们只需要用以下三个话题当中的任意两个组合在一起即可完成这个话题的准备工作，因为以下三个话题正是“Healthy Lifestyle”的必备条件。只要复习好这三个话题，“Healthy Lifestyle”就不在话下了。

1. Sports & Outdoor Activity 话题
2. Food & Cooking 话题中的 Healthy Diet
3. Patience 话题



### 练习题

What do you do to keep healthy?

How do people maintain good health?

What would you say is a healthy lifestyle?

Is there any sport that you would like to try in the future?

Has your school/ university taught you anything about how to live a healthy life?

## 29 History

这个话题是雅思口语考试 Part 1 科目类题目的代表，另一个此类的题目是“Science”，可谓是一个文科一个是理科。不过这个话题依然遵循着雅思口语 Part 1 的原则，问题都不会过于深入。



**Do you like (to learn about) history?**



**Do you think history is important?**

论证型问题

**喜欢历史的原因：**

1. People can learn a lot of things from the past. History is a very valuable lesson for all of us.
2. History is very mysterious. There are a lot of different versions of one historical event, and each one of them is very interesting.
3. Some teachers teach history in a very funny way. They would dress like the people from that period in order to make the class vivid and fun.
4. There is a famous history teacher called Yuan Tengfei, who taught history in a very vivid and lucid way. If I had a teacher like that, I probably would love to learn history as well.
5. My father used to tell me a lot of interesting historical stories, which helped me cultivate my interests in this area.

**不喜欢历史的原因：**

1. It is too far away and not suitable for the modern society. People shouldn't hold on to the past too much.
2. As a subject, the ways our teachers teach history just reduce the interest of students about history a lot. It is boring and dull.
3. Most history teachers teach this subject monotonously, and they require the students to learn by note, so it extremely reduces the students' enthusiasm.
4. There are a lot coincidences between the past and the present. People always feel pity about things they should or shouldn't have done in the past and they are afraid that history will repeat itself.

**What historical event do you find most interesting?**



**What historical event do you think was most important?**

举例型问题

I think the Galileo's free falling experiment was one of the most important event in the history of physics, as I was inspired by him so much. (更多细节可参考本书 Part 2 “学术科目类”话题)



**Can you name a person from history who you would like to learn more about?**



**Why would you like to learn more about him/ her?**

举例型问题

I admire Galileo so much, because he was very brave and intelligent, and I was inspired and encouraged by him. I want to know more about him. (更多细节可参考本书 Part 2 “学术科目类”)

★ 看电视学历史

**Do you like to watch programs on TV about history?**



**Do you think you can learn history from films and/ or TV programs?**

论证型问题

好处：

1. I like to watch TV and learn history from it, because it is very vivid.
2. Some TV shows invite some famous scholars to the program and they will offer some new and unique perspective about one historical event.
3. I can remember the names and events easily after I watched the historical TV shows. They help me memorize those data so much clearer.

坏处：

1. Some TV programs don't go with the original stories of history but twist them in unexpected ways, so they are very misleading and untrue for people to learn things from them.
2. Some people fabricate stories on TV shows, which has a bad influence on kids, as they might believe that is true.
3. Some TV shows represent the idea of the producers or directors, but not all of their understandings are correct and true, some of which are actually biased and misleading.

★ 网络对于历史学习的影响

**Do you think the Internet is a good place to learn about history?**



**Do you think studying/ learning about history through the Internet is good?**

论证型问题



I think people have to be very careful about the information on the Internet. On one hand, we can find a lot of information, but on the other hand, some of the information is not true.

### 30 Holiday & Festival

“节假日”这个话题的考试频率不算太高，对于大部分的考生来说，只有少数几次遇到的机会，在往年的考试中考法也比较固定。虽然考试频率不高，但是这个话题是大家日后出国留学时经常使用的语言素材，我的很多学生都在出国后需要向自己的同学介绍或者解释中国的相关节假日，因此这个话题的意义更多地体现在帮助大家日后的日常交流。

#### ★ 中国传统节日

What kind of holidays/ festivals are there in your country?



Are there any holidays that is very important in your country?

举例型问题

**例句** Chinese people take holidays very seriously. We have \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. They all play very important parts in our life and culture.

New Year

Double Seventh's Day

Spring Festival

Mid-Autumn Day

The Lantern Festival

National Day

Tomb-Sweeping Day

Double Ninth's Festival

the Dragon Boat Festival

#### ★ 国外节日



What kinds of holidays/ festivals are popular in your country?

举例型问题

**例句** Actually, the popular holidays in China now are not all traditional holidays but international ones, like \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

Valentine's Day

Christmas Day/ Christmas Eve

April Fool's Day

Carnival in Brazil

International Labour Day

Children's Day

Thanksgiving Day

Halloween (Trick or Treat)

Easter Day



**Why do we need to have holidays?**

**Are holidays important to people? (Why?)**

**Do you think it's important for people to have holidays?**

**Do you think holidays are important?**

**Do you think holidays are necessary? (Why?)**

**Do you think we have enough holiday time (or should people's holidays be longer)?**

**Do you think people in China need more holidays (vacation time)?**

**Do you think it's reasonable for an employer to ask his or her employees to work in their rest time?**



论证型问题

**节假日的好处：**

1. I can have some time to relax myself.
2. People can have some time to hang out with friends.
3. People can have more time to spend with their families.

**节假日的坏处：**

1. It is a waste of the money and time. For instance, people spend a lot of money buying expensive firecrackers during the Spring Festival.
2. There are a lot of things that have to wait during the holidays, as most of the banks/shopping malls and other places are closed.



**练习题**

How do people in China spend their holidays?

What do you usually do in your holidays?

What did you do in your last holidays?

### 31 Housework

“家务”是一个比较独特的题目，因为它的论点及举例比较特殊，所以不好与别的话题合并，也是少有的必须单独准备 Who 开头问题的话题之一，一般通用的 who 开头的理由在这里往往不是很恰当，所以想考高分的学生还是要好好准备这一个话题。



★ 各种家务的名称

Do you usually do any housework?

What kinds of housework do you least like doing? (Why?)

When you were a child, did you ever do any housework?

What do you do to help the family?

Have there been any changes in the housework people do since the time when your parents were your age?



举例型问题

**例句** There is a lot of housework, such as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. Frankly speaking, there is just so much of them that I always wonder how my mother did all those things and still went to work every day.

- cooking 做饭
- washing dishes 洗碗
- tidying up the room 整理房间
- doing the laundry 洗衣服
- waxing the floor 给地板打蜡
- cleaning the floor 擦地板
- washing the car 洗车
- cutting the grass of the garden 给花园除草
- walking the dog 遛狗
- baby-sitting my little brother/ sister 照看我的弟弟 / 妹妹

★ 谁来做家务



Who usually does the housework in your home?

举例 + 论证型问题

**例句** Usually, \_\_\_\_\_ do/ does the housework in my family, because \_\_\_\_\_.

**I:** I have more free time.

**my mother/ wife/ sister:** she is careful and she is good at it, you know, males are housework idiots.

**my father/ husband/ brother:** he wants to share the responsibility and show his love.

**the household service/ nanny/ baby sitter:** they get paid, and it's their job.



**Do you like to do housework? (Why?/ Why not?)**

**Do you think it's important for children to do some housework?**

**If a child helps do some of the family housework, how do you think this affects the child's development?**



**Do you think people should be paid to do household chores?**

论证型问题

**家务的好处：**

1. Housework can keep people's living environment clean and neat.
2. It can help children develop a good sense of self-discipline.
3. It is a great way to teach kids to take responsibilities in their lives, starting with trivial things.
4. Doing the housework can show my love for my parents. They are so tired after work, and I want to make them feel better.
5. It is a very good way for me to do some exercises and to clean my room at the same time. It is a win-win situation (one-stone-two-birds plan).
6. I will have a sense of accomplishment after I finished the housework.
7. I like to put things in the right place and organize them well, and I will feel really upset if the room is very messy.

**家务的坏处：**

1. It's very dirty, such as washing the dishes and waxing the floor.
2. For people who are working, it takes too much time and energy. If I come home and feel tired, I don't want to do the housework.
3. Housework is the main reason why my girlfriend and I fight. Neither of us want to do the housework, so we spend a lot of time deciding who should do it every day.

## 32 Internet

“网络”是一个老牌话题，考生遇到这种话题的概率非常高。它和“Computer”等话题有很多相似的地方，所以大家复习时可以进行联系记忆。同样地，面对大量的问题，一定要科学分类，而不是一题一题地准备。



★ 网络的用途

**What do you do on the Internet?**

**How can people best make use of the Internet?**

**In general, what impact does the Internet have on people's lives?**



举例型问题

**例句** I use Internet for many things, such as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, you know, it is a part of my life now. It would be seriously inconvenient if I lost Internet connection.

- going to the Social Networking Services, such as Facebook/ Renren, or Twitter/ Weibo (Microblog) 上社交网站
- watching movies 看电影
- watching TV episodes 看电视连续剧
- searching for information 查找信息
- listening to music 听音乐
- playing online games 玩网络游戏
- shopping online 网上购物
- sending emails 发邮件
- keeping in touch with my family and friends 与家人和朋友保持联系
- observing the information of the stock market 关注炒股信息
- designing the icon for the webpage 设计网页图标
- searching for some inspiration and material that I need for my work 为我的工作搜集灵感和素材

**Do you think the Internet is a good thing?**

**Is the Internet very popular in China?**

**What are the good and bad points about the Internet?**

**Is there anything that's not so good about (or, on) the Internet?**

**Is there anything you don't like about the Internet?**



论证型问题

**网络的好处：**

1. It is a very good way to keep contact with people through the Internet.
2. The Internet includes massive information and video clips for people to enjoy.



3. There is so much information on the Internet that I can find a lot of useful things.
4. It really makes my life much easier than before. I can order goods on the Internet, or check the traffic condition before I go out. It is of great help.
5. Most of the information is very reliable when they come from the official websites, but some of them come from unknown blogger, which should not be trusted.
6. There are a lot of online courses that I can watch and learn from the Internet. For example, I can learn how to cook, and even how to speak Japanese.
7. It makes our life much more convenient, we can do a lot of things through the Internet.
8. It reduces the cost of time and energy, even resources.
9. It is more environmental friendly for people to use.

#### 网络的坏处：

1. It may contain some inappropriate information, such as violence and sex, which is not good for children or teenagers.
2. There are a lot swindlers on the Internet and people may be fooled by them and lose money.
3. It is not good for people's eyes and skin, and may make people near-sighted.
4. Students will become addicted easily, so they may skip the classes and stay up late every night to play on the Internet.
5. Most of the information on the Internet is not very reliable and that just makes people feel less secure/ safe.
6. It is really a waste of time for people to spend too much time on the Internet.



#### 练习题

- Have you ever bought anything on the Internet?
- How did you learn to use the Internet?
- How has the internet changed people's lives?
- How has the Internet changed your life?
- How can people learn things on the Internet?
- What do you think are the benefits of "e-learning" ?
- What sorts of things can people learn on the Internet?
- What is the best way people can learn from the Internet?



### 33 Language

这个话题在 Part 1 及 Part 2 都经常出现，但是考查的侧重点不同。当出现在 Part 1 时，这个话题以一种分散且抽象的方式考查相关素材，但是如果出现在 Part 2，考生所准备的素材就需要一个更为具体的整体的故事作为主线。

#### ★ 想学的语言

**What kind of language would you like to learn?**



**Are there any languages that you want to learn in the future?**

举例 + 论证型问题

**例句** I really want to learn \_\_\_\_\_, because \_\_\_\_\_.

**German:** I admire Germans' professional attitude towards work and their self-discipline.

**French:** It is the most romantic language in the world. Besides, it has a lot in common with English.

**Italian:** It is said that Italian is filled with words that feel like flowers and sound like music.

**Russian:** I admire many Russian musicians, such as Tchaikovsky.

**Spanish:** I think Spanish is very sexy, you know. The accent is so different and attractive.

**Latin:** It is the language of ancient Rome and the official language of its empire. Many organizations today have Latin mottos.

**Japanese:**

- I love to watch Japanese cartoons/ animation and I want to be able to understand them without reading the subtitles.
- There are a lot of trades going on with Japanese costumers and businessmen in my hometown, so I can work in this area if I can master Japanese.

**Korean:** I am a huge fan of Korean TV soap opera. I want to listen to the original version, instead of reading the subtitles.

#### ★ 学习语言的方式

**What kind of method do you think is useful when you are learning another language?**

**What do you think is the most effective way to learn a foreign language?**



**How did you learn English?**

举例型问题



**例句** There are a lot of ways to learn a language, such as \_\_\_\_\_. I conclude this from the experience of English learning.

- studying at a language school 上语言学校
- being taught by a family member (friend) 家人 / 朋友教
- making some foreign friends 交一些外国朋友
- having a foreign girlfriend (boyfriend) 交外国女 (男) 朋友
- staying there for half a year 在外国待半年
- watching foreign movies 看外国电影
- watching foreign TV episodes 看外国电视剧
- listening to foreign music 听外国歌曲
- playing foreign games 玩外国游戏
- reading some foreign novels/ magazines/ newspaper 读外国小说 / 杂志 / 报纸

**Why do people learn a second or third language?**

**Why did you choose to study English?**

**Do you think it's important to learn foreign languages? (Why?/ Why not?)**



论证型问题

**语言学习的好处：**

1. I think learning a language is not only about vocabulary and grammar, but the culture emerging as well, which makes language learning fun.
2. It's a good way to communicate with foreign friends without trouble. Making friends with them is fun.
3. It is the symbol of higher education in China. People usually respect the ones who can speak several different languages.
4. It can help me find a better job, as mastering a new language is a useful skill.
5. It can help me train my brain to memorize things better.
6. It is the most commonly used language worldwide. I can go to a foreign country without a tour guide.
7. I am interested in it. It may appear to be boring to other people, but I kind of enjoy it.
8. My idols are Japanese/ American/ Korean/ French. I want to know more about them, you know, as much as possible, starting with their language.



**语言学习的坏处：**

1. I will be confused if I learn too many different languages. One of my friends is learning English and French at the same time, but it is a blur for her, because some of the words were very similar.
2. It is very hard to learn. I have to remember a lot of vocabulary and grammar, as well as the pronunciation of the words.
3. The language system is completely different from ours, which is really hard for us to learn and adapt to.
4. There are not many foreigners to help us practice, and it is not good for the learning.
5. Some of the foreign languages are not commonly used as English or Chinese, so I won't have a lot of chance to practice/ speak that language.
6. Some pronunciation features are really difficult to imitate, especially French and Spanish.
7. I don't have the talent, and learning a language is really not my cup of tea.

### 34 Leisure Time & Weekends & Evening

这三个话题的相似度极高，优缺点几乎完全重合，所以我们将它们合并掌握即可。



**When do you have free time?**

举例型问题

**例句** Well, I think I am very lucky. Frankly speaking, I have plenty of time for leisure activities, such as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

Weekends

Evenings

Holidays

festivals



**Which one do you like better, Saturday or Sunday?**

举例 + 论证型问题

**例句** I like \_\_\_\_\_ better, as \_\_\_\_\_.

**Saturday:** It's the first day of the weekend. I can relax after 5 days working. I have been looking forward to this day for a long time. I can stay up late without worrying much about going to school/ work on time the next day.

**Sunday:** I won't have anything to bother me on this day. Everyone is relaxing at home. But I have to go back to work after Sunday.



**Do you think it's important to have leisure time?**

**Do you think it's important to relax?**

**Do you think it's important for people to spend some time relaxing? Why?**

**Do you think relaxing is important for people?**

**Do you think it's easy for people to relax?**

**Do you think modern people have enough time for relaxing?**



论证型问题

**休闲的好处：**

1. It can give me a chance to go out with my friends or family.
2. I can do things that I don't have the time to do on weekdays during the leisure/ spare/ free time.
3. It can refresh myself after days of work and help me restore energy.
4. There are a lot of parties during the leisure/ spare/ free time, such as weekends or evenings, and I can hang out with my friends.
5. I can do a lot of meaningful and important things during leisure/ spare/ free time, such as reading.

**休闲的坏处：**

1. It will make people lazy and sloppy if they have too much leisure/ spare/ free time.
2. A lot of people have to work overtime during the holidays/ weekends/ evenings, and it is kind of depressing.
3. It will be really hard for people to adapt to the working environment after a period of leisure time, and you know, post-holiday syndrome is really difficult to overcome/ conquer/ recover from.
4. People will procrastinate after the leisure/ spare/ free time, because they lose the will to work hard.

**★ 空余时间可以做的事情**

**What kinds of leisure time activities are popular with young people today?**

**What do you like doing in your leisure time? (Why?)**

**When you relax, what do you like to do?**



举例型问题

**例句** I have a lot of options during the leisure time, you know, I can \_\_\_\_\_ or



\_\_\_\_\_. They really help me relax.

- do sports
- listen to music
- read some books
- watch cartoons
- play computer games
- watch a movie
- watch TV
- have a nice and sound sleep
- go out with my friends for dinner
- go shopping with my friends



### 练习题

How do you think people will relax in the future?

Do you think modern people have enough time for relaxing?

Do you think modern people like to get together with others?

Do you think modern people like to do things with others, in a group?

Do you think it's important to spend your leisure time with your family? Why?

Can you think of any hi-tech products that play an important role in the leisure/entertainment industry?

## 35 Letters & Writing & Emails & Cards

这四个话题有很多相似之处，所以放在一起讲解，大家注意它们的联系与区别。

**Do you like writing to people?**

**Do you often writing letters?**

**Do you think handwriting is very important nowadays?**

**What impression does a person's handwriting have on other people?**

**Do you write every day?**



论证型问题

信的优点：

1. It's more formal; people will use letters when there is an important occasion.



2. It's traditional, representing culture and old style, and some people may like it.
3. It can create more job opportunities, such as for postman.
4. I believe that handwriting letters can show my respect or love to people who receive them.

#### 信的缺点：

1. It is slow; it takes a long time to go from one place to another.
2. It is expensive, especially when I want to send it to another country. I have to pay for the stamps/ envelopes and the writing paper.
3. It's not environmentally friendly, since producing paper damages the forests, and the transportation of the delivery harms the environment too.
4. It is not reliable, as it may get lost during the delivery.
5. It is a waste of time and energy if I have to go to the post office every time when I want to send a letter.

#### How often do you send emails?

#### What are your main reasons for using emails?

#### Do you like to send emails?

#### Do you usually write by hand or write using a computer?

#### Do you think computers might one day replace handwriting?



论证型问题

#### 电子邮件的优点：

1. It is extremely fast. Even if I have to send an email to the other side of the world, it still takes only 1 second.
2. It is free. I don't have to pay for my email account or receiving and sending emails.
3. It is very efficient. It has a function called group mailing. I can send one email to 20 people at the same time.
4. It is environmentally-friendly, and very beneficial for the protection of the forests.

#### 电子邮件的缺点：

1. It is highly possible to be hacked into, so it is not safe/ secure.
2. It is informal. People may consider it impolite or at least informal to find out something from email, such as a wedding invitation.
3. I always receive a lot of advertisements via email, which really bothers me.



★ 经常用书信交流的人

Who do you usually write?



Nowadays, how do most people write things?

举例型问题

**例句** I usually write \_\_\_\_\_, but I really don't think too much of it.

- letters/ emails to my friends/ family/ teacher/ classmates/ idols
- letters to my colleagues.
- love letter to my boyfriend/ girlfriend
- invitation to the party/ wedding



When do children in your country begin to write?

举例型问题

**例句** Usually, children start to write their names very early, maybe 3 or 4 years old, but they begin to learn and write other things later, you know, at about 6 or 7 years old.



How can children today improve (practise) their handwriting?

举例型问题

**例句** I think there are many ways for children to improve their handwriting, such as\_\_\_\_\_.

- following a good teacher
- practising a lot
- using the copybook for calligraphy

## 36 Library

“图书馆”这个主题贯穿整个雅思考试，口语、听力、阅读及写作都花费了不少篇幅来对这个主题进行阐释，雅思口语 Part 1 中主要是对图书馆的优缺点进行考查。



**Do you often go to libraries?**

**Do you think it is necessary to go to libraries?**



**Do you think the government should build more libraries?**

论证型问题

**图书馆的好处：**

1. There is a great atmosphere of studying. When you are there, you will be influenced by it.
2. It is quiet and clean, providing a great environment for people to study.
3. The facility is advanced, and it's better and quieter for people to read there than in a café.
4. I will have more choices to pick the books that I am interested in.
5. It can help people save money from buying books. One can read as much as you want in a library and borrow books from time to time.

**图书馆的坏处：**

1. It consumes too much space when we don't even have enough room to build dorms for students.
2. It is a huge cost to the government, and there are more urgent situations.
3. It is not as convenient as the Internet, you know, I can google anything on the Internet.



**Have you ever been to any libraries?**

举例型问题

**例句**

**Sure, I always go to a library when I need a quiet place to think about things on my own, and a library is the perfect place to go to.**

## 37 Magazine

“杂志”也是雅思口语的常考题材，Part 1 和 Part 2 都经常考到。本话题涉及很多杂志的类型，虽然都是常见名词的组合，难度并不高，但是大家依然需要进行充分的准备。而本话题下论证型的问题与“Book”话题中论证型的问题高度相似，只需要修改关键词即可，对于考生的准备实际上是很有利的。



What kind of magazine is popular in your country now?



What is the most popular magazine among youngsters in China now?

举例型问题

**例句** I think the most popular one is \_\_\_\_\_. Many people like to read this kind of magazine monthly.

杂志的类别：

finance magazine 财经杂志

pet magazine 宠物杂志

comic magazine 动漫杂志

home magazine 家居杂志

educational magazine 教育杂志

travel magazine 旅游杂志

food magazine 美食杂志

fashion magazine 时尚杂志

entertainment magazine 娱乐杂志

celebrity magazine 明星杂志

automobile magazine 汽车杂志

business magazine 商业杂志

computer magazine 电脑杂志

music magazine 音乐杂志

sport magazine 运动杂志

game magazine 游戏杂志

art magazine 艺术杂志

film magazine 影视杂志

国内热门杂志：

《读者》Reader

《瑞丽》Ray

《中国国家地理》National Geographic China

《半月谈》China Comment

《青年文摘》Youth Digest

《新周刊》New Weekly

《南风窗》South Reviews

《财经》Caijing Magazine

《家庭》Family

国外热门杂志：

Time 《时代周刊》(美国)

People 《人物》(美国)

National Geographic 《国家地理杂志》(美国)

Visionaire 《视觉美国》(美国)

Conde Nast Traveller 《旅游者》(美国)

Martha Stewart Living 《玛莎·斯图尔特生活》(美国)

Cosmopolitan 《时尚》(美国)

VOGUE 《VOGUE 服饰与美容》(美国)

Reader's Digest 《读者文摘》(美国)

Nature 《自然》(英国)

The Economist 《经济学人》(英国)

Der Spiegel 《明镜周刊》(德国)

ELLE 《世界时装之苑》(法国)

SHIFT 《SHIFT 创意杂志》(日本)



**Do you like reading magazines? (Why?/ Why not?)**



**Do you think reading magazines is important? (Why?/ Why not?)**

论证型问题

杂志的优点：

1. They suit my personality. I am a very quiet person, and I like to be in a quiet place to read a magazine.
2. They provide a lot of knowledge that I have never encountered before.
3. They will improve my taste in art/ food/ sports.
4. They can help relieve the pressure and help me relax.
5. They can help me learn something new.
6. They can cultivate my imagination and creativity.
7. They will have a positive influence on society and social trends.
8. They can help me express my own feelings, you know, as there are sections that tell readers how to interact with others and how to express feelings.
9. They can broaden my horizons.
10. Some magazines can help people pay more attention to special groups of people or certain social phenomena.

杂志的缺点：

1. Reading magazines takes too much time and energy, and people won't have enough time to do other things.
2. Reading magazines won't help you in your social life, not as much as sports or joining a club.
3. It will harm your eyes if you read too much.
4. They may contain some inappropriate information.
5. They are not environmentally-friendly. People have to cut down a lot of trees to make magazines.
6. It is very inconvenient to carry magazines around. They are a little heavy, such as the *National Geographic*.

## 38 Maps

“地图”是一个比较新的话题,因此积累下来的问题数量不多。但是这个话题的出题逻辑非常清楚,因此大家只要根据以下逻辑复习完毕即可顺利通关。





### Do you (ever) use a map?

论证型问题

#### 地图的好处：

1. Personally, I get lost all the time, so I think a map can help people find the right direction that they are looking for.
2. People can use maps when they are abroad. They may not be able to speak the local language, but they can read the map.
3. There are some recommendations about the local tourist attractions on the maps, so travellers can find the places that they are interested in on the maps.
4. Some people like to keep maps from other cities or countries as souvenirs.
5. Google map is really convenient and intelligent. It saved me so many times from embarrassing myself.
6. Some electronic maps have GPS and voice for directions, which is so easy and convenient, and I respect the designers who try to make our lives easier.

#### 地图的坏处：

1. Paper maps are not environmental-friendly.
2. Paper maps are not convenient to carry around or check, especially when you have a drink or burger in your hand.
3. The electronic maps heavily rely on Internet connections and electricity.



### When do you use a map?

举例型问题

**例句** There are many occasions that require people to use maps. For instance, when I was\_\_\_\_\_.

- travelling in another city.
- looking for somewhere
- losing my way
- finding a restaurant for the first time
- at Tokyo Disneyland



**( In your city) have you ever asked others for directions?**

举例型问题

**例句** Oh, this is embarrassing, but I have to say yes. I remember I asked others for directions when\_\_\_\_\_.

- I was on a tour in Europe
- I was looking for a café that my friends recommended
- I wanted to get some recommendations about which tourist attractions I should visit
- I got lost in the amusement park

**Who taught you to use a map?****How did you learn to use (or read) a map?**

举例型问题

**例句** My father/ mother/ teacher/ friend taught me how to read a map, as, frankly speaking, I think this is a necessary skill for people who love travelling.**练习题**

Do you prefer to use electronic maps or those made of paper?

这个问题和本章“Dictionary”话题中的理念非常相似，请大家借鉴回答。

### 39 Movie

“电影”这个话题在 Part 2 是非常常见的，所以考生在准备 Part 1 的时候往往忽略它，但是随着考试的题库扩大，它也渐渐变成了一个 Part 1 常考的话题。在这个话题下给大家补充的内容除了可以在 Part 1 使用，在 Part 2 也可以使用。

**Are there any types of films that you dislike?****What kind of films do you like to watch? (Why?)****Are there any kinds of films that you don't like to watch? (Why?)****What kinds of films did you like to watch when you were a child?**

论证型问题

**例句** There are many different kinds of movies, such as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, which are my two favourite kinds of films.



**电影的类型：**

documentary 纪录片

literary film 文艺片

musicals 音乐剧

comedy 喜剧片

tragedy 悲剧片

horror movie 恐怖片

Kongfu film 武侠片

thriller 惊悚片

detective film 侦探片

ethical film 伦理片

romantic film 爱情片

cartoon 卡通片

silent film 无声电影

talkie 有声电影

dubbed film 配音复制的影片，译制片

action movie 功夫片

**Do you prefer to watch films in a cinema or at home? (Why?)**

**Are there any kind of films that you don't like to watch? (Why?)**

**Do you like to watch films?**



论证型问题

**电影的优点：**

1. People can gain wisdom or knowledge from a good movie, and it could be a lifelong experience.
2. Watching foreign movies can really help people improve their second language abilities.
3. Movies can help people relax and relieve pressure.
4. Movies in the cinema have better watching experience.

**电影的缺点：**

1. The movie tickets are really expensive.
2. Some movies just want to make money.
3. They are in fact very shallow. Some movies are full of violence and sex scenes, which are not good for children and teenagers.

**补充单词：**

trailer 预告片

scriptwriter 编剧

producer 制片人

film director 导演

assistant director 副导演，助理导演

cameraman 摄影师

assistant cameraman 摄影助理

property manager 道具员

art director 布景师

makeup artist 化妆师

lighting engineer 灯光师

film cutter 剪辑师



recording director 录音师

actor 男演员

actress 女演员

supporting role 配角

stand-in 替身演员

extra 临时演员

OST 电影原声带

theme song 主题曲

interlude 插曲

premiere 首映式

title 片名

dialogue 对白

### 国内经典电影

Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon 《卧虎藏龙》

Enter the Dragon 《龙争虎斗》

The Killer 《喋血双雄》

Springtime in a Small Town 《小城之春》

Farewell My Concubine 《霸王别姬》

A Chinese Ghost Story 《倩女幽魂》

King of Comedy 《喜剧之王》

Drunken Fist 《醉拳》

Shaolin Temple 《少林寺》

In the Heat of the Sun 《阳光灿烂的日子》

A City of Sadness 《悲情城市》

Days of Being Wild 《阿飞正传》

A Chinese Odyssey 《大话西游》

Ashes of Time 《东邪西毒》

To Live 《活着》

### 国外经典电影

Citizen Kane 《公民凯恩》

The Godfather 《教父》

Schindler's List 《辛德勒的名单》

The Terminator 《终结者》

subtitling 字幕

dubbing 配音

frame 镜头

close-up 特写镜头

background 背景

exterior 外景

spotlight 聚光灯

lighting 舞台灯光

camera angle 拍摄角度

special effect 特效

sound effect 音效

Beijing Bicycle 《十七岁的单车》

Infernal Affairs 《无间道》

New Police Story 《新警察故事》

Kekexili: Mountain Patrol 《可可西里》

Perhaps Love 《如果·爱》

Cell Phone 《手机》

Hero 《英雄》

Peacock 《孔雀》

The Knot 《云水谣》

The Assembly 《集结号》

Secret 《不能说的秘密》

Aftershock 《唐山大地震》

Under the Hawthorn Tree 《山楂树之恋》

If You Are the One 《非诚勿扰》

The Founding of a Republic 《建国大业》

Star Wars 《星球大战》

Memeto 《记忆碎片》

The Chorus 《放牛班的春天》

Nuovo Cinema Paradiso 《天堂电影院》



The Lord of the Rings 《指环王》  
Raiders of the Lost Ark 《夺宝奇兵》  
The Graduate 《毕业生》  
Avatar 《阿凡达》  
The King's Speech 《国王的演讲》  
Shaun of the Dead 《僵尸肖恩》  
Old Boy 《老男孩》  
Kill Bill 《杀死比尔》  
A Clockwork Orange 《发条橙子》  
Amelie 《天使爱美丽》  
Blade Runner 《银翼杀手》  
Leon 《这个杀手不太冷》  
The Matrix 《黑客帝国》

Dead Poets Society 《死亡诗社》  
Spirited Away 《千与千寻》  
Toy Story 《玩具总动员》  
Clerks 《疯狂店员》  
Back to the Future 《回到未来》  
High School Musical 《歌舞青春》  
Inception 《盗梦空间》  
The Shawshank Redemption 《肖申克的救赎》  
One Flew Over the Cuckoo's Nest 《飞越疯人院》  
The Curious Case of Benjamin Button 《本杰明·巴顿奇事》

## 40 Museum

“博物馆”是雅思口语 Part 1 当中相当具有代表性的地点题，除了会在 Part 1 进行考查，Part 2 也经常出现与其相关的话题卡，所以大家可以发现这是个在考试中比较受到重视的话题。除了口语考试，听力考试中也常出现，因此大家一定要认真对待。

### ★ 博物馆的类型

Are there many (or, any) museums in your hometown?

Are there many museums in your country?

Are there any famous museums in your country?



Did you go to any museums when you were a child?

举例型问题

**例句** There are different kinds of museums, such as \_\_\_\_\_, or \_\_\_\_\_. I like \_\_\_\_\_ especially. It is one of my all-time favourites.

### 博物馆的类型

national museum 国家博物馆

military museum 军事博物馆

art museum 美术博物馆

history museum 历史博物馆

nature museum 自然博物馆

movie museum 电影博物馆

agriculture museum 农业博物馆

silk museum 丝绸博物馆



pearl museum 珍珠博物馆

geography museum 地质博物馆

economics museum 金融博物馆

coal& mining museum 煤炭博物馆

gold museum 黄金博物馆

music museum 音乐博物馆

music box museum 八音盒博物馆

architecture museum 建筑博物馆

private museum 私人博物馆

science and technology museum 科技博物馆

#### 世界四大博物馆：

British Museum 英国国家博物馆（伦敦）

Louvre Museum 法国卢浮宫（巴黎）

Metropolitan Museum of Art 美国大都会艺术博物馆

Metropolitan Museum of Art 美国大都会艺术博物馆（纽约）

Winter Palace 俄罗斯冬宫（莫斯科）

#### 其他著名的博物馆：

The Palace Museum 故宫博物院（北京）

Egyptian Museum 埃及博物馆（开罗）

Tokyo Metropolitan Art Museum 日本东京都美术馆（东京）

China House 瓷房子（天津）

Emper Qin's Terra-Cotta Warriors and Horses Museum 秦始皇兵马俑博物馆（西安）

Glinka Museum of Musical Culture 格林卡音乐文化博物馆（莫斯科）

Military Museum of the Chinese People's Revolution 中国人民革命军事博物馆（北京）

**Do you think museums are useful for visitors to your hometown/ country?**

**Do you often visit a museum?**



**Do you think museums are important?**

论证型问题

#### 博物馆的好处：

1. It is a time machine to take me back in time, to maybe 500 years ago, when there were people standing in the same place just as I am doing now. It is magical.
2. I think museums are informative and resourceful. I really think I can learn a lot of things there.
3. They can help me gain more knowledge in a vivid way and I can learn it happily.
4. The precious treasure can be kept safely in museums.
5. It is the perfect place to cultivate a taste in art and the interests related with it.
6. They really show a lot of things about history. I love to go to museums to learn more.



7. I can experience a lot of things in an interactive way in the museums.

**博物馆的坏处：**

1. With a lot of tourists, the masterpieces in museums could be damaged by flashlights of the cameras if the museums don't take certain precautions.
2. It really costs a lot of tax money to preserve the treasures in museums.
3. Some of the museums are just full of exhibitions and photos, and they are very boring.
4. Some of the museums are very boring for me to go to twice, because they never change their exhibits, and keep the same thing going on and on.
5. I really don't have a lot of time to go to museums. They are less attractive than cinemas and shopping malls.
6. Some employees in museums will secretly sell the exhibits to others for the money, and replace the treasure with counterfeits.
7. I think the ways that many museums use to present treasures are unscientific. There is no trace of design or planning, which means exhibitions go from glorious to monotonous.

★ 博物馆中是否适合售卖纪念品

**Do you think it's suitable for museums to sell things to visitors?**



**Do you think museums should sell things to visitors?**

论证型问题

这里问题的“things”不是“展品”，而是“纪念品”，这个问题的相似题目数量少，频率不高，大家做到心中有数即可。

1. I think museums are not charity, and they need to make a profit as well. If selling souvenirs to the visitors can help them achieve that, there is nothing wrong with it.
2. As long as they don't force people to buy, I think it is acceptable.
3. I think museums can use the money that they make by selling souvenirs to help repair the exhibits.



**练习题**

When was the last time you visited a museum?



## 41 Music

“音乐”也是一个老牌的考题，这是中国考生普遍答得比较流畅的话题。一般考生遇到这个话题以为自己占到了便宜，其实这是吃亏的表现，因为口语四个评分标准中，“词汇”这个评分标准要求考生尽量使用不太常用的单词或者语料，这样才能冲击更高的分数，而“音乐”这种大家都能说个几句的题目在这一点上是很难有所突破的，这就是典型的“泯然于众人”。

**What kinds of music do you like to listen to?**

**What's your favourite kind of music?**

**What kinds of music did you like when you were a child?**



**What kinds of music are (most) popular in China?**

举例型问题

**例句** I think I like the \_\_\_\_\_ music the most (such as the music of \_\_\_\_\_). My friends also like it very much.

音乐的种类：

pop 流行音乐 (Michael Jackson/ Britney/ Madonna/ Katy Perry/ Leona Lewis/ Spice Girls/ Westlife)

rap 饶舌 (Flo Rida/ 50 Cent/ Eminem/ Nicki Minaj)

dance 舞曲 (Kylie)

hip-hop 嘻哈乐 (Chris Brown)

electronic 电子音乐 (Moby)

Britpop 英伦摇滚 (The Stone Roses/ Suede/ Oasis)

soul 灵魂乐 (Seal/ Adele)

jazz 爵士乐 (Nat King Cole/ Franklin Sinatra)

rock 摇滚乐 (Marilyn Manson/ Pink/ Lady Gaga)

funk 放克音乐

punk 朋克音乐

R&B 节奏布鲁斯 (Bruno Mars/ Ne-Yo/ Mariah Carey)

disco 迪斯科 (LMFAO)

country 乡村音乐 (Taylor Swift)

light music 轻音乐 (Richard Clayderman)

New Age Music 新世纪音乐 (Enya)

blues 蓝调 / 布鲁斯



Japanese pop 日本流行乐 (Hamasaki Ayumi/ Utada Hikaru)

opera 歌剧 (Luciano Pavarotti)

Peking opera 京剧 (Mei Lanfang)

folk music 民族乐 (Song Zuying)

folk music 民谣 (Carpenter)

religious music 宗教音乐

classical music 古典音乐 (Mozart/ Beethoven/ Debussy/ Liszt/ Bach)

symphony 交响乐

lullaby 摇篮曲

children's song/ nursery-rhyme 儿歌

chant 圣歌

★ 有关乐器

**Have you ever learned to play a musical instrument?**

**If you had the opportunity to learn a musical instrument, what instrument would you learn?**

**What musical instrument( s) is (are) most popular in China?**

**What musical instrument do you most enjoy listening to ( = enjoy listening to most)? (Why?)**

**What benefits do children gain by studying music (learning a musical instrument) (in school)?**



举例型问题

**例句** I guess it must be \_\_\_\_\_, as it is a good hobby for people to enjoy.

国际流行乐器：

ukulele 尤克里里

harmonica 口琴

oboe 双簧管

cello 大提琴

guitar 吉他

violin 小提琴

flute 长笛

piano 钢琴

electronic organ 电子琴

clarinet 单簧管

bass 贝斯

double bass 低音提琴

accordion 手风琴

bass drum 低音鼓

xylophone 木琴

triangle 三角铁



organ 管风琴

### 中国传统乐器：

Suona/ Shanai 唢呐

cucurbit flute 葫芦丝

Di/ Chinese Bamboo Flute 曲笛

Sheng 笙

Xiao/ Chinese Vertical Bamboo Flute 萧

Banhu 板胡

Ching Hu 京胡

Nanhu/ Erhu/ Chinese Fiddle 南胡 / 二胡

Liuqin 柳叶琴

Guzheng/ Chinese Zither 古筝

a drum set 架子鼓

Pipa/ Chinese Lute 琵琶

Yangqin 扬琴

Sanxian 三弦

Luo/ Chinese Gong 锣

Chinese Wood Block 木鱼

Chinese Bass Gong 低音大锣

Chinese Cymbal 钹

Chinese Base Drum 大鼓

Bangze/ Chinese Wooden Clappers 梆子

### ★ 音乐盛会

**What kind of musical events do you like to watch?**



**What kind of musical events have you watched before?**

举例型问题

**例句** Well, I like award ceremonies and music festivals, such as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. There are a lot of idols and stars appearing on the red carpet.

### Award Ceremonies 颁奖典礼：

Grammy Award 格莱美奖

Brit Award 全英音乐大奖

MTV Asia Music Award MTV 亚洲音乐大奖

American Music Award 全美音乐奖

Mercury Music Prize 英国水星音乐奖

MTV Video Music Award (VMA) MTV 音乐录像带大奖

Billboard Music Award 公告牌音乐奖

### Music Festival 音乐节：

Midi music festival 迷笛音乐节

Tanglewood Festival 坦格伍德音乐节

Wireless Festival 无线音乐节

South by Southwest Festival SXSW 音乐节



Isle of Wight Festival 怀特岛音乐节

Glastonbury Festival 格拉斯顿伯里音乐节

**Musician 著名音乐人：**

邓紫棋 G.E.M.

林宥嘉 Yoga Lin

王力宏 Leehom Wang

蔡依林 Jolin Tsai

周杰伦 Jay Chou

王若琳 Joanna Wang

方大同 Khalil Fong

张靓颖 Jane Zhang

张学友 Jacky Cheung

梁静茹 Jasmine Leung

陈奕迅 Eason Chan

王菲 Faye Wong

蔡健雅 Tanya Chua

李玟 Coco Lee

Britney Spears 布兰妮·斯皮尔斯

Michael Jackson 迈克尔·杰克逊

Rihanna 蕾哈娜

Katy Perry 凯蒂·佩里

Adele 阿黛尔

Taylor Swift 泰勒·斯威夫特

Avril Lavigne 艾薇儿·拉维尼

Beyoncé 碧昂斯

Justin Timberlake 贾斯汀·汀布莱克

Eminem 艾米纳姆

Babyface 娃娃脸

Bruno Mars 布鲁诺·马尔斯

Sarah Connor 莎拉·寇纳

Leona Lewis 丽安娜·刘易斯

Usher 亚瑟小子

Celine Dion 席琳·迪翁

The Eagles 老鹰乐队

Coldplay 酷玩乐队

Lady Gaga

**Do you often listen to music?**

**How do you feel when you listen to music?**

**Do you like listening to songs?**

**What benefits will children gain by studying music (learning a musical instrument) (in school)?**

**Is music very important to people in China?**

**How does music affect (or influence) people?**

**Why do many old people dislike pop music?**



论证型问题

音乐的优点：

1. It can make people feel relaxed and happy.



2. Music can get people from different regions together and share their feelings.
3. When I have a party or social event, music is a must.
4. It is a great method for kids to develop their intelligence when they are under 5.
5. It is a great way to release pressure and express myself/ my feelings.
6. Music is the gift from God. No matter when I am sad or happy, there is always a piece of music that suits me.
7. Some music is very comforting, which can give people strength and inspire them spiritually.

#### 音乐的缺点：

1. Learning music/ Going to concerts is too expensive, and it will put a huge financial burden to my family.
2. It takes up too much of my time and influences with my study.
3. It will be a huge distraction when I am trying to concentrate.
4. My hearing will be influenced/ damaged if I listen to some loud music, such as rock music.
5. Some song lyrics are negative and will have bad influence on children.
6. Some music just makes me doze off so fast that I don't even realize that.
7. I don't have the talent.

## 42 Name

“名字”是雅思口语考题当中极其老牌的特殊含义型题目，从有雅思考试开始口语就在考查名字及其含义，时至今日，“名字”这个话题依然没有退出雅思口语考试的舞台，因为考了许多年，所以这类题目数量庞大，变化多端，考生需要准备的细节也比较多。这个话题的好处是考生一般往往有话可说，但缺点则是考生的答案显得千篇一律，没有代入考生自己的具体情况，因此准备时还是要好好准备，切不可出现以下情况：

考官问：“What's the meaning of your name?”

男生“李雷”回答：“My name means ambition.” 他的名字的意思明明是“thunder”。

女生“韩梅梅”回答：“My name means beauty.” 她的名字的意思明明是“plum flower”。

这种完全不过大脑的回答实在无法让人满意。

### ★ 自己名字的含义



What's the meaning of your name?

举例型问题



建议考生确认一下自己的名字的含义该如何表述，不要是男生就说自己的名字意思是 ambition，女生就说自己的名字意思是 beauty，中国文化博大精深，不要这样千篇一律。

**例句** My name means \_\_\_\_\_, because my parents want me to be a \_\_\_\_\_ person/ someone who is \_\_\_\_\_.

1. My name means the spring of the love, because my parents want me to be a compassionate person.
2. In ancient times, there was a famous female poet, and we share the same characters.
3. I was named after the famous General Chi Haotian, as my parents wanted me to be a great person just like him.

以下这些常用名的例子用处很多，当考官问如下问题时，大家都可以从以下语料中挑选一些单词举例说明。如：

- Are there any traditions when we are naming babies?
- Are there any difference between the names of boys and girls?

**例句** We have different tradition for boys and girls. For boys, \_\_\_\_\_ are very popular. For girls, people always choose \_\_\_\_\_.

- What kind of name is popular/ common in China?

**例句** There are \_\_\_\_\_. Those names are very common.

- What kind of name would you like to choose for your child in the future?

**例句** Frankly speaking, I have no idea about that now, but, of course, it should be lucky/ positive. Maybe \_\_\_\_\_ for a boy, \_\_\_\_\_ for a girl.

男孩名：

tall 高	dragon 龙
rich 富	tiger 虎
handsome 帅	steed 骏
power / strength 力	success 成
authority 东、权	victory 胜
culture 文	honesty 诚
triumph 捷	mountain (peak) 峰
knowledge 睿	glorious 煜
ambition 宏	harvest 丰
army 军	sky 天
gentleman 君	perseverance 毅



extraordinary 崢

ridge 梁

open-minded 开

女孩名：

white 白

rich 富

beautiful 美

tenderness 柔、娇

jade 玉

sweetness 甜

beauty 嫣

elegance/ grace 雅

ocean 海

radiance 泽

surpass 越

purity 洁

joy 怡

sunrise 晗

snow 雪

intelligence 慧

fragrance 芳

exceptional 佳

### ★ 起名字的传统



Are there any special traditions about naming babies in your country?

举例型问题

**例句** There are some rules/ traditions to follow. For instance, the name should \_\_\_\_.

- follow the family tree; usually the second character is from the family tree 顺应家谱
- be lucky; just like any other parts of the world, parents always want their babies to be lucky 幸运的
- be peaceful, because we believe that a peaceful life is more important than anything 安乐的
- contain some special meanings or the expectation of the family 具有特殊含义
- be a shallow name in the poor area, as people there believe that will help the kids to grow healthily 贫贱的名字

### ★ 起名字的人



Who usually gives names to the baby in your country?

举例型问题

**例句** Usually, \_\_\_\_\_ gives name to the baby, such as \_\_\_\_\_, it is really just a habit/ tradition in the local area.



**family member:** father/ mother/ grandparent/ godfather/ uncle

**knowledgeable person:** professor/ teacher

**fortune teller:** fengshui master/ Lama/ monk

**Do you like your name?**

**Is your name very important to you?**



**Do Chinese people attach a lot of importance to (their) names?**

论证型问题

名字的好处：

1. I love my name. It was the first gift from my father, and it will bring me good luck and peace.
2. My name sounds beautiful, and the meaning is great, so there is no need for me to change my name.
3. People believe that good names can bring them good luck.
4. Some think good names can help them leave a great first impression on other people.
5. My name gives people a feeling about who I am or how I look like even before they meet me.
6. My name carries my father's expectations, and I want to be that kind of person that my father wanted me to be.

名字的坏处：

1. Its pronunciation is too complex, and hard to pronounce.
2. There is a very rare character in my name. People always pronounce it wrongly.
3. The name has a very bad meaning, which gives people a bad impression.
4. Some names are very naive and childish, and will not suit people when they are an adult. So a new name will be a better option.
5. Some of the names are really hard to memorize, and it would be so embarrassing if I forget somebody's name.
6. Some people's names do not match their horoscope, and they believe it will lead to misfortune.

★ 改名字的人

**Do people in China ever change their names?**



**Who would like to change their names in China?**

举例型问题

**例句** I think there are several different kinds of people who would like to change their names, such as \_\_\_\_\_.

- business man 商人
- celebrities, like movies stars or singers 名人，如电影明星、歌手（艺名 stage name）
- writer 作家（笔名 pen name）
- people who have bad names 名字含义不好
- superstitious people 迷信的人

**★ 改名字的难易****Do you think it is easy to change people's names in China?**

论证型问题

这是一个二选一的题目，考生只需要选择一边即可，比如选择“改名字难”，就只需要说难的原因，不需要论述相反的方面。

**易：**

It is very easy when you are young, especially when you are under 18 years old. I think most people, if they really want to change names, would change their names when they are young.

**难：**

1. It's not very convenient to change people's names in China, especially when you are over 18, because you have to change your ID card/ driving license/ passport/ credit cards as well. It's very complicated.
2. My parents won't allow me to change my name, as it comes from the family tree.

**43 Neighbour**

“邻居”是雅思口语考试 Part 1 当中为数不多的人物话题。人物类主题在 Part 2 出现的比例很高，另一个和人物相关的 Part 1 话题是“Teachers”。大家也可以适当串联准备。

**Do you know (all) your neighbours?**

**Do you think it's important to know your neighbours?**

**How well do you know your neighbours?**



**What do you think of your neighbours?**

**Do you think it's important for a person to have a good relationship with their neighbours?**

**Do you spend much time socialising with your neighbours in your neighbours' homes?**

**What are the benefits of having good relationships with one's neighbours?**

**How (well) do you get along with your neighbours?**



**What sorts of problems (conflicts) can people have with their neighbours?**

论证型问题

**邻居的优点：**

1. Neighbours can help me when I am in trouble. For instance, when I am cooking and I find out that I am out of eggs, I can borrow some from my neighbours.
2. Neighbours can hang out together and have fun, such as going out to the movies or having dinner in a fancy restaurant.
3. Neighbours are a very important part of people's lives today, especially when they are living in big cities, because they might feel lonely living by themselves. It will be worse not having a neighbour.
4. Neighbours can work together as a group to improve the environment of the community.
5. My neighbours are very friendly and they also help me to take care of my pets when I am away from home.

**邻居的缺点：**

1. Some neighbours are very annoying. They turn on their TV so loud that I can hear every word of the TV show. It is frustrating.
2. Some neighbours are very nosy. They always try to know what is going on in my life, and spy on me through the windows.
3. Some of my neighbours are very cold. They never talk to me or smile back at me. I think it is horrible.
4. Some neighbours throw rubbish everywhere in the community. I think they have no civic pride.
5. Some neighbours don't care very much about other people, for example when they are renovating or decorating their home, they would ask the construction team to



work late as night.

### What kind of people are your neighbours?



#### Would you prefer to have young people as your neighbours, or old people?

举例型问题

1. I live in a very nice community. Most of the people there are retired ladies and gentlemen, and they are very kind-hearted.
2. I live in a very fancy neighborhood. There are a lot of beautiful girls and handsome boys living nearby.
3. I live in a neighborhood which is exclusive for houses, so there are many villas and mansions with gardens and swimming pools. I guess I have a lot rich neighbours.

### In what ways can neighbours help each other?



#### Have you ever asked a neighbour for help?

举例型问题

**例句**

I think there are many things that a neighbour can help me with, such as \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_.

- repairing the light when it wouldn't turn on
- lending me some tools
- signing for packages/ parcels for me when I am not at home
- taking care of my pets
- looking after my little brother/ sister

### Are there many people living near you?



#### How often do you see (or talk to) your neighbours?

举例型问题

Frankly speaking, I really don't know that for sure, as I am very busy with my work/ study. You know, my neighbours are probably even busier than me, as a result, I really don't see them very often. So I don't know if there are many of them or not.



## 44 News

这个题目是信息传递类题目的鼻祖，各种信息传递类的题目的优缺点都是由这个题目发散而来的。“News”是抽象的新闻，可以是报纸上的新闻、广播上的新闻或者电视、网络上的新闻。大家不要把News和Newspaper混为一谈。

**Are you very interested in news?**

**Do you like to keep up with the latest news?**

**Do you like to follow news?**

**Why do you want to know the latest news?**

**How important is it for you to get news every day?**

**How important do you think news is?**



论证型问题

**新闻的好处：**

1. News is the best way to spread information. It can help people in their daily lives.
2. As a citizen, it is very important to know what is going on in the city, and we have the right to know.
3. I can learn a lot of things by watching news, some of which are very interesting and informative.
4. News can provide topics in our daily lives, and people will have common topics to talk about/ chat.
5. Some news are very positive and cheerful, and create positive atmosphere in the society.

**新闻的坏处：**

1. Some news is not true but very misleading and biased.
2. Some news exerts negative influence over the public, which leads to horrible consequences, such as protesting and riots.
3. Some news is very boring/ ridiculous and wastes a lot of my time to read.

### ★ 新闻的种类

**What sort of news are you most interested in?**

**What types of news do you like?**

**What news topics are you most interested in watching/ reading about?**





What types of news stories are you most interested in?

举例型问题

**例句** I am very interested in both domestic news and international news, such as news about \_\_\_\_\_. I think it helps me to take my mind off things.

food

art

movies

Sports

celebrities

social policy

entertainment

social trends

politics

education

economics

international affairs

## 45 Newspaper

“报纸”是雅思口语 Part 1 中的一个老牌话题，与信息传递类的其他话题相似性很高，例如 Internet, Email 等。大家在复习时可以注意几个信息传递类话题的区别与联系。

### ★ 报纸的版面

What types of newspapers (or magazines) do you usually read?



What kinds of news do Chinese people read in newspapers?

举例型问题

**例句** There are a lot of things in the newspaper. Frankly speaking, I don't care the types of newspaper. As long as it has \_\_\_\_\_, I will get everything that I need from it.

entertainment pages 娱乐版

advertisement 广告

economics pages 经济版

exclusive interview 专访

social pages 社会版

local news 本地新闻

sports pages 体育版

international news 国际版

education section 教育版

politics page 政治版

**补充单词：**

**国内热门报纸**

Southern Weekly 《南方周末》

Reference News 《参考消息》



China Youth News 《中国青年报》

China Securities Journal 《中国证券报》

Xinmin Evening News 《新民晚报》

Chutian Metropolis Daily 《楚天都市报》

Yangcheng Evening News 《羊城晚报》

China Education Journal 《中国教育报》

China Daily 《中国日报》

People's Daily 《人民日报》

Economic Daily 《经济日报》

Guangming Daily 《光明日报》

Popular Computer Week 《电脑报》

Western China Metropolis Daily 《华西都市报》

#### 国外热门报纸

The Wall Street Journal 《华尔街日报》(美国)

USA Today 《今日美国》(美国)

The New York Times 《纽约时报》(美国)

The Sun 《太阳报》(英国)

The Times 《泰晤士报》(英国)

The Guardian 《卫报》(英国)

The Mirror 《镜报》(英国)

Financial Times 《金融时报》(英国)

Asahi Shinbun 《朝日新闻》(日本)

Yomiuri Shinbun 《读卖新闻》(日本)

Bild 《图片报》(德国)

Le Monde 《世界报》(法国)

Neue Zürcher Zeitung 《新苏黎世报》(瑞士)

The Australian 《澳洲人报》(澳大利亚)

Toronto Star 《多伦多星报》(加拿大)

**Do you like reading newspapers?**

**Is the news important to you?**

**Do you often read newspapers?**

**Do you care about the news?**



**Why do you think people read newspapers?**

**Do you think it's important to read newspapers? (Why?/ Why not?)**

**Are newspapers an important part of your everyday life? (Why?/ Why not?)**

**Do you prefer to read about domestic (or local) news or international news? (Why?)**



论证型问题

**新闻报纸的优点：**

1. Newspapers are more reliable than news from Internet. A lot of people get fooled by information on the Internet.
2. Basically, we all like reading newspaper; the only difference is that we read different pages.
3. It is made of paper, and it has less radiation than computers and TV.
4. Reading newspapers is a good way to collect information.
5. It can help me learn about the current affairs.
6. Local newspaper actually pays more attention to the local news rather than the international news. I think people should care more about the people around them rather than people half way across the world.
7. I like the idea of reading newspaper while drinking coffee in a cafe. It is very stylish and elegant.

**新闻报纸的缺点：**

1. It's not efficient enough. I can't get the latest news as quickly as I can on the Internet. People will replace it with news from cellphone/ computer.
2. It's not environmental friendly; it causes huge damage to the forests.
3. It will take too much of my time to read it all.
4. It does not reflect people's needs. Maybe I just want entertainment news, but I have to buy the rest of the news that I am not interested in as well.
5. Some of the comments on the news are not objective and misleading, so it will influence the idea of the public.



**练习题**

What can people get from reading newspapers?

What different types of newspaper are there in China?

Which do you prefer reading, magazines or newspapers?



What influence do you think newspapers have on society?

What are some methods that newspapers use to attract readers?

## 46 Noise

“噪音”这个话题难度较高，是很多人不能顺利完成的考点，其中许多问题都涉及了平时不常用的名词，所以“烤鸭”很容易语无伦次。另外，其中不少问题中含有“sounds”这个词，很多考生却把这个词与“songs”混淆从而跑题。希望大家引以为戒。

### ★ 各种类型的声音

What kind of natural sound do you like?



What natural sound(s) do you like (the most)? (Why?)

举例型问题

**例句** Among the millions of natural sounds in the world, I am keen on \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. I like them for no obvious reasons.

bird singing 鸟鸣

worm chirps 虫鸣

water flowing/ running 水流

frog croak 蛙鸣

waterfall 瀑布

horse running 马奔跑的声音

rain drops falling 雨滴

thunder 雷声

wind blowing 风吹

currents and waves of the river/ ocean 河流

dog barking 狗叫

/ 海浪

优美的声音：



Are there any sounds that you like?

举例型问题

**例句** I love a lot of nice sounds, you know, like \_\_\_\_\_.

- musical instrument, such as piano/ violin/ cello
- typing on a computer: it makes me feel the environment is so quiet
- class bell after the class.
- sound of the playground, you know, the laughter and the basketball bouncing
- laughter in the amusement park

### ★ 人工的噪音

What type of noise do you come across in your daily life?



## What sounds do you dislike? (Why?)



Are there any sounds you dislike?

论证型问题

**例句 1** I hate the sound of the \_\_\_\_\_, such as \_\_\_\_\_.

- traffic jam on the road 交通堵塞 : car buzzing/ brakes 汽车汽笛声 / 刹车
- construction site/ decoration in the neighborhood 建筑工地 / 邻居装修 : hammer and electric drills 大锤和电锯
- earphone 耳机 : electronic currents buzzing 电流声

**例句 2** I hate the sound in the \_\_\_\_\_, such as \_\_\_\_\_.**kitchen 厨房** : the spatula scratch the frying pan 锅铲刮平底锅**classroom 教室** : nails scratch the blackboard/ twisting the coke can 指甲刮黑板 / 旋转可乐罐的声音**public places 公共场所** : cinemas, you know, the phone calling/ people fighting/ shouting 电影院里的电话铃声 / 人们争吵、叫、喊的声音**restaurant 饭店** : people talking loudly/ lip-smacking 大声说话 / 吧唧嘴**shopping mall 购物中心** : the noisy crowd 喧闹的人群

Do you prefer a quiet environment or an environment with some sounds?

Do you prefer a quiet environment or a noisy environment?

Do you prefer to study in a quiet environment or a noisy environment?

Are cities becoming noisier?

Do you mind noises? (Do any noises bother you?)



Would you like to work in a noisy place? (Why?/ Why not?)

论证型问题

声音的优点 :

1. Some sounds are peaceful and relaxing, they can make people calm down, such as + 优美的声音 .
2. Some sounds remind me of my childhood and they belong to some happy memories.
3. Some sounds make me feel closer to the nature, such as the bird singing and the currents and waves of oceans.
4. Some sounds make people feel excited and stimulated, like the thunder or very loud music.



声音的缺点：

1. Some sounds are so loud that they make me feel annoying and anxious.
2. Some sounds will harm my ears, and my hearing will be damaged. I will have to wear audiphones/ dentiphones/ hearing-aid.
3. Some sounds will disturb me from the task that I am doing at the moment.

## 47 Park & Garden

每个城市都有各自的公园和花园，大家只需要用自己熟悉的公园花园举例即可。

### 注意

在中国，北方的园林很少称之为 garden，而南方的园林则一般都会叫做 garden。有一些园林是私人的，用 private 修饰，有一些则是皇家的，用 royal 修饰，但是不论翻译中的单词是哪一个，不影响它们在建筑学中作为园林的本质。大体的翻译规则：Park 一般是 public，即建造目的是对外公开的。Garden 一般是 private，即建造目的是私密的、不对外的。例如：

玉渊潭公园：Yuyuantan Park

香山公园：Xiangshan Garden/ Fragrance Hill Garden



Are there many parks or public gardens where you live (or, in your hometown)?

举例型问题

**例句** Sure, we have some famous parks/ gardens, such as\_\_\_\_\_.

常见公园种类：

普通公园 public park (Chaoyang Park)

水上公园 waterpark (Beijing Watercube Waterpark)

湿地公园 wetland park (The National Xixi Wetland Park)

海洋公园 ocean park (Hong Kong Ocean Park)

主题公园 theme park (Disneyland/ Universal studio)

国家公园 national park (Yellowstone National Park/ Amboseli National Park)

森林公园 forest park (Beijing Olympic Forest Park/ Jingyue Lake Forest Park)

街心公园 central park (Central Park of New York)

游乐园 amusement park (Happy Valley)



**中国四大园林：**

留园：Lingering Garden (private)

拙政园：Humble Administrator's Garden (private)

颐和园：Summer Palace (royal)

承德避暑山庄：Chengde Mountain Resort (royal)

**常用的花园：**

植物园：botanical garden

**Do you often (or, ever) go to a park or a (public) garden?****Do you think parks and public gardens are important to a city? (Why?/ Why not?)****Do you think every city and town should have parks and public gardens? (Why?/ Why not?)****What do you think are the functions of parks and public gardens?**

论证型问题

**公园 / 花园的好处：**

1. Even in the ancient times, people needed to get close to the nature. We have that desire in our blood.
2. People can hold a lot of wonderful events in the parks/ public gardens, you know, such as music festivals.
3. They provide more space for the public to relax during the holidays and weekends.
4. They improve the environment of the city, bring the nature and people together.
5. They are an important part of the urban landscape and planning.
6. It provides a place with multifunction, people can go skating there/ drink coffee or read books, so they can have chances to meet people and communicate.
7. It is a great place for people to do some sports, such as tai-chi or jogging.
8. People can have a picnic with their friends when it is sunny, and parks will be a great place to hang out.
9. It is a romantic place to go when I have a date with my boyfriend/ girlfriend. We can enjoy the sunlight and the views.
10. The art and taste that are shown in parks and gardens represents the culture and history of our country.

**公园 / 花园的坏处：**

1. They are a waste of government's funding. There are a lot of people who could not



- afford the food or go to school, so the money should go there first.
2. Some parks/ gardens become dangerous places at night. There are a lot of drug dealers and robbers.
  3. They are filled with homeless people/ beggars and it could be dangerous to go there late at night.
  4. I think going to the park/ garden is a waste of time. I am very busy.
  5. It is very crowded during the Sunday or the holidays. I don't like to go there.

★ 在公园和花园可以做的事情

**What do you (like to) do when you go to a park or public garden?**



**What do other people do in these places?**

举例型问题

**例句** Just like others, if I plan to hang out with my friends in a park or a garden, I probably will be \_\_\_\_\_.

**I can do a lot of things in the parks/ public gardens, such as \_\_\_\_\_.**

- doing some sports
- rowing a boat
- having a picnic
- enjoying the views
- painting
- street dancing
- having some music festivals

## 48 Party

这个话题同样在 Part 1 及 Part 2 均有考查的主题，主要集中在小型庆祝活动这个要点上。而这个话题本身与“Birthday”这个话题有许多重合的地方，安排在一起准备可以达到事半功倍的效果。

**What kind of parties do you have?**



**What sort of parties is popular in your country?**

举例型问题

**例句** We have all kinds of different parties, such as \_\_\_\_\_. I think party is a great way for people to gather around and have some fun.



birthday party 生日派对

welcoming party 迎新派对

farewell party 欢送派对

housewarming party 暖房派对 (搬新家之后)

bachelor party 单身派对 (婚礼前)

graduation party 毕业派对

room party 房间轰趴

pajama party 睡衣派对 (主要是小女孩)

**Do you like (to go to/ going to) parties? (Why?/ Why not?)**

**Do you often go to parties?**

**Do most Chinese people like parties? (Why?/ Why not?)**

**Is there anything you dislike about parties?**

**Why do some people dislike parties?**

**What do you think are the benefits of parties?**



论证型问题

**派对的好处：**

1. It provides a chance for family/ friends to get together and have some fun.
2. Party is a great way to relax and release the pressure.
3. People can meet a lot of friends during a party, and they are cool guys.
4. It is a great way to celebrate some important news/ things, such as the birthday or the graduation.
5. It can help me to kill some time. It will soon be midnight even before I know it.

**派对的坏处：**

1. It is such a noisy occasion, but I prefer a quiet environment, so parties don't suit my personality.
2. People get drunk easily at a party, and it is not safe for girls. They may be taken advantages of by bad guys.
3. Parties always last for a long time, you know, late into the night. People sleep very late when they attend a party, and it is not good for their health.
4. It consumes too much energy. People will feel extremely tired after the party.
5. My family and friends are in other cities now, so it is very hard to hold a party, and it just reminds me of my loneliness.
6. It takes people a lot of time to prepare for the party and to clean the mess after it. It's so troublesome.



★ 举办派对的地点

Do you usually have these parties at home or at school?

Do friends often come to your home for a gathering (a “get together” )?

Where do people like to hold parties in China?



举例型问题

**例句** There are a lot of places to hold parties, such as\_\_\_\_\_.

- my home
- my friends' home
- the school
- the bar
- the club
- the KTV
- the restaurant

★ 在派对中做的事情

When you go to a party, what do you usually do?

In China, do old( er) people and young people do the same sorts of things when they get together on social occasions?



举例型问题

What do you do when you get together with your friends?

When friends gather together (to celebrate something) do they do the same things that family groups do?



举例型问题

**例句** People can do a lot of things at the party, for instance, they can\_\_\_\_\_.

- drink the beer/ wine
- play the dice
- dance on the dance floor
- make new friends
- sing along with the songs
- eat snacks
- play some games



**练习题**

Who do you think enjoys parties more, old( er) people or young people?

Do you prefer family parties or parties with friends?

“喜欢和谁一起参加派对”，与本书话题“Family & Friends & Relative & Parents”合并即可。

**49 Patience**

这是一个比较抽象的话题，考生往往会简单论述“patience”是重要的，因为这是一个美德。但是这不足以回答 Part 1 的问题，因为考官必然会问这为什么是一种美德，考生的回答极易容易陷入“假大空”的尴尬局面。因此，针对这个话题，考生需要给出更多具体和鲜活的解释。另外，大家往往容易想到“patience”积极的一面，却不能相应地想到它消极的影响，一旦考官发问也极易容易卡壳。

**Do people think patience is important?**



**Do you think you are a patient person?**

论证型问题

**耐心的好处：**

1. Patience is a virtue, and everyone should have it, because it can help people get along with each other better.
2. Patience helps me make friends more easily, because people love to have friends who are patient.
3. The lives of patient persons will be happier, 'cause they have less anger or rage.
4. Patient people will have more possibilities to become successful, as they will be patient enough to wait for the right time and opportunity.
5. Patient people usually are healthier, as they have a peaceful and stable mind.

**耐心的坏处：**

1. Some people have a bad temper, and being patient is a mission impossible for them.
2. It's not healthy to be patient all the time, because it is very hard to release the mental pressure.
3. Sometimes, patient people will be the victim of patience, because others will consider them as pushovers.
4. There are a lot of urgent situations, in which people need to react fast and



immediately. Patience is not a good quality here, but kind of hesitating.

5. If you are too patient with others, people around you may become spoiled. They will keep on testing your bottom line.

★ 需要耐心的场合

On what kind of occasions will people be patient?



When will people be patient?

举例型问题

**例句** There are a lot of places/ occasions that require people to be patient, such as,

\_\_\_\_\_.

- waiting for bus
- waiting for elevator
- waiting for food in the restaurant
- waiting for friends
- waiting in a line/ queue teaching students
- waiting for my girlfriend when she is shopping (男生专用)

★ 如何让自己耐心

What kind of things can help people to be patient?



What do you think that can help you to be patient?

举例型问题

**例句** I think there are several things that can help/ allow me to be patient, such as

\_\_\_\_\_. I think there are several things that can make me patient, such as

\_\_\_\_\_.

- taking a deep breath
- listening to music
- watching some video clips
- reading a book chatting with my friends taking a bath/ shower eating ice cream/ chocolate

## 50 Photography

“照相”是雅思口语中的一道老题，里面的问题覆盖的维度很多，发问方式也比较多样，是雅思



口语 Part 1 当中比较少见的灵活型题目，很多考生觉得抓不到重点和要点，因此我将这些问题都分出了类型并给出常见思路答案。

补充单词：一定要注意发音！

photograph 照片 photogenic 上镜的 photographic 照片般的，逼真的	photographer 摄像师 photography 摄影的
--	-------------------------------------



**Do you have a camera?**

举例型问题

**例句** Well, I have a \_\_\_\_\_. It is a \_\_\_\_\_. It is actually very handy when I need to take some pictures.

SLR/ EOS——(Digital) Single Lens Reflex 单反相机

DC——digital camera 数码相机

**相机的牌子：**

Leica 莱卡

Canon 佳能

Sony 索尼

Nikon 尼康

Casio 卡西欧

Panasonic 松下

Samsung 三星

Fuji 富士

Olympus 奥林巴斯

**补充单词：**

photographic paraphernalia 照相器材

camera 照相机

lens 镜头

aperture 光圈

wide-angle lens 广角镜头

telephoto lens 远摄镜头，长焦镜头

zoom lens 变焦头，可变焦距的镜头

shutter 快门

tripod 三脚架

flash/ flashlight 闪光灯

cartridge 一卷胶卷

film 胶片，胶卷

plate 感光片

spotlight 聚光灯

### ★ 照片种类

**What kind of things do you like to take photos of?**



**What would you like to take photos of?**

举例型问题



**例句** I really like to take photos of \_\_\_\_\_, because I can always find a unique angle for them and show their beauty.

- people 人物
- views/ sceneries 风景
- animals 动物
- plants, such as flowers 植物, 比如花
- humorous things 搞笑事件
- important events 重要场合
- food 食物
- buildings 建筑物
- a bunch of people ( group photos) 集体照
- cartoon characters in the cinemas and super market 卡通人物

★ 照相的场合

**When do people take photos in your country?**



**What kind of occasions/ situations would people take photos in your country?**

举例型问题

**例句** Personally, I take photos when there is a special occasion, such as \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_, cause this kind of occasions are important in my mind and I want to remember them well.

- a party 派对
- a big meal 大餐
- a wedding 婚礼
- a lecture 讲座
- a tour 旅游
- an exhibition 展览

★ 照片排序



**How do you organize your photos?**

举例 + 论证型问题

**例句** I organize my photos by \_\_\_\_\_, as \_\_\_\_\_.



date 时间	It is kind of like my diary, you know. I used to think that I would never write dairies, but now I think taking photos is my way to document my daily life.
place/ location 地点	I usually take pictures when I am on a tour, so it is easier for me to organize my photos by locations.
event 事件	I think it is very neat and logical. Basically, everything related with that event will be in the portfolio.
object 对象	It is easier for me to find the pictures that I am looking for, such as people or tour. You know, I remember things that way.
importance 重要性	I always need to review some important images. It is convenient and easy for me to find them in that specific file of my laptop.

### ★ 如何保存

**How do you save your photos?**



**Where would you like to save your photos?**

举例型问题

1. I will print them out and keep them in my photo albums, and I will put them in different places.
2. I will save them in my computer/ flash disk/ hard-drive/ cellphone, for it is easier for me to carry them around.
3. I will upload them on the social media/ social networking services, such as Renren/ Weibo (microblog) or Wechat. They are just like Facebook/ Twitter or Line in China.
4. I usually save them in the iCloud ( 苹果系列 )/ Skydrive (Windows 系列 ). It is free and I can download them anywhere as long as the Internet is available.

**Why do people like to take pictures?**

**Do you like to take pictures?**



**Do you think it is very necessary to take pictures?**

论证型问题

**照相的好处：**

1. It can help me preserve the beautiful memories, for instance, when I am travelling or at the graduation ceremony.



2. It is a great way to show my friends the people who I have met and the places where I have been to. It's vivid.
3. It is an art that everybody could have a try. It doesn't require a lot of specific skills. Of course if you really want to be an outstanding photographer, it will take years of practice, but at least you could have a taste of it.
4. I really appreciate the beauty of the natural views/ people, and photos are a great way to keep them close.
5. Some old photos can really help me look back the life that I have been through and it is a great way to renew the memories of it.
6. I like to look at the pictures of the animals, because they are lovely and adorable.
7. A great photo, on one hand, can display the best part of one person or object, making people fall in love with it. On the other hand, it may be a beautiful mistake.
8. I think it is very convenient to take photos now. For important occasions, I will take photos with my camera. For the casual things, I will take photos with my cellphone.
9. I have a different way to write diaries. While, most people write diaries in the notebook, I use photos as a way to keep record of my life, just like my diaries.

**照相的坏处：**

1. It interrupts local people's life there. Like in Tibet, many tourists will take photos of the local people, even when they are unwilling to be photoed, so it's not polite.
2. It costs too much money, because if you really want to take amazing photos, you will have to spend a lot of money on those advanced equipment, such as SLR (Single Lens Reflex).
3. I am not good at striking poses in front of the camera, so I usually looked stupid in photos.
4. I am not a photogenic person, and that's why I look really weird in photos.
5. I don't have the talent to take photos, and I can't find the right spot or the right angle.
6. People who used to be skinny don't like taking photos anymore when they get fat.
7. If I take too many photos, it will be very hard for me to organize and keep them well.
8. I don't like the flash light, it makes me feel dazzled and my eyes hurt so badly.

**★两选一问题**

**Which one do you like better to send to others, photos that you took yourself or**



**postcards with pictures on them?**

举例 + 论证型问题

**有照片的明信片：****例句** I like postcards with some photos on them, as\_\_\_\_\_.

1. It is more professional than my photos, especially when they are taken by some great photographers.
2. It is more convenient for people to send to their friends.
3. It is more formal and represents my respect for the one who receive it.

**自己拍的照片：****例句** I prefer the photos that I took myself, as\_\_\_\_\_.

1. It can show my own ideas about the places, and my friends will love it.
2. My photos are unique and they are the only one in the world.
3. Using my photos is a more intimate way to communicate with my friends and family rather than cards that anyone can buy.
4. Photos that I took are more sincere and personal, and my friends will understand my feelings.
5. I really enjoy the process of taking photos all by myself rather than merely looking at the photos that have been taken by others.

**51 Plan & Goal**

有关“计划和目标”在很多话题中都零星涉及，但是在 Part 1 这个话题还是有相应的单独话题考查。而 Part 2 还有话题卡考查“未来的打算”。所以请大家重视本话题的准备。

**Please summarize your plans for the near future.**

举例型问题

**例句** My plan is\_\_\_\_\_.

1. to go abroad for my Bachelor's/ Master's/ PhD degree
2. to find a great job in the Fortune Top 500 companies
3. to have a gap year after I graduate

**练习题**

When do you plan to start that?





### Do you plan to spend many years overseas?

举例型问题

计划在海外长时间逗留：

1. I have lived in China for many years. I wish I could spend more time experiencing different lifestyles and culture.
2. I plan to have my Master's degree and PhD overseas. I am afraid that it will take me a long time to finish that.

计划在海外短时间逗留：

1. I will miss my families a lot, so I hope I could come back soon and spend more time with them.
2. I will find a better job in China rather than abroad.
3. I have a boyfriend/ girlfriend in China. I really don't want to have long-distance relationship for a long time, 1 year tops.



### 练习题

大家请根据自己实际情况回答即可，可以与本书必考话题2“Hometown”的相关问题合并。  
When you go abroad, do you plan to live in the countryside or a big city? (Why?)

## 52 Politeness/Helping others

和“Patience”及“Concentration”一样，是品质类的题目，比较抽象，需要具体的理由和例子。

Do you think you are a polite person?



Do you think people should be polite? (Why?)

举例型问题

有礼貌的原因：

1. It is very important for people to create a nice and warm environment for their family and friends. Being polite/Helping others is a great way to do that.
2. Politeness/Helping others is a very important part of our culture. According to Confucius, we must obtain several virtues, such as being polite and patient.
3. People like to make friends with polite people, because they can get along with each



other easily.

4. Politeness/Helping others in the society reflects the moral standard of the civilization.
5. People who are polite will have more chance in finding a good job or even a great boyfriend/ girlfriend.

**没有礼貌的原因：**

1. Some people were raised up in a very rude family and their parents were bad role models/ examples, so their children are rude.
2. In our society now, there are so many people who are rude. Some people believe that if they are polite, others will take an advantage of them.
3. People who have behavior problems, such as being rude, can always trace back to their family background.
4. Some people speak whatever on their minds and consider this as their true nature and being straight forward, but I think this is lack of self-restraint and politeness.

#### ★ 谁教会你有礼貌



**Who taught you to be polite/Help others?**

举例型问题

**例句** There are so many people who can teach me to be polite, such as \_\_\_\_\_.

- parents
- friends
- teachers at school
- tour guide in the other country

#### ★ 人们如何展现礼貌



**How do people in your culture show (politeness or) good manners (towards others)?**

举例型问题

**例句** People show their politeness in many different ways, such as \_\_\_\_\_.

- respecting the elders
- treating children nicely
- helping others



- following the local costume when they are in foreign countries

**(In your country,) Have there been any changes in politeness in the past few decades?**



举例型问题

1. I think the ways we show our politeness are different from before. As the international communication is increasing, we show our politeness in a more modern way rather than the traditional way.
2. There has been little change in our society now, as we always believe in the traditional manner in China, such as respecting the older and treating children nicely.

### 53 Private transportation

与“公共交通”对应,我们也有很多私人的“交通工具”。这个话题不是常考话题,问题也比较简单,“烤鸭”们可以很快复习完毕。



**What kind of private transport do you usually use?**

举例型问题

**例句** Well, the most common vehicle for me to use is \_\_\_\_\_, cause I don't have to rush and I don't have to pay attention to the stations either.

- car
- bike/ bicycle
- taxi

**Do you often use private transportation?**



**Why do you think so many people buy private vehicles?**

论证型问题

**私人交通工具的优点：**

1. It is very comfortable and convenient. I don't have to hurry up to the bus station or the subway and push myself into the crowd.
2. It can go wherever I want, so it satisfies my personal needs better.
3. If there is no traffic congestion, it goes faster than public transportations.



私人交通工具的缺点：

1. It's far more expensive than public transportations.
2. It pollutes the environment more and it creates more traffic congestion.
3. It is the main reason for a lot of traffic problems. If we use public transportation more, we will not have this kind of problems.

## 54 Punctuality & Being Late

“准时与迟到”是一个新的延伸话题，主要考查学生是否有过迟到的相关经历，考生在回答时要举出相应的例子，并回答如何才能不迟到等问题。

### ★ 迟到的经历

Have you ever been late before?



Have you ever been late for anything?

举例型问题

**例句** Well, I have to say yes, I used to be/ was late for \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, but being late is not a good habit. We should try to avoid it.

- work 上班迟到
- a class 上课迟到
- a meeting 开会迟到
- an interview 面试迟到
- a train 赶火车晚了
- a plane 赶飞机晚了
- a date 约会迟到
- a gathering 家庭聚会迟到
- a party 派对迟到

### ★ 迟到的原因

What kind of excuse will you use when you are late?



What kind of excuse is the most common excuse of yours?

举例型问题



**例句** There are a lot of reasons for being late, such as \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_. Most of the time, it is very unpredictable.

- getting up late 起床晚了
- traffic jam 交通堵塞
- getting sick 病了
- a bleeding nose 流鼻血
- bad weather 坏天气
- broken car 汽车坏了
- car accident 车祸
- broken clock 闹钟坏了
- broken water pipe at home 家里水管破了
- being locked in my home by my husband/ parents/ friends 被反锁家中

★ 如何才能不迟到

How can people try not to be late?



What kind of things can people do to be punctual?

举例型问题

I think people can make their timetable/ schedule more efficient and reasonable, besides, they can always set up an alarm clock for their arrangements.

★ 对时间安排不满意的点

Can you think of any improvements to your daily routine?



If you could make one change to your daily routine, what would it be?

举例型问题

**例句** I think I can make it a little bit more \_\_\_\_\_.

- flexible, because there is always something unexpected in my way
- reasonable, as it is either too full or too empty. It's really not a good plan
- relaxing, cause it is so full every day. I don't even have Sundays for a rest
- efficient, cause I have too much free time. I should use it wisely



## 55 Rain

这个话题的内容比较简单，主要是从“weather”中延伸出来的分支话题。测试时间不太长，所以内容也不太多。因此，复习起来比较简单，也比“weather”更容易准备。



## Do you like rainy days?

论证型问题

## 下雨天的好处：

1. Rainfall can help the crops to grow better the next year, and the farmers will have a harvest.
2. Raining makes the air humid and fresh, which is very good for people's health.
3. I always feel quite/ peaceful and sleepy on rainy days. It helps me fall asleep very quickly and I always have a sweet dream on rainy days.
4. Raining can purify the air and the environment when it is very dirty.

## 下雨天的坏处：

1. I don't like rainy days. It is very dirty, you know, the mud and water. I don't want to get wet.
2. If it rains too much, the plants and crops won't grow well the next year.
3. During the plum rain season, people's clothes are always wet and it is very uncomfortable wearing them.
4. I don't like rainy days and mud, so I cannot go anywhere and I have to stay at home.
5. Sometimes, heavy rain could lead to natural disasters, such as debris flow.

## ★ 在雨天可以做的事情



## What do you do on rainy days?

举例型问题

**例句** I would love to \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ when it is rainy. I just feel happy when I do those things.

- listen to music
- sleep
- watch some movies
- play computer games



- read books
- go to the café
- run into the rain like a crazy person (蛇精病使用 / 射手座、狮子座专用)

★ 雨水的作用



What is the importance of the rainfall?

论证型问题

1. Rainfall provides water for the plants and crops to grow healthily during the next year.
2. It can make the air clean, you know, and the dust in the air will disappear after the rain.
3. It can make the air more humid and people feel more comfortable.
4. It can bring down the temperature, and people would love showers in the summer day.

56 School

该话题的论证性题目与必考话题“Study or working”中的“Study”部分是重合的，喜欢学校的理由可以通用，在这里不再赘述，但是“School”这个话题有一些举例型的题目需要注意，列举如下。

★ 学校的名字

What was the first school that you have attended?



Which school is your favorite school so far?

举例型问题

**例句** I think it must be \_\_\_\_\_, because + 必考话题 1 中“学校的理由”。

小学：primary school/ elementary school/ grade school

中学：secondary school 初中：junior high school/ middle school

高中：(senior) high school

大专：junior college

大学：college/ university

★ 学校分类

What kind of schools have you been to?



What kind of school is popular in China now?



If you had a chance, what kind of school would you like to go?

论证型问题

**例句** Well, I guess it is \_\_\_\_\_, cause + 必考话题 1 中“选择学校的原因”.

experimental school 实验学校

public school 公立学校

private school 私立学校

international school 国际学校

boarding school 寄宿学校

all-boys school/ all-girls school (lady's college) 男校 / 女校

foreign language school 外国语学校

bilingual school 双语学校

exclusive school 贵族学校

special school 特殊学校 (如聋哑学校)

... school affiliated/ attached to... university ……大学附属……学校

catholic school 天主教学校

还有很重要的一点，那就是考生一定要能够翻译自己小学或者中学的名字。请大家参考以下例子：

小牡丹艺术实验小学：Little Peony Art and Experimental Primary School

北京市中关村第三小学：Zhongguancun No. 3 Primary School

济南铁路第一小学：Jinan Railway No. 1 Primary School

新建路西街小学：The Xinxi Primary School

中国人民大学附属中学：The High School Affiliated to Renmin University of China

北京大学附属中学：The Affiliated High School of Peking University

北京师范大学附属中学：The High School Affiliated to Beijing Normal University

北京师范大学第二附属中学：The Second High School Attached to Beijing Normal University

北京市第四中学：Beijing No. 4 High School

朝阳外国语学校：Chaoyang Foreign Language School

多伦多国际学院：Toronto International College





## 57 Shoes

这是雅思口语一个很新的题目，所以它的相关问题比较少，问题通常是希望考生能够说出一些鞋子的名字及鞋子的优缺点。总体来说还是比较好准备的题目。

### ★ 鞋子的种类



What kind of shoes is your favourite?

举例型问题

例句

Well, I would love to wear different shoes to different occasions, so there are many shoes that I like to wear, such as \_\_\_\_\_.

fashion boots 时尚靴

sandals 凉鞋

high-heeled shoes 高跟鞋

tennis shoes 网球鞋

racing shoes 跑鞋

hiking boots 健行靴

slippers 拖鞋

flats 平底鞋

leather shoes 皮鞋

pumps 无带皮鞋

roller skates 旱冰鞋

boots 靴子

basketball/ soccer shoes 篮球鞋

oxfords 系带便鞋

sneakers 旅游鞋

loafers 平底便鞋

casual shoes 休闲鞋

### ★ 两选一问题



Which do you like better, fashionable shoes or comfortable ones? Why?

论证型问题

选择时尚的鞋子：

I like fashionable shoes better, as they are stylish and cool. Besides, they are attractive and trendy. Honestly, I really want to be seen at my best.

选择舒适的鞋子：

I prefer comfortable shoes, because they are suitable for travel and they are good for sports. Also, I care about how I feel more than how other people think of me.



## 58 Shopping

“购物”是一个老牌题目，从雅思考试开始就一直出现在大家的视野里，虽然每隔几个月就会消失一次，但是总会再次回到大家的视野，而它的核心要点与“Clothes”，“Fashion”，“Bags”等话题又很多相关性。

### ★ 购物时考虑的因素

**What kind of factors will you consider when you are buying clothes?**



**What kind of things is important when people are buying things?**

举例 + 论证型问题

**例句** I always pay attention to the \_\_\_\_\_, as \_\_\_\_\_.

**colour:** The right colour can match my skin and make me look better.

**brand:** One brand will represent its own culture and show my social status.

**price:** The reasonable price is always a very important factor for people to make the call about if they want to buy it or not.

**fitness:** It should match with my characters. Something may appear to be nice but it never suits me. There is nothing best but something more suitable.

**designer:** His or her idea is unique and daring. One designer must have a taste beyond compare so that he can stand out.

**design:** I like certain patterns and logo, so the design of the clothes is really important.

**style:** Style is the most obvious way for people to tell if the product is of good taste or not/ it can show your personality.

**quality:** I am a very practical person and I want to purchase goods that can be durable for a long time.

**critique/ comments from others:** They have already bought it, so they can give me some very practical suggestions, which will help me choose more wisely.

**Do you like (going) shopping? (Why?/ Why not?)**



**Do you like to go shopping? (Why?/ Why not?)**

论证型问题

购物的好处：

1. Shopping can help me release the pressure, you know. When you see a lot of beautiful things in the store, all your worries will go away.



2. Sometimes I just do some window shopping. I don't really buy anything. I only love to watch and appreciate the beautifully designed clothes and bags.
3. It can help me kill some time if I really don't have anything to do. Time passes really fast when I am in the shopping mall.
4. I don't know why, but I just simply feel happy when I go shopping, you know. There are a lot of beautiful things and some of them will be mine.
5. Unlike others struggling with choosing from similar products, I will flip the coin and make the decision. It cuts my problems of choosing. Besides, you know, girls love it; they think it is cool.
6. I love the feeling of spending money. I feel so relaxed after spending 1000 RMB for a key chain or a glass plate.
7. Some people believe that shopping can help them relax, and they just enjoy the feeling of spending the money.

**购物的坏处：**

1. It will cost me a lot of money if I go shopping frequently.
2. I sometimes buy stuff that I don't need. It is impulse buying, and I am a little bit shopaholic.
3. I feel really upset after I finished shopping with an empty wallet.
4. It is really a waste of my time if I do a lot of window shopping.
5. I don't want to waste my time shopping. I have better things to do with my time.
6. It is really hard to decide which one to buy when I have two or three options.
7. Sometimes the shop assistants are really annoying. They are either too passionate or too cold. I don't like them, you know, too hard to handle.
8. The fitting rooms are always full of people and I have to wait for a long time.
9. I hate shopping so much when it comes to identical goods, because I have to choose one from them. I feel so puzzled.
10. I really don't like the atmosphere in the shopping malls. The air conditioner is constantly functioning and it is so cold in the summer and so hot in the winter. Couldn't they just make some adjustment/ improvement?
11. I don't like to be in the crowd, and the shopping malls are always crowded, so I don't like shopping.
12. I have to carry the shopping bags for my girlfriend, you know. She really loves to buy things, but it is so boring/ exhausting/ tiring for me. (男生专用)



**Do you like shopping for clothes or other goods on the Internet?**

**What do you think are the advantages of buying things on the Internet?**

**Do you think there are any disadvantages (or dangers) from buying on the Internet?**



论证型问题

**网上购物的优点：**

1. It is very convenient. I don't have to go to the shop, just order the goods on the Internet, and they will be sent to me.
2. Most of the information is reliable. For instance, you can see the comments of the others after they bought this. So you could tell if this thing is good or not.
3. There are insurance systems on the shopping websites, and they will protect the costumers' interests.
4. The goods are cheaper than those sold at the stores, and the quality of the products is really good.
5. Unlike others, I am very confident with my body shape, so I can wear almost all the clothes that I bought from the Internet.
6. It costs me less time to shop online than in the real shops.
7. I can order goods from abroad. It is convenient for me.
8. There are so many goods on the Internet. people can search things that are rare and order them online.
9. It not only provides convenience to the individual, but boosts the economy and GDP as well.

**网上购物的缺点：**

1. Most of the products on the Internet are of low quality. People can't give credit to them.
2. The pictures on the Internet are quiet misleading. When I get the goods, they look nothing like the pictures.
3. I may get the wrong size of the products and it is really inconvenient to change them.
4. I can't try them on, which means I wouldn't know how they look like on me and whether they could fit me well.
5. There are a lot of copycat on the Internet. I can't tell the differences between them



and I don't want to buy anything fake.

6. Some of the shop owners are really slow at the delivery. They may have promised to send the goods in a week, but in fact, it takes more than 15 days.
7. I have the choice phobia disorder/ allodoxophobia. Personally, it is impossible for me to choose from that many goods online.

## 59 Singing

“歌唱”这个话题与“Music”相似的地方很多，优缺点的思路基本一致，在这里不赘述。

**Do you like singing?**

**Do you like to sing?**

**Did you like to sing when you were a child?**

**Have you ever learnt singing?**



**How often do you sing?**

论证型问题

好处和坏处同话题“Music”相似。



**Have you ever sung in front of other people?**

举例型问题

Yes, I have. I sang at the party in front of my classmates and teachers at the end of the semester. It was really nice, because I chose the right song to perform.



**练习题**

Do you prefer to sing at home or at a place such as a karaoke bar (or KTV)?

**Who's your favourite singer?**



**What's your favourite song?**

举例型问题

素材同话题“Music”相似。





Have you ever been to a concert?

举例型问题

素材同话题 “Concert”。

## 60 Sleeping

“睡觉”这个题目是一个新晋的口语考题,考生对这一话题的了解比较片面。举例型的问题(如“哪些时间段是比较合适睡眠的时间段”等)相对来说简单一些,只要考生能掌握时间的正确说法,应该就没有问题了。但是论证型的题目是考生比较头疼的点。例如:“人为什么要睡觉?”“睡觉的好处?”等等。

## ★ 可以睡觉的时间段



When do you think is the best time for sleeping?

举例 + 论证型问题

**例句** I think \_\_\_\_\_ is the best time for sleeping, because \_\_\_\_\_.

**from 10: 00 pm to 7: 00 am:** according to the scientific research, this is the best time for the body to refresh itself, as the metabolism during this period of time is the most vigorous.

**from 1: 30 pm to 2: 30pm:** people will feel tired after working for a whole morning, but a little nap will give them energy.

**rainy day:** you know, it's dark and inconvenient to go out, so it will be amazing for me to just sleep the day off.

**Would you say sleeping too much is a waste of time?**

**Do old people sleep a lot? Why?**

**Is it necessary to take a nap every day?**



How do you think sleeping can be beneficial to children/ adults/ old people?

论证型问题

**睡觉对孩子的好处:**

Sleeping is a must for baby to grow healthily. They need it to gain some rest so that they can grow faster. Besides, sleeping will keep the baby quiet and peaceful.

**睡觉对年轻人的好处:**

Young people are either working or studying. It is really hard for them to get enough rest,



so sleeping is very important; otherwise, they will get sick easily.

**睡觉对老年人的好处：**

Because of the aging of the internal organs, old people must have enough rest for them to restore the energy that they need.

★ 正常的睡眠时间长短

**How long do you think people should sleep every day?**



**How many hours are you asleep every day?**

举例型问题

**例句** I think it depends. For \_\_\_\_\_, it should be \_\_\_\_\_.

**babies:** at least 14 hours a day

**children:** about 10 hours

**teenagers/ young people:** around 7 hours

**old people:** probably less than 7 hours

★ 如何改善睡眠质量

**How do you think people could sleep better?**

**What kind of things do you think people can do to improve the quality of their sleeping?**



举例型问题

1. People should drink less tea or coffee, which contains caffeine that makes people over excited.
2. People shouldn't listen to the stimulating music, such as rock. It scares the sleepiness away.
3. A hot bath/ foot bath before going to bed will be very beneficial for sleeping.
4. People should have a pair of ear plugs, which can prevent the noise from bothering them.
5. The colour of the bedroom wallpaper should stay in a low key and be comforting. It shouldn't be red or black.
6. A comfortable set of beddings can create a peaceful environment for people to fall asleep easily.



7. I find out that drinking a little red wine before going to bed can help me fall asleep easily.
8. People should not eat sleeping pills/ hypnotics. They will harm people's body. Besides they are very addictive.
9. I think a quiet and peaceful environment is a must to improve the quality of sleeping.

## 61 Sports & Outdoor Activities

“运动”是一个比较基础也是比较核心的话题。中国考生大多在英语课堂学习了一些常见的运动词汇，而英语作文中也经常需要分析运动的利弊，所以考生往往觉得自己对于这个话题是比较有话说的。但是正因为此，考生的答案往往比较僵化和幼稚，而四个评分点中“词汇”这个点往往要求“use less common and idiomatic vocabulary”，这使得考生的回答不能使自己脱颖而出，因为大家所使用的词汇和理由都相差无几，没有特点和针对性。因此，针对这个话题，大家还是不能轻敌。

另外考生还会出现一些单词误用的情况。比如：“I like running”的意思是“我喜欢逃避”；“I like jogging”才是“我喜欢慢跑”。

### ★ 各种运动的名称

**What sports do you like? (Why?)**

**What sports or exercise do you like to do? (Why?)**

**Do you like any particular sports? (What sports?)**

**What sports do you usually play?**

**What kind( s) of physical exercise do you do to keep fit?**

**Do you like any sports? (What sport?)**

**What forms of exercise are most popular in China?**

**What kinds of exercise do you think are most suitable for children?**

**What sports are most popular with young people today?**

**What sports do children prefer?**



举例型问题

**例句** I love a lot of different outdoor games, such as \_\_\_\_\_.

There are several sports that are very popular in China, you know, like \_\_\_\_\_.

不激烈运动 mellow sport :

jogging 慢跑

tai chi 太极拳

swimming 游泳

yoga 瑜伽



ping pang/ table tennis 乒乓球

golf 高尔夫球

bowling 保龄

yangko (a popular rural folk dance) 秧歌

### 激烈运动 strenuous sport :

American football 橄榄球

soccer 足球

badminton 羽毛球

basketball 篮球

volleyball 排球

tennis 网球

cycling 骑单车

baseball 棒球

wrestling (WWE) 摔跤

shuttlecock kicking 踢毽子

croquet 门球

billiards/ pool 台球

square dancing 广场舞

taekwondo 跆拳道

Kong Fu 功夫

surfing 冲浪

ice skating 滑冰

snow skiing 滑雪


figure skating 花样滑冰

skiing 滑雪

dancing 跳舞

**Do men and women feel the same about sports?**

**Are boys and girls good at the same sports?**

 **What are the differences when boys and girls play sports?**


举例型问题

回归到上面的不激烈运动、激烈运动所准备的单词进行回答即可。

**例句** Oh, I think they are very different. For men, they like \_\_\_\_\_ + 激烈的运动 . For women, they like \_\_\_\_\_ + 不激烈的运动 .

### ★ 极限运动 (extreme sports/ x-sport)

**Are there any sports that you haven't done, but you would love to try (learn) in the future?**

 **In the future, what sports would you like to play (or, take part in / or learn)?**

论证型问题

**例句** There is one thing that I really want to try in the future, which is \_\_\_\_\_. I never had a chance to do it, but I wish I could.

parkour 跑酷

bungee jumping 蹦极

skydiving/ parachuting 跳伞

mountain climbing (天然) 攀岩



rock climbing (人工) 攀岩

roller skating 轮滑

scuba diving 潜水

drifting 漂流

skateboarding 滑板

**Are you interested in sports?****Do you like sports?****Do you like to do daily exercise? (Why?/ Why not?)****Do children in China play much sports (or do much exercise)?****Are children's sports (or exercise) very important in China?****Do you think it's important to have P.E. classes (or sports classes) at school? (Why?/ Why not?)****Do you think children should be encouraged to do more exercise?****Do Chinese people like to do daily exercise?****Do most people in your country like sports?****What benefits do you think sports can bring us?****Why do you think people like (to participate in) sports?****What are the advantages of doing regular exercise?**

论证型问题

**户外活动的好处：**

1. It benefits my health and helps me look younger, and it also helps me in a better mood.
2. It can help lose weight/ keep fit.
3. I can enjoy some fresh air outside. I love to do some sports outdoors.
4. It will enhance the friendship between me and my friends.
5. I like natural environment, with plants and animals. I can enjoy them when I do outdoor sports
6. Physical exercise will help release the mental pressure.
7. I can make some new friends when I am doing sports, you know. I have a lot of team mates.
8. Sports can make my life busy and colourful. Otherwise, it would be so boring.
9. It could be a lifelong hobby for people to enjoy.
10. It can make my body more flexible and help me do the meditation. (尤其适合瑜伽)



**户外活动的坏处：**

1. One may get hurt during the sports. For example, people's joint may be injured during the exercise.
2. The choices of the spots/ places are limited. If I want to hike a mountain or go to a swimming pool, I have to go a long way.
3. It depends on the weather hugely. If it rains or it is too windy, I won't be able to do it.
4. Sometimes, it is so hot that I don't want to go anywhere, let alone do sports, you know. I don't want to get sunstroke.
5. It really consumes a lot of my time for studying/ working.
6. Some people think it is too risky to do sports, because they have greater chance to get hurt or even killed when they are doing sports.
7. I have to tell you the truth. I am a lazy person; besides I don't like to sweat a lot.
8. People are not interested in it, as it is a part of the Chinese culture and tradition. They would rather eat healthy food than do sport to maintain health.
9. Not everyone is interested in sports. Some people would pay more attention to the food they eat when they want to keep healthy rather than doing sport.
10. The air quality is really bad. People cannot do sports without breathing that horrible air.
11. People feel tired, even exhausted, after doing sports, and the body ache is awful.

**★ 做运动的地点**

**Where do people in China usually exercise?**

**Do you use any equipment for this exercise (or sport)?**

**Are there any sports facilities (or, exercise facilities) near where you live? (for the public to use)**



论证型问题

**例句** People usually do sports \_\_\_\_\_. There are a lot of sports facilities there for people to use.

- at home
- in the gym
- in some stadiums
- on the square



- on the playground
- on the basketball court
- in the park/ garden
- in the sports center
- on the football pitch



### 练习题

How often do you play that sport (or do that)?

How often do you do some physical exercise?

## 62 Street Market

“街头市场”是一个比较新的话题，很多考生都被这个话题唬住了，进而影响了他们的口试表现。街头市场的种类其实有很多，早市、夜市、跳蚤市场等都符合这个范畴，所以大家还是有很多可以发挥的余地的。

**Are street markets very common in your country?**



**Are there many street markets around where you live?**

举例型问题



**例句** Absolutely. There is \_\_\_\_\_.

- a morning fair near my home, which sells fruit and vegetables in the morning
- a night market in my area, which is full of handicrafts and small goods
- a flea market that has many vintages on sale. People can actually get some amazing things such as chairs or CDs

### ★ 两选一问题

**Why do people sometimes prefer to shop at a street market rather than in normal shops or shopping malls?**



**What do you think are the differences between a street market and a supermarket?**

举例型问题



**例句** I like street markets better, such as flea market/ morning fair/ night market, as it is \_\_\_\_\_.



- casual
- convenient
- unexpected
- mysterious
- unique
- relaxing

**例句** I like regular shops better, such as shopping malls shops/ supermarket, as it is

- formal
- well-equipped
- secured
- well placed with various goods
- guaranteed to be better shopping experience

**Do you like visiting street markets?**

**Do you think street markets are good for people?**

**Would you visit a street market in a foreign country (if you were visiting that country)?**

**Would you like to visit a street market in a foreign country?**



论证型问题

**优点：**

1. I think it is very convenient for people in the community, and they will get the daily goods that they need in street markets.
2. I think there are numerous choices for entertainment, such as street artists and magician.
3. I think street markets are more related to real life, and are the core and raw parts of the city. People can understand the local people and their life by going to the street markets there.
4. There are always cheap and fresh goods on street markets, such as fruits and vegetables.
5. Street markets are very relaxing places, frankly speaking. People go there to shop as



well as take a nice walk in their free time. It can help them calm down and release pressure.

缺点：

1. The venders there are very irresponsible. They leave a lot of rubbish behind.
2. The food sold in the street markets sometimes is unsanitary.
3. In China, street markets in many places block the traffic, and it is impossible to travel through during that period of time.
4. I think street markets are very noisy, you know. It is very disturbing for the people who live in that area.
5. I think street markets are not safe, personally. I think there are many thieves in the markets. My wallet may get stolen.
6. The street market has a very high turnover rate, but the venders there are not trustworthy. You may never find the same vender ever again, especially when something that you bought there goes wrong.

## 63 Swimming

这个话题的难度主要体现在举例型问题中。很多考生会把“蛙泳”说成是“frog swim”。请大家注意泳姿的正确表达方法。另外就是游泳的一些优缺点，这里优缺点没有给出很多，主要是因为可以和“Sport”这个话题的优缺点合并，所以在这里不赘述。

Can you swim?



What sort of swim is popular in China now?

举例型问题

**例句** Well, there are many different types of swimming. The most popular ones are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. I don't mean to brag, but I can do all of them.

back stroke/ back crawl 仰泳

dog paddle 狗刨式游泳

breast stroke 蛙泳

medley swimming 混合泳

butterfly stroke 蝶泳

individual medley 个人混合泳

freestyle swimming 自由泳

medley relay 混合泳接力



**Do you like swimming?**

**Is swimming very popular in China?**

**Why do many people like swimming?**

**Do you think it's important to know how to swim?**

**Do you think swimming should be taught in school?**



论证型问题

游泳的好处：

1. It can help you to cool down in hot weather; otherwise you may get a heat stroke.
2. It is a very safe way to do some exercise, and people won't hurt their ankles or joints easily.

游泳的坏处：

1. Compared with jogging, it is more expensive, you know, you need swim suits and a membership card.
2. Unlike jogging (or rope jumping), you can only swim in the swimming pool, but you can jog everywhere.
3. It's better to go swimming in summer, but in winter, you may catch cold easily.



### 练习题

Who taught you to swim?

How did you learn to swim?

Have you ever tried to learn to swim?

What do you think are the benefits of swimming (or, the benefits of knowing how to swim)?

## 64 Time Management & Daily Routine

这两个话题都和时间安排有关，侧重点虽然各有不同，但是复习时还是可以安排在一起准备。准备这种问题时考生往往容易走入流水账的误区，将自己的日程一一罗列，但是这种答案没有意义，大家一定要避免这种技术含量不高的回答。



## ★ 日程安排

**Tell me something about your daily routine.**

**What are you usually doing at this time?**

**What do you usually do at this time of day?**



**If you had more free time, what would you do?**

举例型问题

错误的思路：一般的考生拿到这个题目就开始流水账，陈述自己早上几点起床，几点上课，但是这样的回答并不好，我建议考生在回答时把时间段按照功能分开并举例，这样往往能收获更好的效果。

**例句** I usually divide my time into several different parts, you know, I have 1, such as \_\_\_\_\_. I also have 2, such as \_\_\_\_\_, besides, I have 3, such as \_\_\_\_\_.

**1. time for study/ work, such as**

- time for exam/ final exam/ mid-term exam/ quiz
- time for report
- time for meeting
- time for one special skill
- time for a competition

**2. time for entertainment, such as**

- going out for movies/ clubs/ restaurants/ bars
- staying at home for computer games/ watching DVDs
- walking the dogs/ playing Tai-chi/ playing mahjong/ playing poker
- going to another city for a trip

**3. time for rest and meals,**

- taking a nap
- sleeping at night
- having dinner with my family or friends



**练习题**

How do you plan (organize) your study time?

How do you plan your day?



When do you do most of your study?

What time do you usually get up?

What do you usually do after you get up (or, in the morning)?

**Do you like to plan what you will do each day? (Why?/ Why not?)**

**Do you usually do the same things at the same time each day?**

**Do you ever (or, do you often) change these plans?**

**Do you do the same thing( s) every day?**



论证型问题

**时间管理的好处：**

1. Reasonable time management/ arrangement offers balance between study/ work and the leisure time in people's life.
2. I can use my time more effectively and efficiently.
3. I can do things more efficiently during the same hours and avoid doing something worthless.
4. I like to use my time efficiently. It will help me save more time for something else.
5. I like to have a regular timetable. It will help me to be on time and punctual.

**时间管理的坏处：**

1. Unreasonable time management gives me a lot of pressure, because I can't keep up with it.
2. Time management is mechanical, and it will become a restriction for me.
3. Regular time management reduces my ability to adapt to different situations, especially when there is an emergency.
4. Sometimes, I have a lot of things to do, and it is impossible to have a reasonable time table.

## 65 Toys

这个题目亮点很多，主要是大家需要准备很多有趣的单词和玩具的名字，我的学生在复习这个题目的时候都有一种回到童年的感觉，另外，我也建议大家去看美国迪士尼动画片《玩具总动员》(1-3)，里面的玩具名称丰富，而且个性鲜活，可谓是寓教于乐、一举两得。



## ★ 玩具的类型

What toys did you like to play with when you were a child?



What kind of toy is popular in your country?

举例型问题

**例句** I played with many toys, such as + 男生喜欢的玩具或女生喜欢的玩具。

男生喜欢的玩具：

remote-control racing car 遥控赛车

remote-control plane 遥控飞机

remote-control helicopter 遥控直升机

4 wheel drive (4WD/ Mini 4 by 4) 四驱车

Transformer model 变形金刚模型

Gundam model 高达模型

toy gun 玩具枪

wooden sword 木头剑

dinosaur model 恐龙模型

Gameboy 掌上游戏机

Game Console 游戏机

plasticine 橡皮泥

pinball 桌球，弹球

yo-yo 悠悠球

LEGO 乐高玩具

building blocks 积木

video station (xbox 360, NDS (3DS), PSP (PSV), Wii) 游戏机

女生喜欢的玩具：

Barbie doll 芭比娃娃

Teddy bear 泰迪熊

mini piano 迷你钢琴

SD doll SD 娃娃

kaleidoscope 万花筒

bean bun 打沙包

skipping rope 跳绳

Hello Kitty Doll Hello Kitty 玩偶

rubber band skipping 跳皮筋

shuttlecock kicking 踢毽子

B.Duck 小黄鸭

puppet 布偶

kitchenware toy of the play house 过家家的玩具厨具



Do you think boys and girls like to play the same kind of toys?

举例型问题

高级版本的举例型题目，只是句型不一样，答案中的单词和上面是一样的。

No, I don't think so.

Boys like to play with \_\_\_\_\_. (男生喜欢的玩具)


Girls like to play with \_\_\_\_\_. (女生喜欢的玩具)



★ 智力玩具

If you had children, what kinds of toys would you give them?

If you had to choose a toy for a child, what toy would you give him/ her?

 If you had a child in the future, what toy would you like to give them?

举例型问题

**例句** If I had children, I would love to/ want to give them intellectual toys, such as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. You know, it can help cultivate their intelligence.

nine interlocking rings 九连环

rubik cube 魔方


jigsaw 拼图

electronic toy bricks 电子积木

tangram 七巧板

dominoes 多米诺骨牌

Did you like to play toys when you were a child?

 Do parents allow their children to play toys in China?

论证型问题

玩具的好处：

1. I think playing with toys can help me to kill some time and relive the happy moments when I was a child.
2. It can help children develop their intelligence at an early age and become smart.
3. Children can gain some practical skills by playing with some toys, especially the educational toys.
4. Toys can keep me company when I feel lonely, such as the teddy bear and the Barbie doll.
5. Some toys can make kids become more patient, you know, they need to take good care of them.
6. I had a lot of fun when I was playing with toys, and the happy time was so important to me.
7. Toys can make me feel relaxed and happy. It is pure and simple.
8. Toys help kids make more friends. Well, they can exchange the toys with each other or play them together.
9. Playing with toys is a part of children's nature. It shouldn't be suppressed.

玩具的坏处：

1. Some kids may swallow some small parts of the toys and get choked. It is very



dangerous.

2. Some toys are made by cheap materials. They are toxic for the kids.
3. It is a waste of time for kids to play with toys too much.
4. It will influence the study of children, as it is easy to get addicted to something so interesting and funny.
5. Toys nowadays are very expensive and fragile. They not only cost a lot of money, but get broken very soon as well.

### ★ 玩玩具可以学到什么



**Do you think you learned anything from playing with toys?**

举例型问题



**例句** Honestly speaking, I think playing with toys should just be fun, but if I have to say, I guess I did learn something, you know. I became\_\_\_\_\_.

- more patient than before
- more active
- generous by sharing my toys with others
- Smarter



### 练习题

Did you (prefer to) play with those toys alone or with other children?

这个问题的答案和 Family/ Friends 这个话题的好处合并即可，不再赘述。

## 66 Transportation

“交通工具”这个话题在中国英语课堂中的讲解并不够充分，导致很多学生不能正确对应单词和具体车辆，也不能第一时间反映出各种交通工具的优缺点。希望大家对这些问题引起重视。

**How did you get to the test today?**

**What form of transportation did you use?**

**What kind of transport do you usually use?**



**What's the most common means of transport in your hometown?**

举例型问题



以上问题都可以使用以下补充单词进行回答：

**补充单词：交通工具的类型**

bus/ grayhound/ couch/ shuttle bus 巴士

tram 有轨电车

taxi/ cab 出租车

ship/ boat/ cruise/ tanker/ ferry/ yacht 水路运输（注意：水路运输的几个单词意思有差别，具体参阅本书“Boat”话题）

subway/ tube/ metro/ underground/ MRT 地铁

skytrain 天铁

train/ bullet train 火车

plane/ aircraft 飞机

hot air balloon 热气球

**Which transport is your favorite public transport?**



**Which one do you like the best, train, plane or ship?**

举例型问题

**例句** I like plane/ train/ ship the best, as it is \_\_\_\_\_, but I really don't like plane/ train/ ship（与前一空选择相反），because it is \_\_\_\_\_.

飞机的优点	飞机的缺点
efficient 有效率的 convenient 便捷的 safe 安全的 with food 提供食物	expensive 贵的 always late because of the weather 因为天气而晚点 uncomfortable for long trips 长途旅行不舒服
火车的优点	火车的缺点
safe 安全的 cheap 便宜的 on time 准时的 comfortable 舒适的 easy to check in 检票方便 less time-consuming 省时间	crowded 比较拥挤 slow 慢的 dangerous (of a lot of thieves) 危险的（小偷多）
船的优点	船的缺点
cheap 便宜的 enjoyable to watch the views along the way 可以沿途观赏风景	extremely slow 极其缓慢的 easy to cause seasick/seasickness/nausea 易引起晕船



**Do you often use public transportation?**

**Is transportation very important where you live?**

**What do you think of the transport conditions in your hometown?**

**How do you think the transport system could be improved?**



论证型问题

公共交通的优点：

1. The public transportation is cheaper than the private transportation.
2. It is environmental-friendly, producing less pollution than private cars.
3. Its stations cover massive areas, and is very convenient.
4. I don't have to worry about finding the parking lot. I hate trying to find a spot on the side of the road.
5. The emission gas is less from the public transportation than the private vehicles.

公共交通的缺点：

1. It's not comfortable, especially in big cities. It's over crowded.
2. Some public transportation is not on time, particularly the bus. They often get late.
3. The traffic light system is very unreasonable and inefficient, and people have to wait for a long time.
4. The traffic jam is horrible. I would rather walk or ride a bike.
5. The road is very crowded, because the roads are too narrow and there are too many cars.



练习题

Do you think transportation costs are expensive in your hometown?

## 67 Travel

“旅行”是 Part 1 中一个比较中规中矩的话题，题目出现频率不是特别高，题目难度也不是特别大，不过在 Part 2 当中这也是一个常考题目，通常是让考生描述一次长途旅行，值得大家注意。

★ 途中如何消磨时间

**What kind of things do you like to do when you are travelling?**

**How do you spend your time when you are travelling?**



举例型问题



**例句** I usually just \_\_\_\_\_ for a while. You know, the choices are really limited when you are on the trips.

- sleep
- play PSP/ NDS/ iPad
- listen to the music
- take photos on the roads
- watch movies
- talk with other passengers

★ 旅行常备物品



What kind of things will you take when you are travelling?

举例型问题

**例句** Most importantly, I will take my \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ with me, and it is almost impossible for me to go anywhere without them.

旅行必备：

credit card

charger

medicine

book

camera

clothes

iPad/ iTouch

sun cream

cellphone

**Do you like to travel?**

**Do you often travel (go travelling)?**

**Why do you travel?**

**Do you think it's important to travel during your holidays? (Why?/ Why not?)**

**Do you think it's necessary to travel in order to enjoy your holidays? (Why?/ Why not?)**

**Why do you think travelling is so popular nowadays?**

**What do you think are the benefits of travel?**



**Do you think it's important to travel?**

论证型问题



**旅行的好处：**

1. I can see a lot of beautiful views and natural places.
2. I will have a chance to understand the local culture and ethnic knowledge there.
3. I can get a different perspective towards life.
4. It can help me relax and release the pressure.
5. I can try all the local snacks. I am sure they will be very different from what we eat here.
6. I get to see all the beautiful ladies/ handsome gentlemen.
7. I can see the original singing or dancing performances in the local area.
8. I can try on the local costumes.
9. I want to have a chance to see the things that I have never seen before, you know, something new.

**旅行的坏处：**

1. It will cost a lot of money and time, and I don't think I can afford either of them.
2. You will meet all kinds of people, and some of them are just bad people. They may take advantage of you.
3. I may get allergic to the local food or some plants there.
4. I think travelling is really tiring, you know. I may have to go to many different places in one day.

**★ 两选一型题目****Do you like long trips?****Do you like long distance travelling?****Do you think finding out about other people's culture is important? (Why?)**

论证型问题

**长途旅行：****例句** I prefer long trips, as \_\_\_\_\_.

1. There will be more tourist sites.
2. I can see a lot of things that are new and different.
3. I can try exotic food.
4. I can experience different culture.
5. People can relax for rather longer time.



**短途旅行：**

**例句** I don't like long trips. I think short trips are amazing, because they are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

- time saving
- cheaper
- less packing and preparation
- more suitable for big family
- require less energy



**练习题**

这些话题的答案可以借鉴本书“Family & Friends & Relative & Parents”中的万能理由。

Do you prefer travelling alone or with others such as family or friends?

Do you prefer travelling alone or with friends?

Do you prefer travelling with just one or two friends or with many friends (a group)?

## 68 Trees

在“树木”这个话题上复习过和没复习过的考生表现差距是非常大的，因为“树木”类题目虽然数量比较适中，但是考查的难点在于考生需要根据自己的居住地掌握2~3种常见树木的说法，并且说出它们的一些优缺点。没复习过的考生往往会出现没有思路或者单词不过关的现象。但这个题目大家也往往容易将其妖魔化，觉得没有复习就完全不能回答和它相关的问题，例如“树的名字”。但其实我们可以用组合词解决它，比如“apple tree”。所以大家要客观对待这个题目。

**Do you think it is necessary to plant trees in the city?**

**Do you think trees are important?**

**Do you think we should plant more trees?**



论证型问题

**树木的好处：**

1. Trees can help the city become a cooler place. I read from one article saying that trees can bring down the temperature of the surface of buildings.
2. Trees can help the landscape look better and more attractive.
3. Trees can refresh the air and help make the air more humid. They are the natural humidifier.



4. Trees can provide shades for the passengers when they are walking on the street.
5. Trees can provide shades for the people in the parks/ gardens, which are perfect places for picnic.
6. Trees can reduce the damage of the sand storm.
7. Trees can help reduce the noise on the road, making the city become a quieter and more peaceful place.
8. Trees can help protect the environment and give off oxygen.

#### 树木的坏处：

1. Trees take a lot of space of the city. It is a pity that when people live on a high floor yet they couldn't see anything outside of the window.
2. Trees block the view of many buildings. It is very disturbing.
3. The fallen leaves in autumn are very hard to clean, which makes the city dirty.
4. Where there is a tree, there will be a lot of annoying pests/ bugs/ insects. It is very scary.
5. Some trees will have negative influence on the environment and people's health, such as the catkin of the willows/ the pollen of the flowers from the trees can make people allergic.
6. If we plant trees on the roadside, sometimes, it blocks the view of the drivers, which is really dangerous.
7. There are a lot of birds living in the trees, and they poop everywhere. It is dirty.

#### ★ 常见的树木名称

**What kinds of trees can you see from where you live?**



**What is the most common tree in your hometown/ city?**

举例型问题

**例句** There are a lot of trees, such as \_\_\_\_\_. They truly make the city a much better place. I think it is really nice to have them around.

ginkgo 银杏

pagoda tree/ locust tree 槐树

bamboo 竹

Chinese scholar tree 国槐

pine 松树

maple tree 枫树

poplar 白杨

willow 柳树

clove tree 丁香

persimmon tree 柿子树

birch 白桦

Chinese parasol tree 梧桐

oak 橡树

holly 冬青树



sweet gum 枫香树  
honey locust 皂荚树  
myrtle 桃金娘  
hawthorn 山楂树  
apple tree 苹果树  
lemon tree 柠檬树  
peach tree 桃树

cherry tree 樱桃树  
pear tree 梨树  
elm 榆树  
camellia 山茶树  
coconut 椰子树  
palm 棕榈

### ★ 种树的场合

**When would people plant trees in your country?**



**What kind occasion will people plant trees?**

举例型问题

**例句** There are some important occasions that we have to plant trees, such as\_\_\_\_\_.

**March 12th:** It is the Arbor Day in China.

**the birth of a new baby:** It is a tradition in some parts of China that we should plant a tree.

**some volunteer programs:** Volunteers will go hiking and plant some trees.

## 69 TV

“电视”是雅思口语中的老牌考题，从来没有真正地淡出考生们的视野。它的问题覆盖面很广，而且数量很庞大。这时候我们对于问题的分类解决方法就凸现出了优势，“烤鸭”们不需要将每一个问题都准备一遍，这样才能事半功倍。

### ★ 电视节目的类别

**What types of TV programs do you (most) like to watch?**

**What programs do you (most like to) watch?**

**What's your favourite TV program?**

**What type( s) of television program do you watch when you want to relax?**

**Do you ever watch programs from other countries?**

**What types of program do children in China like to watch?**

**What (type of) programs did you like to watch when you were a child? (Why?)**



**What was your favourite TV program when you were a child?**

举例型问题



**例句** Usually, there are a lot of TV shows that people/ I like to watch, such as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. I always feel relaxed after watching them. You know, they can help me to take my mind out of things a little bit.

quiz show 益智博彩节目

matchmaking/ dating show 相亲节目

sports program 体育节目

talent show 才艺秀

TV news 电视新闻

educational TV program 教育节目

TV episode/ soap opera 电视连续剧 / 肥皂剧

talk show 脱口秀

reality show 真人秀

variety show 综艺节目

game show 游戏竞赛节目

political talk show 政论节目

entertainment program 娱乐节目

science program 科普节目

Finance and Economics program 财经节目

### 补充：

#### 国内电视节目：

《最强大脑》The Brain

《非诚勿扰》You Are the One

《中国好声音》The Voice of China

《中国达人秀》China's Got Talent

《快乐大本营》Happy Valley

《NBA 最前线》NBA Prime Time

《天下足球》Total Soccer

《武林大会》Wushu Masters

《新闻联播》CCTV News

《超级女声》Super Girls

《爸爸去哪儿》Where Are We Going, Dad?

#### 国外电视节目：

## ☀ 注意

以下三个不是电视节目，而是电视频道。

CNN (Cable News Network) 美国有线电视新闻网

BBC (British Broadcasting Corporation) 英国广播公司

Discovery Channel 探索频道

它们的跟电视节目的关系是这样的：新闻网和广播公司会有很多频道，频道下面具体的节目叫做电视节目，比如湖南卫视是频道，而每周在那里播出的《快乐大本营》则是电视节目，因此大家回答问题的时候一定要挺清楚考官问的到底是 channel 还是 program。

The Oprah Winfrey Show 《欧普拉脱口秀》(已完结)

The Ellen Show 《艾伦脱口秀》



Alan Carr: Chatty Man 《阿兰·卡尔谈话秀》  
The Daily Show 《每日秀》(又称“囧叔脱口秀”)  
Jimmy Kimmel Live! 《吉米现场秀》  
American Idol 《美国偶像》  
America's Got Talent 《美国达人秀》  
The X factor 《X 音素达人秀》  
The Voice of America 《美国之声 / 美国好声音》  
The Celebrity Apprentice 《名人学徒》  
The Biggest Loser 《超级减肥王》  
Dancing with the Stars 《星随舞动》  
Saturday Night Live 《周六晚间娱乐现场》  
The Moment of Truth 《真心时刻》  
Shear Genius 《发动奇迹》  
Who Wants to Be a Millionaire 《谁会成为百万富翁》  
Just for Laughs 《开心一刻》  
Star Academy 《明星梦工厂》

**Do you like watching TV?**

**Do you think watching TV is an important part of people's lives?**

**What benefits can people get from watching foreign TV programs?**

**Do you think watching TV can help you?**

**Do you think watching TV can help students in their studies (in their education)?**

**When you were a child, did you (used to) watch more television than you do now, or less?**



论证型问题

**看电视的好处：**

1. It contains a lot of useful information and knowledge, which can help people know more about the world.
2. It is faster than newspaper. If there is something happened, it will be reported through TV programs very fast.
3. The information is more reliable than the ones on the Internet.
4. It is very entertaining and makes people feel happy.
5. There are various channels for people to choose from, more than 100 channels in



Beijing, not to mention foreign channels.

6. It's a great way to kill some time when you really have nothing to do.
7. I love to watch soap opera/ American TV episode at home.
8. I can see a lot of stars/ singers who I love on TV.

**看电视的坏处：**

1. Some TV shows are very superficial and stupid. They lowered the IQ of the whole planet.
2. It will harm my eyes and skin. It will make me near-sighted and give me spots.
3. It is a waste of my time and energy if I spend too much time on it.
4. Some of the shows or programs are not suitable for the children, with too much content about violence and sex.
5. It is very easy to get addicted, because it is so funny.
6. There are too many advertisements on TV. Personally, it is so frustrating when I am forced to watch advertisements.
7. The advertisement cannot be turned off, and I have to watch it and wait for my favorite shows.
8. The radiation of TV set is really huge, so people should watch less TV.

## 70 Visitor

这里的“客人”不是指旅游的那种游客，而是指到家里去的客人。这个话题的本质就是问你是否喜欢和家人、朋友保持亲密的来往。

**Do you like visitors coming to your home?**

**Do you like to visit other people?**

**Do you often visit other people?**

**Do you often invite friends to visit your home?**



论证型问题

**访客的好处：**

1. I live alone, and visitors can keep me company. I don't like being alone.
2. My friends love to come to my house, and we can do whatever we want without worrying about bothering other people.
3. Visiting others is a great way to enhance the relationship between friends and family members.
4. I am a party animal, and I love the crowd and hanging out with my friends.



5. I am a very social person. I love to keep in touch with my friends, such as visiting them or inviting them to come over.

**访客的坏处：**

1. I always think visiting others will disturb the hosts, because they have to prepare for us, food and drinks, and then do the cleaning. It is so troublesome.
2. People find it difficult to choose the suitable gifts when they need to visit others.
3. I think people's home is a private space for themselves only. I don't like to intrude into others' private lives or let other people to intrude on my day.
4. I think the preparation before the visiting is so troublesome, you know. I want to leave a great first impression on others, which means I have to spend a lot of time and energy to prepare.

**★ 拜访的注意事项**

**When someone visits you, how do you usually show hospitality (or, entertain them)?**

**When (you know) people are coming to visit you, what preparations will you do?**



**What do you usually do together with your visitors?**

举例型问题

**例句** I believe there is one thing that is the most important, which is to make the guests feel like at home, such as \_\_\_\_\_.

- providing proper food and drink for the guests
- tidying up the house and making it look nice and comfortable
- arranging schedule for the visitors and getting ready for them
- getting materials for the food from the supermarket
- giving a head up before the visiting, maybe a phone call

**★ 拜访的场合**

**When do visitors come to your home?**

**On what occasions do you visit other people?**



**Do you invite guests to your home during these festivals?**

举例型问题



**例句** There are a lot of occasions for people to visit each other, such as \_\_\_\_\_.

birthday party

holidays

festivals

weekends

Wedding



### 练习题

How often do visitors come to your home?

Do you prefer to have friends visit you, or relatives?

## 71 Climate & Season & Weather

这三个主题看起来非常相似，但是这三个主题是不一样的。这里先给大家区分一下：

Climate 气候：惯常、长期、规律性的抽象的概念

Season 季节：春、夏、秋、冬

Weather 天气：暂时、短期的天气现象，变化很快

在了解以上区别之后，我们来看看这几个话题的相关问题。

### ★ 气候相关的问题

What's the climate usually like in your country (or, your hometown)?

Would you say the climate in your hometown is suitable for working/ studying?

What sort of climate do you like the most?



举例型问题

以上气候相关的答案由以下两个方面的单词组成：

- humidity 湿度：dry/ humid/ moist/ wet
- temperature 温度：freezing/ cold/ chill/ cool/ warm/ hot/ scorching hot/ sauna hot

**例句** The climate in my hometown is very dry and hot, as I am from a Gobi area.

### ★ 天气相关的问题

What's the weather like in your hometown?

What kind of weather do you like the most?



举例 + 论证型问题



**例句** Well, the weather in my hometown is usually \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_.

**sunny:** It's very bright and makes people feel happy. It is a great time to go out for a picnic with my families or friends.

**cloudy:** I like to do sports when it's cloudy, because the sunlight is really horrible. It's cooler to do sports when it's cloudy.

**windy:** In Beijing the wind is always so strong that I can feel a giant force that is pushing me forward or backward.

**snowy:** It is very beautiful when I wake up in the morning and find out that it snowed. The whole world is purely white.

**rainy:** I think it is very romantic. In China, people think raining somehow leads to sadness. Girls love to walk in the light rain, but nobody likes thunder storm or plum rain season.

**补充单词：**

normal weather: windy/ snowy/ rainy/ sunny/ cloudy/ foggy

bad weather/ natural disaster: haze/ sand storm/ typhoon/ tornado/ hail/ thunder storm/ plum rain season/ sauna weather

**★ 季节相关的问题**

**Which season do you like best? What do you do in that season?**



**Which season do you think is most suitable for work and/ or study?**

举例 + 论证型问题

**喜欢某个季节的原因（通用）：**

I was born in the..., so I feel close to that season.

I like the views in that season.

**喜欢某个季节的原因（具体）：**

**Spring: I love spring.**

1. Spring is the beginning of a new year. We celebrate the Spring Festival, which is the most important holiday in China.
2. It has great meanings. In China, it means energy and freshness.
3. I like the weather in this season. It's warm, and warm weather actually makes me feel good. I will feel uncomfortable if it is too hot or cold. I wish it could be like spring all the year round.



**Summer: Summer is my favorite season of the year.**

1. There are a lot of fruits to eat, and it is a great season to lose weight. It is so hot that I don't really want to eat a lot of food; only fruits and vegetables get my attention.
2. We have summer holidays, and it is really nice to have a rest or go on a tour after an intensive semester.
3. Everything in summer is flourishing and alive. I love that feeling so much.
4. It rains a lot, so that the air is humid and fresh. That's why I love summer.
5. I love sunshine very much. It is bright and full of energy, and makes me feel happy and sweet/ relaxed.

**Autumn: I think people can do a lot of things during the autumn.**

1. In Beijing, autumn is actually the best season. It's neither too hot nor too cold, and the average temperature is around 25 degree, so it's the best season to study or work.
2. All the fruits are ripe, you know, ready for me to enjoy.
3. The leaves of maple trees usually turns red and the views are fantastic.

**Winter: I think winter is actually a very cool season.**

1. I like snow very much, so winter is a cool season for me. I get to see beautiful snow views.
2. I can make a snowman and have a snow fight.

**Is there any season that you don't like?**

举例 + 论证型问题

讨厌某个季节的原因（具体）：

**Spring: I just don't like spring too much.**

1. The temperature changes every day. One day it is hot, while the next day it gets cold. People catch cold easily.
2. It is the flu season. I don't want to be sick.
3. There are so many sand storms.
4. The catkin of willows spreads everywhere. They may fly into my nose or month.
5. It is very dry and my skin and eyes always suffer a lot.

**Summer: I don't think summer is my time.**

1. I think the extreme temperature makes me sweat a lot. Besides, I feel very sleepy, so I won't have too much energy to do things.



2. It rains so much during the plum rain season. It is so unpredictable, that I can't wear the dry clothes or leave the room without an umbrella.
3. There are a lot of mosquitos during the season. They will feast on me.
4. It rains too much. I sometimes forget to bring my umbrella with me, and I hate getting stuck in a shopping mall because of the pouring rain.

**Autumn: I really don't like autumn much.**

1. There are many tree leaves falling down. It is very dirty and messy.
2. The weather is very unstable in autumn. People may catch cold because they wear fewer clothes than they should be.

**Winter: I hate winter.**

1. The air is heavily polluted during this period, so I don't like this time of the year very much.
2. It snows a lot and the ground gets dirty after 1 or 2 hours later when the snow begins to melt.
3. It is extremely cold, and I have to wear a lot of clothes, which are very heavy.
4. I cannot stand/ bear cold. I don't know why, but I just don't like it.
5. It is extremely dry and cold, and my skin becomes rough and allergic.
6. It is extremely cold. I have to put on a lot of clothes, and none of them are pretty.

## 72 Wedding

“婚礼”是雅思口语考试中的重头戏，是 Part 2 “家庭事件”这个大类的话题核心，但是在 Part 1 中，这个话题依然呈现出一种文化上的对比和差异，而且问题中有很多与风俗相关的内容，这种题目需要大家细心准备。

★ 婚礼习俗



**Are there any special traditions and customs in China?**

举例 + 论证型问题

**例句** We have a lot of wedding traditions and customs, such as \_\_\_\_\_. They mean\_\_\_\_\_.

**gift money/ red pockets:** the couple will be rich

**wedding presents:** richness

**lucky dates on the Lunar Calendar:** good luck and fortune



**red wedding dresses:** good luck in Chinese tradition

**fire crackers:** the evil spirits will be cast away from the couple

**Nverhong wines:** great fortune

**throwing the rice and peanuts at the couple:** people wishing the couple to have a baby quickly

**Which one do you think is more popular in your country, a traditional wedding or a modern wedding?**



论证型问题

**传统婚礼的好处（现代婚礼的坏处）**

1. It is a part of our culture. I can experience a lot of traditional things at the wedding.
2. It is very formal and sacred for people to feel the love and happiness between the couple.
3. Kids will have a lot of candies and pocket money. They are gonna love it.

**现代婚礼的好处（传统婚礼的坏处）**

1. It will be held in the church and people will dress suits and dresses.
2. It is simpler than the traditional wedding. People won't feel that much pressure.
3. People can have more choices about the places and the dates of the wedding.

★ 两选一型题目

**Do people in your country prefer a big wedding or a small wedding?**

**Which do you think is more popular in China, a luxurious wedding or a small wedding?**



举例 + 论证型问题

**选择奢华婚礼**

**例句** I prefer a luxurious wedding, as \_\_\_\_\_.

1. The couple will feel like a star when they have a luxurious wedding, you know, being the centre of all the attentions.
2. The couple can invite a famous host to host their wedding, or maybe a famous band to the wedding.
3. The hotel and the food that are offered will be different from the small weddings. They will be better.



4. It gives people a chance to get together and have some fun.

**选择简单婚礼**

**例句** I like a small wedding, because \_\_\_\_\_.

1. It is very cozy when people have a small wedding. Only the most important ones will attend the wedding.
2. It will cost less than a huge wedding, so the budget will be saved. It is very expensive to get married in China if one holds a luxurious wedding.
3. People will not be so tired because of the preparation of the wedding.

### 73 Your Country

这个话题非常小众，我在海外的学生曾经考到这个话题，但它在国内考到的频率极低。不过本着对考生负责的原则，还是在这里把这个话题给大家简单讲解一下。



**Please describe your country a little.**

举例型问题

My country is famous for food/ historical sites.



**Which parts of your country are the most populated?**

举例型问题

I think Beijing and Henan Province are.



**How easy is it to travel around your country?**

举例型问题

People can travel around China in so many different ways, such as bus/ train/ plane/ car/ bike/ ship.



**Has your country changed much since you were a child?**

论证型问题

Yes, we have more entertainment facilities and the country have been more developed than before.



## 74 hats

Do you like to wear hats?



Is wearing hats popular in your country?

论证型问题

优点：

1. Of course, hats add a cool and fashionable element to your outfit.
2. Hats can help protect you from the ultraviolet/sunlight, which can do some real damage to your skin.
3. I am really shy, so hats can help me avoid eye contact with others.

缺点：

1. I have a big head, most shops don't even have my size, which is actually very embarrassing.
2. Most hats are just too expensive for me, I really don't see myself spend 500 RMB on one hat.
3. I am very careless, I always accidentally leave my things behind, such as my keys\ phones or hats.
4. I'm such a lazy person, I sometimes wear hats to go for breakfast if I don't want to comb my hair.
5. Wearing hats ruins my hairstyle.



What kinds of hats do you have?

## 帽子种类大百科



**Baseball hat 棒球帽**  
一种流行的休闲帽，冠帽为圆形且帽檐坚硬，在帽子的最前面通常印有一支运动队伍的标志



**Fedora hat 软呢帽**  
这种帽子可能会令你联想到印第安纳·琼斯或者黑帮，在男士中收到欢迎



**Bowler 圆形硬礼帽**  
一种有圆形帽冠的硬毡帽，在美国被称为derby（圆顶礼帽）



**Newsboy hat 报童帽 /flat cap 鸭舌帽**  
两种帽子极为相像，帽身为圆形，较饱满，帽顶常常镶嵌有一颗纽扣





#### Cocktail 头巾

一种女性专用的华丽的小帽子，用羽毛、珠子或者花朵等进行装饰，经常在晚上穿戴



#### Trapper hat 猎人帽

一种俄罗斯皮帽，内镶毛皮，带猫耳，因此格外保暖



#### Fascinator 晚礼服帽

一种华丽的女性头饰，是晚礼服的组成部分，可以用来在正式场合代替帽子，常用珍珠、宝石、羽毛以及面纱作为装饰



#### Beret 贝雷帽

一种质软的圆形帽，通常由软羊绒制成



#### Homburg hat 小礼帽

正式的小礼帽的特别之处在于：帽子冠梁的中心有一条凹痕，周围有坚硬的卷边帽檐



#### Cloche hat 钟形帽

1920年代非常流行，其名字来源于法语词cloche，意为“撞钟”



#### Pillbox hat 药丸盒帽

有一个平的冠梁，直立的侧边，没有帽檐，这款帽子备受王室名媛的喜爱，比如杰奎琳·肯尼迪·戴安娜王妃



#### Deerstalker hat 猎鹿帽

农村地区很有代表性的帽子，由六块链接在一起的圆边三角形布块组成，也是夏洛克·福尔摩斯所戴的标志性帽子



#### Beanie 无檐小便帽

也被称为编织帽、绒线帽，在冬天很流行



#### Boater hat 平顶硬草帽

在夏季的正式场合穿戴的帽子，通常由较硬的材质做成帽顶和帽檐平整、硬挺，典型的平顶硬草帽帽顶还绕有罗缎丝带



#### Bucket hat 渔夫帽

一种用来防晒的便帽，也被称为fisherman hat（渔夫帽）



#### Panama hat 巴拿马草帽

是一种源自厄瓜多尔的传统有檐草帽，它颜色较浅，轻薄透气，适合在夏季与亚麻或丝质衣物搭配



#### Cowboy hat 牛仔帽

一种有很高的帽梁，宽阔的帽檐的帽子，是北美牛仔的标志性服装



#### Visor hat 遮阳帽

一种在帽子或弹性头带前端具有一片突出遮挡，用以遮阳或保护眼睛的帽子

**例句** I have quite a few, such as \_\_\_\_\_.

I love shopping \_\_\_\_\_. Where do you like to buy hats?

- in the shopping mall\plaza, such as Solana shopping center\ Lafayette, you know, I can have a lot of options.
- in the supermarket, you know, it is very convenient.
- online, I don't have to go out and walk a lot, you know, it is so efficient.
- on the official websites, I can order the limited edition of that brand.
- in small shops, I can find something unique and different.
- abroad, it is cheaper and the style updates faster than it is in China.
- in outlets, the quality can be ensured and the price is really cheap.
- in flagship store, there are more options and kinds of hats.



- in exclusive store, you know, the products there are better and the service there is amazing.
- around Beijing Zoo area\ Wudaokou area, there are a lot of hats and small commodities around that area.
- in the flea market\ flea fair, there are many antiques and interesting things there.
- in the vintage store, there are many old fashioned hats.

## 75 Handicraft

**Do you like making things by hand?**

**Do you think it's good (or, important) for children to (learn to) make things by hand? (Why?)**

**Why do you think people sometimes choose to buy hand-made things?**

**Was making things by hand common in your country in the past? (Why?)**

**Do children in your country often (or, ever) make things by hand?**



论证型问题

**优点：**

1. People/I like hand-made things because of the uniqueness they have. Handicraft articles need to be designed and made by hand with your own idea. It's hardly to find another thing which is exactly the same as a hand-made one.
2. Making things by hand offers a good opportunity to collect and reuse something which you thought are outdated or useless. Generally speaking, it's good for both stimulating imagination and recycling waste things.
3. Making things by hand is benefit to your handmade ability and improve your own patience.
4. The handicraft work is the work of heart, its beauty which the industry is unable to substitute.
5. A national handicraft can spread to today, you know, it is the important significance of cultural connection between past and present.
6. Making handicraft can develop our hands-on skill, which will bring us a great help in our future study and life.
7. Most handicrafts are delicate. You know, so that they have sentimental and collection value.
8. It can help us to improve our manipulative ability and logical thinking, as well as enhance the ability of the brain to deal with multiple matters.
9. It can relax us from all that pressure at school or work. You know, the rhythm of the



city is too fast.

10. Making things by hand can improve children's (our) practice ability, and it is a good way to develop our independence.
11. Well, handicrafts can show the beauty of personality. And they are always unique.
12. It really consumes a lot of my time for studying.
13. I have no interest in it, you know, it is kind of monotonous and repetitive, nothing new comes out from it.
14. Making things by hand could improve children's ability of combining practice and imagination.
15. It can give them a full opportunity to show themselves.
16. It will develop creativity and imagination if we make things by hand.
17. Handicraft is more valuable than other things which are made in factory, it has deep meaning.
18. It can promote cooperative ability and enrich our experience.

**缺点：**

1. It will take a lot of time and energy to design and make a handicraft all by yourself. Time is short, you know. That's why someone believes that spending time in these things is definitely meaningless.
2. You may get hurt when you use some tools in hand making, like scissors, craft knife, needle and so on.
3. Making things by hand would waste your lots of time and it may be would make you wear glasses if you make things by hand for long time.
4. It is costly and time-consuming that I cannot afford to.
5. People may hurt themselves due to incompetence and carelessness.
6. Most of the hand-made things need highly requirement for the preservation condition.
7. Handmade artists usually spend a lot of time and energy to make handicrafts, so the price is usually very expensive.
8. It takes up too much time. So, we don't have enough time to complete our professional mission.
9. When you are crazy about making things by hand, you maybe prefer to stay alone just with some handicrafts rather than communicate with others. It makes you more eccentric.
10. Handicrafts cannot be produced in quantity, so that we can't get them easily because they are often expensive.



11. Sometimes hand-made things are not delicate enough when we try to make it, because we can't do it as good as handicraftsman.
12. It can excite our curiosity and promote imagination, developing intelligence, exercising the ability of using hands and brain.
13. Maybe the edges of some ingredients are sharp, so it's dangerous to children.
14. The quality of materials is a problem. That is they could be made by inferior plastic, which is unhealthy to children.
15. Handicraft is too expensive to we can't afford it.
16. We maybe get hurt when we make things by hand.

**What handicrafts do people in your country make?**

**Is there anything that you would like to make by hand?**

**Did you ever make anything by hand when you were a child?**

**Did you ever make a toy when you were a child?**

**At schools in your country, do children have any classes in which they learn to make things by hand?**



举例型问题

**答案：**

Chinese People are famous for The Four Great Inventions, you know, the Papermaking, Gunpowder, Printing Technique and Compass, so we are really good at making things. Even when we are little, boys can assemble\ make \_\_\_\_\_, girls can make \_\_\_\_\_.

**男生喜欢的手工：**

telecontrol racing car 遥控赛车

toy gun 玩具枪

telecontrol plane 遥控飞机

wooden sword 木头剑

telecontrol helicopter 遥控直升飞机

dinosaur model 恐龙模型

4 wheel drive (4WD\Mini 4 by 4) 四驱车

lego 乐高玩具

Transformer model 变形金刚

building blocks 积木

Gundam model 高达模型

**女生喜欢的手工：**

Barbie doll 芭比娃娃

jumping rope 跳绳

Teddy bear 泰迪熊

shuttlecock 踢毽子

bean bun 打沙包

puppet 布偶

更多单词，同选考话题：toys\hats\bags\clothes\shoes\



## 76 Science

**Do you like science?**

**Are you very interested in science?**

**What do/did you like most about studying science?**

**What's the most interesting (part of) science to you?**

**Do you think science is important?**

**What science subject at school do/did you like the most? (Why?)**

**Is there anything about science that you dislike?**

**What's the most difficult part of studying science?**



论证型问题

**优点：**

1. As we know, most of science subjects are established and developed based on the real world, which means the knowledge is quite practical and timely. They can help us to deal with various of problems in different areas and make our life better and better.
2. Different science subjects can show the same thing to us in different ways. Well, it's just the time to widen the range of our vision and mind when we find how magnificent and complex the world is.
3. Science makes people process as well as make me more objectives when I look at the world rather than follow the trend.
4. Actually, science is the fundamental course even in the primary school, it can help students build a rational overview of the world we live.
5. Science is a motive of social progress. New technology and ideas arising from numerous scientists promotes development of human society.
6. Learning science helps to develop our logical thinking ability.
7. The knowledge of science is of great help to our daily life, for example, we can effectively prevent some diseases through the understanding of biological.
8. It makes our life more convenience and efficient, such as washing machine, cellphone and refrigerator.
9. Science make impossible into possible. You know, because of the discovery of electricity, we can enter the industrialized society.
10. Science can produce many products which make our life colorful.
11. Science provides us a rational way to do things. you know, the better results because



of a better method.

12. It can help us know more about advanced technology and improve the market competitiveness.
13. Science changes our life, you know, it can let us get away from ignorance.
14. Gives us an appropriate way to put our knowledge into practice.
15. High-techs from science are changing our daily life, which bring us a more convenient life.
16. The science tells us who we are, what should we do, how to do and why.
17. Science helps us to understand this world and to find out the essence of nature.

**缺点：**

1. I have to say some of the science subjects, especially some comprehensive branches of learning, are really difficult to learn. Not only the terms they use, but also the thoughts behind the words are hard to understand.
2. Some subjects are specialized in some rare and uncommon areas, and really hard to find or use in real life at all. Honestly speaking, how can we get to know them easily if they are so far from us.
3. Some science technology makes us lazy.
4. There are certain dangers when doing experiments such as radiation and mental poisoning.
5. Children may feel bored with science classes compared to art ones.
6. Science is very difficult for me, it has removed my enthusiasm for learning.
7. I think science is very boring and it also limits the artistic imagination.
8. With the development of science, we can develop natural resources faster. But just because of that, our environment has already been deeply destroyed.
9. Actually, we now are relying too much on science and technology, which reduce our ability to judge and think.
10. There are many products rely on science, such as computer, which make children to get addicted, as a result, they can't study intently.
11. The development of science often brings environmental pollution, which make our life worse.
12. It consumes a lot of energy and causes the environment pollution.
13. With the invention of the guns, many disharmony factors endanger our life.
14. Limiting our mind, makes us have no idea to new concepts



15. Some of them maybe have low efficiency to create new outcomes.
16. It's too difficult for some people to study science as compulsory course.
17. Only if we judge things in science without feelings will we make some mistakes.

**What are your sources of information about science?**

**Do you often read books about science and technology?**

**How do you (or, how did you) study science?**

**How is science taught in school in your country?**



**How do students in your country study science?**

举例型问题

从哪里获取科学相关的知识：

**例句** Usually, I will + 以下理由任选 1-2 条 .

1. discuss science matters with my classmates, you know, we can share our ideas with each other.
2. ask my teachers\professors for information, because they are very experienced and devoted\ dedicated\ responsible.
3. search on the internet, as there is nothing that Google cannot find.
4. go to the library, because there are a lot of books for me to read and they will help me to find the information that I need.

**What science do students study at school in your country?**



**What science have you studied (or learned)?**

举例型问题

**学过的科学课程：**

Well, we have so many science subjects in our school curriculum, you know, such as\_\_\_\_\_.

科目	理由
数学 Maths:	it is the foundation of other science subjects, besides, it makes me a logical person.
物理 physics:	I can use a lot of knowledge that I learnt from it to solve the problem in daily life.



化学 chemistry:	I can use a lot of knowledge that I learnt from it to solve the problem in daily life.
地理 geography:	I love all kinds of natural views and I want to be a photographer of National Geography someday in the future.
生物 biology:	the eco-biology system is diverse and magical, I like all kinds of plants and wild animals.

**How has the science that you have studied helped you?**

**How does the science you have studied help you?**

**How do you think the science you have studied will help you?**



**Is your work related to science?**

事实信息型问题

## 77 Walking

**Do you like walking? (Why?/Why not?)**

**Do you like going for walks?**

**Did you like walking when you were a child?**

**Did you walk a lot when you were a child?**

**Would you say walking is important?**



**What do you think are the benefits of walking?**

论证型问题

**优点：**

1. It's no doubt that walking is a good way, and frankly speaking, one of the easiest way to exercise.
2. You can barely spend nothing but time to become more and more healthy if you keep walking everyday.
3. No matter where you choose to walk around, you will find some new and interesting things which are easily ignored by people who like to use some form of transportation
4. Walking is benefit to our health. And walking is a significant step of fitness.
5. Walking is the simplest way of exercise. People without fitness equipment can choose to brisk walking, which is mellow but a good method to train hearts and lungs.



6. It is wonderful to enjoy fresh air in the morning with your mind refreshed and mood peaceful.
7. Walking is not restricted by time, place and age.
8. Walking instead of riding a bicycle can help us to exercise and keep our body and mind healthy.
9. It is an efficient way for us to exercise, so it can help us strengthen the body's resistance and protect us from diseases.
10. I can enjoy the sightseeing and relax myself when I go for walks after having dinner.
11. Walking is a good way for youngsters, children, even old people to exercise, everyone can keep healthy through it.
12. Walking everyday can relax ourselves and get rid of tiredness.
13. It benefits my health and helps me to look younger, you know, I will have a better mood.
14. I can enjoy some fresh air outside, I like natural environment.
15. It helps to ease traffic pressure.
16. When I was a child, I often walk for school, which makes me become more independent.
17. Walking by myself could help me deal with trouble I have no idea at ordinary times.
18. I can keep fit from regularly walking, because it makes me keep energetic in both physical and mental.
19. You know, people in city always have some occupational diseases, so we can improve our health by walking every day.
20. Walking is a great way to decrease our pressures and help us get rid of the intensive working.

**缺点：**

1. Normally, walking will take much more time than driving or riding, especially in long distance. It's relatively not that efficient when we hurry to do something.
2. As all we know, with the terrible changes in the climate and air, we may have more chances to breathe in dangerous gases from cars and chimneys if we walk a long time outside everyday, especially in large cities, like Beijing and Shanghai.
3. I think the only disadvantage that walking is harm to our knee.
4. The air quality is really bad, people can't withstand such horrible air.
5. It is meaningless to walk as they have lots of housework on the to-do list.



6. It takes more time to lose weight through walking and has little effect than other exercises.
7. The air pollution in my hometown is so serious, so I try to avoid walking or jogging in order to prevent the harm to my health.
8. It is too hot and walking is tiring, so i don't think keep sweating is a comfortable experience for me.
9. You know, the air in the city is so dirty, so it is not a good way to build up my body.
10. When the air is polluted, walking is harmful to our health.
11. There are more and more people in the park or in the road, walking there can't really make us relaxed.
12. It is slowly for me and will consume a lot of time.
13. The air quality is really bad. People cannot walk without breathing that horrible air.
14. The air pollution is seriously nowadays, I'm afraid my health condition if I still go for a walk every day.
15. The safe problem is also worth to envisage, because I am such a little girl.
16. Walking is a boring sport, you must keep by persistence.
17. The city's air is not good, if you walk outdoor maybe have damage rather than helps.

**Would you say your hometown is a suitable place for walking?**

**Would you prefer to go for a walk in the countryside or the city?**



论证型问题

**优点：**

1. It's convenient to buy some supplement in the city ( in my hometown), like water and food, when you need in walking wherever you are. You know, if you decide to go for a walk in the city, you can just go outside immediately instead of preparing a lot.
2. I like to walk with my friends instead of do it alone. As for me, walking in the city is definitely much easier to find a companion nearby.

**缺点：**

1. As all we know, with the terrible changes in the climate and air, we may have more chances to breathe in dangerous gases from cars and chimneys if we walk a long time outside everyday ,especially in large cities, like Beijing and Shanghai.
2. With the increasing number of cars, the traffic conditions become more and more



complex. In fact, walking in the city has been becoming more dangerous and inconvenient than before.



**Where do you walk?**

举例型问题

I usually walk in/on the \_\_\_\_\_, because it is very nearby, but I will go to the \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ if I have more free time.

就近走路的地点：

community garden

square

park

Riverside

更加专业的走路的地点：

gym

stadium

**What do you think could be done to make it easier to walk in cities?**

**What do you think could be done to make it easier to walk in your hometown?**



**What do you think could be done to encourage people to walk more in cities?**

举例型问题

所有的坏处都可以通过以下两点解决：

I think the government should do 2 things, more money & more attention.

**How often do you go for a walk?**

**In the future, do you think you will (continue to) enjoy walking or will you prefer to use some form of transportation?**



事实信息型问题



## 78 Robots

Are you interested in robots? Why?

Do you like robots to work at your home?



Do you want to take a car which robot is the driver?

论证型问题

优点：

1. Robots can help people do some basic work and free people from the monotonous housework and stuff.
2. Robots can operate in the harsh environment, so people won't have to take any risks.
3. Robots won't feel tired or emotions, honestly, they can do things based on their programs, so they are more efficient and effective.

缺点：

1. Robots can be hacked by people with intentions and do horrible things.
2. Robots definitely will consume a lot of energy, which will be a burden when we are already in an energy crisis.
3. I don't know why, I just feel like robots cannot be trusted for no obvious reasons, maybe because they don't have feelings and empathy.



Will robots replace human beings in the workplace completely?

举例型问题

答案

I think people are trying to replace human beings in workplaces, some has been replaced by machines, for instance, the workers in the factory has been replaced by computer controlled machines and Google is testing their Driverless Car, so who knows, right?

## 79 Mirror

Do you often look in the mirror?



Do you think mirrors are a necessary decoration?

论证型问题



**优点：**

1. I think people need to be tidy and clean, mirror is definitely a must for people to self-check.
2. I love to look in the mirror and say to myself, "You look great, you are going to have a great day, remember to smile!"
3. I like to try on different kinds of clothes, as you can imagine mirror is a necessity for me.

**缺点：**

1. My home is very small, there isn't really a right place for a mirror, unless you count the one in the bathroom.
2. I don't know if this is a phobia, but I always feel a little bit creeped out by mirrors, especially at night. Maybe I read too much Alice through the looking glass when I was a child.



**Where do you put mirrors?**

举例型问题

**例句** There are many places where we can put a mirror, such as in a \_\_\_\_\_.

- bathroom
- living room
- car
- workplace



**Do you often buy mirrors?**

事实信息型问题

## 80 Watch

**Do people still wear watches in your country?**



**Did you wear a watch when you were a child?**

论证型问题

**优点：**

1. Wearing a watch is a way to show that you are aware that time is precious and important.
2. There are a lot of beautifully designed watches out there, so I love a classy watch better than a bracelet.



- Being punctual is considered a virtue here in China, and I think wearing a watch is way to guarantee that.
- It is more convenient to look at time from a watch than from your cellphone, you know, you will have to take your phone out of your pocket and then put it back afterwards.

**缺点：**



- A good watch is too expensive to afford, some of them costs thousands, even tens of thousands.
- I am very forgetful, I have a watch, but I always left it home. It's not a necessity anymore.

**What was your first watch like?****Have you ever received a watch as a gift?****What kinds of watches do you like to wear?**

举例型问题

**例句** There are many brands that I like, such as \_\_\_\_\_

- 百达翡丽 (Patek Philippe)：贵族的标志
- 爱彼 (Audemars Piguet)：坚持百年传统
- 伯爵 (Piaget)：值得欣赏的至尊之宝
- 积家 (Jaeger-Le Coultre)：创造吉尼斯纪录
- 江诗丹顿 (Vacheron Constantin)：贵族的艺术品
- 卡地亚 (Cartier)：上流社会的宠物
- 劳力士 (Rolex)：手表领域中的霸主
- 万国 (IWC)：机械制造 品质超凡
- 芝柏表 (J.A. LeCoultre & Co.)
- 欧米茄 (OMEGA)：成就与完美的代表

标志	名称	常用中文名称	产地
	Patek Philippe	百达翡丽	瑞士
	Vacheron Constantin	江诗丹顿	瑞士



	AUDEMARS PIGUET	爱彼	瑞士
	Breguet	宝玑	瑞士
	IWC	万国	瑞士
	Piaget	伯爵	瑞士
	Cartier	卡地亚	法国
	Montblanc	万宝龙	德国
	Paneral	沛纳海	意大利
	Ulysse Nardin	雅典表	瑞士
	Bucherer	宝齐莱集团	瑞士
	Dior	迪奥	瑞士
	TAG Heuer	豪雅	瑞士
	Jaeger-LeCoultre	积家	瑞士



	Rolex	劳力士	瑞士
	GIRARD-PERREGAUX	芝柏表	瑞士
	A.Lange&Sohne	朗格	德国
	Baume&Mercier	名士	瑞士
	Dunhill	登喜路	英国

### 练习题

How often do you wear a watch?

## 81 Dream

**Do you think dream will affect life?**

**Do you want to learn more about dreams?**



**Do you like hearing others' dreams?**

论证型问题

**优点：**

1. I think dreams reflect what people were thinking when they are awake, for instance, people have scary dreams when they are under pressure. By having those dreams, people can release some pressure, so it's a good thing to have dreams.

**缺点：**

1. The quality of you sleep will be undermined if you have too many dreams at night. That means you don't have a lot of deep sleep.





**Do you remember your dream when you wake up?**

举例型问题

**例句**

I sometimes remember my dreams, like one time I dreamed of falling from a cliff, but most of my dreams were just a blur.

## 82 Teacher

**Do you think it's important to like your teachers?**

**Did you (do you) like your high school teachers? (Why?/Why not?)**

**Did you like your primary school and high school teachers?**

**Do school students in China like their teachers?**

**Are teachers in China very strict? (Why?/Why not?)**

**Have you ever thought of being a teacher?**

**What do you think of teaching as a job/career/line of work?**



**would you like to be a school teacher? (Why?/Why not?)**

论证型问题

**优点：**

1. Teachers can help me solve some problems that I don't know how to deal with.
2. Some teachers teach in a very funny way. They would make the class vivid and fun.
3. I think most teachers are very responsible and kind. I could ask them about anything in study.

**缺点：**

1. Some teachers are so boring, they just reduce the interest of students in study. It is boring and dull.
2. Some teachers teach their subject monotonously, and they require the students to learn by note, so it extremely reduces the students' enthusiasm.

**What qualities should a good teacher have?**

**What do you think of teachers?**

**What's your opinion of teachers?**

**What kind of teacher do students most like?**

**What sort of personality do teachers need to have?**





**What sort of character do teachers need to have?**

举例型问题



**例句** I think there are some/ a few/ several qualities that are important. For instance,

-----

- a teacher should be responsible. If he is not responsible, he may not be willing to take care of the students with care and tenderness.
- he should be humorous, so that the students will be more focused and paying more attention to him during the class.
- knowledge is a must, so he should be knowledgeable. What will he teach if he knows nothing at all?

**Were (are) your high school teachers very strict?**



**Do you think there are any benefits from teachers being strict with the students?**

举例型问题



**例句** I think a teacher should be reasonable strict, as the most important things are always taught in class, so students should pay more attention to what the teacher/professor has to say, but if the teachers are not strict, then students may be easily distracted.

**Who is your favourite teacher? (Why?)**

**Which teacher (or, teachers) influenced you?**

**Did any teachers in your high school have a big influence on you?**

**When you were in school (primary school or high school) did any of your teachers have a (strong) influence on you?**



事实信息型问题



**例句** My favorite teacher is my history teacher, who taught history in a very vivid and lucid way. He is amazing and very dedicated.



### 83 Celebrity

**Do you like any foreign celebrities?**

**How do celebrities influence their fans in China?**

**Would you want to be a celebrity in the future?**

 **Do you think we should protect famous people's privacy?**

论证型问题

**优点：**

1. Celebrities live a glamorous life, of course people would admire them.
2. I think people like celebrities is because of their work, some of them are movie stars or singers, some are football stars, and most of them are successful in their own areas, so people respect them for that.

**缺点：**

1. Many celebrities are drama queens, you know, too dramatic, I can't deal.
2. Many celebrities are followed by paparazzi, whatever they do, wherever they go, they will be followed, I wouldn't want a life like that.

 **Who is your favorite celebrity in China?**

举例型问题

**例句** There are many celebrities in China, such as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. They are very famous in their own fields.

- Jackie Chen
- Jet Li
- Bruce Li
- Zhang Ziyi
- Gong Li
- Yao Ming
- Yi Jianlian



## 84 Chocolate

Do you like chocolate? (Why?/Why not?)

Did you like chocolate when you were young? (Why?/Why not?)

Is chocolate expensive in your country?

Do children in your country like chocolate? (Why?/Why not?)

Is chocolate popular in your country?

Do you think all people like chocolate? (Why?/Why not?)



What would you say are the advantage and disadvantage of chocolate?

论证型问题

优点：

1. This may surprise you, but chocolate actually is good for your health, especially dark chocolate, it is said that it can prevent heart disease.
2. Chocolate contains certain material that makes people feel happy and delighted, and most sweet food can offer the similar effect.

缺点：

1. Chocolate make people fat for sure, if you eat too many of them.
2. Eating too much chocolate will lead to dyspepsia, you know, they will make you feel full all the time and it takes a long time to digest.



What's your favorite flavor?

举例型问题

**例句** I love a lot of different flavors, such as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

按照可可含量及甜度：

- Milk chocolate
- Sweet Chocolate
- Bittersweet Chocolate
- Dark chocolate
- White chocolate





**When was the first time you ate chocolate?**

举例型问题

**例句**

**My parents are very careful about what I eat. You know, they paid a lot of attention about what I should eat when I was a child, so I think I was about 12 years old when I first tried chocolate, it was a small piece of \_\_\_\_\_.**

- Dove 德芙
- Godiva 歌帝梵
- FERRERO ROCHER 费列罗
- HERSHEY'S 好时
- Meiji 明治
- Toblerone 三角
- Amovo 魔吻
- Guylian 吉利莲
- Nestle 雀巢
- Lindt 瑞士莲



**How often do you eat chocolate?**

事实信息型问题

## 85 Ocean

**What interests you most about the beach?**

**Would you like to live in a house near the ocean? (Why?/Why not?)**

**Did you like the ocean? (Why?/Why not?)**



**What (benefits) did you get from going there?**

论证型问题

**优点：**

1. The environment near the beach is always nice and relaxing, it just puts me in the jolly mood.
2. There are a lot of activities that we can do on the beach, such as beach basketball and banana boat.



**缺点：**

1. I think coastal cities are always crowded and chaotic, you know, too many tourists.
2. There are a lot of potential dangers, such as sharks or storms, even tsunamis. People need to be more aware.

**Have you ever been to the seaside?**

举例型问题

**例句** Definitely, I love to go to seaside. I have been to quite a few islands, such as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

- Boracay
- Hawaii
- Santorini
- Great Barrier Reef
- Tahiti
- Bali
- Phuket
- Maldives

**What do people in China do when they go to the beach?****What would you enjoy doing if you were at the seaside?**

举例型问题

**例句** Well, there are many things that people can do, such as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

- beach sports 海滩运动
- diving 潜水
- fishing 钓鱼
- jet skiing 水上摩托车, 喷气式滑水车运动
- kayaking 皮划艇; 皮艇运动
- parasailing 帆伞运动, 驾帆伞滑翔
- relaxing/ sunbathing 放松日光浴
- sailing 帆船运动
- sightseeing 观光; 游览
- skydiving 跳伞运动



- snorkeling 浮潜；潜水；浅滩潜水
- spa 水疗
- surfing 冲浪
- swimming 游泳
- walks & hikes 徒步旅行，远足
- water skiing 划水
- windsurfing 风帆冲浪



**How many times have you been to the seaside?**

事实信息型问题

## 86 Teenager

**Do you spend much time with teenagers?**

**Do you like to spend time with teenagers?**



**What are teenager's advantages?**

论证型问题

**优点：**

1. Young people have a lot of great qualities, you know, they are dynamical and open-minded. They are not afraid of new things.
2. Spending more time with young people makes me feel young and fresh. They have all the tiem they need in this world. I envy them.
3. Young people are the future, honestly, they are what the world will become. Knowing the teenagers are liking knowing the future trend.

**缺点：**

1. There are some disadvantages about young people. For instance, many of them are inexperienced and impulsive, so they are very easy to be misled and fooled.
2. I think some young people are reckless and careless, they don' t think before they act, which can leads to all sorts of problems. Many accidents happen because of this kind of attitude.



**What do teenagers in your country usually do?**



**What are teenagers favorite activities?**

举例型问题

**例句** There are so many things that young people can do in China, such as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. Those are very popular activities.

- doing sports
- watching movies
- shopping together
- taking a lesson together, like painting or baking



**Do you like teenager's fashion?**

论证型问题

**优点：**

1. Some brands are the sponsors of the sports stars. They always wear that brand and they look really good.
2. Great fashion is designed with style and outstanding quality.
3. It can help me dress better and look more attractive.
4. Fashion helps promote the industries related with it, such as media, you know, newspapers and magazines, sometimes even TV shows.

**时尚的坏处：**

1. Some fashions are just not my type. They don't suit me very well. They just make me look really weird.
2. Some clothes and fashion are not my type. If I force myself to follow that kind of fashion, it will only become a disaster.
3. It changes from time to time, and it's really hard and expensive to follow the trend.

## 87 App

**Do old people in your country like to use app?**



**Do you think apps are popular in your country? Why?**

论证型问题



**优点：**

1. Some apps can make people's life convenient and easy, you know, they have recommendations about restaurants and coffee shops with rating and comments, so it will be very easy for you to choose.
2. Some apps can help you make travel plans, and you can book plane tickets, hotels and shows on them.
3. Some apps will help you release the pressure, and people can read news about music, celebrities or movies on them.
4. Some of the apps can pay your bills instantly, so you don't have to take your wallet and credit card with you all the time.

**缺点：**

1. Some of the apps are taking too much of people's time and energy, and it is not good for people's health.
2. Some apps are too complicated, not very user-friendly.
3. Some apps take too much space of my cellphone's hard drive, you know, I remember one time I downloaded an app and my cellphone was instantly full.

**What kinds of apps do you often use?**

**What's the most popular app in your country?**

**What was the first app you used?**



举例型问题

**例句** There are many apps people like to use in China, such as the \_\_\_\_\_.

- Wechat, which is kind of like Line but with more functions
- Weibo, which is sort of like Twitter in China, with a Chinese flavor.
- Renren, which is kind of like Facebook in China, but it is not as popular as it used to be.
- Meitu, which can edit pictures on your cellphone and add filters, like Instagram without the social part.



**What kinds of apps would you like to have in the future?**

举例型问题

**例句** I think I want to try some foreign apps when I go abroad and study, such as the \_\_\_\_\_.



- YELP
- Trip Advisor
- Agoda
- Expedia
- Booking
- City Mapper

## 88 Animals



### Do you like animals? Why?

论证型问题

#### 优点：

1. Many animals are cute and innocent, and I feel so relaxed when I see them.
2. Many animals have exceptional skills, and people draw inspirations from them and build things like planes and stuff.
3. Some animal can help people with their work, such as the dogs that works in the airport.
4. Many animal can help protect the environment, such as the birds that pray on insects.

#### 缺点：

1. Many wild animals have disease that can transmit to human beings, and people need to be more careful.
2. Some animals have venom, such as snakes and spiders. People who like outdoor activities could get hurt.



### What is your favorite animal?

举例型问题



**例句** There are so many adorable animals, such as the \_\_\_\_\_.

- tiger
- lion
- elephant
- peacock
- sea lion







**What kinds of animals do the people in your country have as a pet?**

举例型问题



**例句** Surprisingly, people have a very open idea about pet in China, apart from dogs and cats, there are some other unexpected options, such as the\_\_\_\_\_.

- spider
- turtle
- snake



**Do you think cities are suitable places for keeping a pet?**

论证型问题



**答案** No, I don't. China has a very large population, so the cities are full packed with people. Trying to have a pet in a Chinese city is a suffering for both the owner and the pet.



# 第捌章

## Part 2 初体验



虽然官方声称雅思口语考试的难度是从 Part 1、Part 2 到 Part 3 逐级递增，但是雅思考生公认的最大难题往往集中在 Part 2。中国考生对于 Part 2 的个人独白有很严重的心理阴影，而其中很大的原因是针对 Part 2 的题目考生只能描述持续 30 秒，或者干脆觉得无话可说。我曾经在我的学生身上做过“实验”：把雅思口语 Part 2 的话题卡翻译成汉语，让他准备一分钟，学生勉强说了 50 秒就没话说了，远达不到 60 秒的最低要求。

由此可见，仅仅是思路匮乏就已经让考生在 Part 2 无从下手了，要是再遇上一两个自己不会的表达就更加手足无措。这时候更为火上浇油的是，考生的对面坐着一个外国人（考官）全程注视着考生。因此，这一部分就成为雅思考生最为惧怕的噩梦。

为了扭转这种局面，各位“烤鸭”一定要认真地学习本章和下一章，做到早准备早预防，以免出现一般考生可能遇到的窘迫情况。本章节主要从以下方面介绍雅思口语 Part 2：

- Part 2 基本介绍
- Part 2 考题结构及数量分布
- Part 2 八大题目类型
- Part 2 回答策略
- Part 2 是否应该使用模板
- Part 2 的 4S 黄金法则



## IELTS | 01 Part 2 基本介绍

进入 Part 2 环节，考官会给考生一张打印的话题卡，话题卡上有一个主标题，四个小问题。

考生可以准备一分钟，准备之前考官会给考生一张白纸和一支笔用来打草稿，准备期间考官一般不会打扰考生。

准备结束后，考生的个人陈述需达到 1~2 分钟，我们推荐的时间一般是 100~120 秒之间。不足 1 分钟会扣分，超过两分钟会被打断，只要在两分钟之内回答了四个小问题，被打断就是不扣分。如果被打断，请不要抢话，更不要说诸如：“I have one more sentence; please let me finish.” 之类的不得体的话。

### 注意

1. 四个小问题必须全部回答。前两个小问题可以相对较为简略回答（如两到三句话），但第三、四个问题往往要相对具体、深入地回答。尤其是第四个问题。
2. 不仅仅局限于四个小问题，任何可以让你的阐述更加具体的内容都可以提及。但是不要因此而忽视四个小问题的回答。
3. 如果整个描述完全忽视了四个小问题或者没有答完这四个问题，考官会酌情扣分。

## IELTS | 02 Part 2 考题结构及数量分布

Part 2 的题库由话题卡（Cue Card）组成（如下图），常考话题如：“Describe an unusual job you would like to do” 等，雅思口语考试有超过 500 个 Part 2 曾考话题。

Part 2 的每个话题卡（Cue Card）一般由 4~5 个问题组成。

Part 2 考生独白结束后，考官可能会跟上一个问题作为收尾。但不是每个考生都会遇到这种情况。





**Describe an unusual job you would (like to) do, if you had the opportunity**

**You should say:**

**what job it would be**

**what you would do in that job**

**why this job is unusual**

**and explain why you would like to do that job.**

## 03 | IELTS Part 2 八大题目类型

虽然雅思官方没有将口语 Part 2 话题卡进行详细的分类，但是每一个想要复习雅思口语的“烤鸭”都应该将 Part 2 的话题卡进行一定程度的分类，并在每个类别下把类似的话题进行合并。否则大家往往会发现准备了大量的题目却始终得不到自己渴望的分数，花费了大量的时间依然没有获得预期的效果，这都是方法不当导致的后果。

为了帮大家节省时间，我将过去六年的考题一一回顾后，把其中所有的 Part 2 话题卡按照主题与核心分为了八大类，分别是：

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| 1) 人物类   | 2) 地点类   |
| 3) 媒体类   | 4) 物品类   |
| 5) 工作事件类 | 6) 家庭事件类 |
| 7) 户外活动类 | 8) 学术科目类 |

我们将在本书第八章为“烤鸭”朋友们一一展开并解决它们。



# IELTS Part 2 回答策略 | 04

## 1 核心素材的选题很重要

虽然你所说的内容是不会被打分的（除非你所说的内容是反人类反社会的谬论），但是你所选用的单词是受到选题影响和控制的。例如“A Person You helped”这个话题。

如果你选择用“我帮同桌讲数学题”这样的故事，基本上你离自己能拿到的最低分数也就不太远了。就像我刚才说的，内容的选取虽然不会被打分，但是因为你选取了这样的内容，它从客观条件上决定了你说不出什么高分单词或者句型，这样就导致了你的单词和语法的分数比较一般。

## 2 一定要进行话题合并

我们以 Part 2 地点题这个大类为例。如果考生在备考过程中选择“铁岭”这个城市作为素材核心，就会发现它能涵盖的题目非常有限。想从里面找到有卖点的“A restaurant”、“A park”、“A historic building”、“A café”等（以上都是 Part 2 地点题的典型话题）真的是难上加难，因为“铁岭”这个素材的深度和广度都不够。

但是如果考生选择“东京”作为素材核心，以上这些话题就都可以在东京这个发达的城市找到符合的内容及素材，可能一个公园里就有一栋历史悠久的建筑，而这栋建筑同时也是一个餐馆。这样我们需要准备的素材就会变少，由此考生的准备就会变得简单有效，很多单词、句型都可以重复使用。这就是话题合并。

## 3 勤练习

在准备雅思口语 Part 2 时一定要勤练习，练习的内容包括以下几点：

### ① 1 分钟如何做笔记

我建议大家要将每一个大类的 Part 2 话题卡都思考一遍，更要练习自己的反应速度，让自己在 1 分钟内能够顺利地从脑海当中的素材里选择 8 个左右的关键词。记忆力好的同学可以有选择地写几个单词，甚至不写笔记。记忆力不好的同学可以把 8 个单词都写下来。但是我不推荐大家默写长篇大论，这对考试打分没有好处。曾经有考生在考试现场用一分钟的准备时间默写了 250 字的段落草稿纸上，准备时间结束后考生就开始了朗读。这位同学的分数可想而知。



### ② 掌握说话的节奏和时间长度

没有人天生就能掌握好自己的说话的速度和节奏，这需要锻炼。可能很多老师会给出建议语速，但是这样并不科学，因为每个人的语速都有差别，强迫学生在短期内提高或放慢语速只会让学生出现原本不会出现的失误，如“repetition”、“self-correction”等扣分点。所以最好的方法就是让学生先测算自己的语速，再决定自己所准备的素材长度。

语速的测算方法非常简单：将一段文字朗读并熟悉3~5遍，这时再计时朗读，用时间除以字数得到的就是语速。以此作为依托的准备才是最为合理和科学的。

### ③ 让自己的说话变得自然

说话是否自然不是雅思口语考试的打分点，但是不自然的表达会让考官怀疑你的表述是否为背诵的内容，这样就会形成词汇和语法的扣分点。Part 2 个人独白时间长，考生很容易做出一些不自然的举动，如眼神飘忽、手搓衣角等。为了避免这些不自然的肢体语言，每天的练习就是必备的。“烤鸭”朋友们可以对着镜子练习，也可以选择让朋友把自己的练习拍摄下来，再自检。

## 05 | IELTS Part 2 是否应该使用模板

我认为基础不同的考生对于模板的使用情况不同。“烤鸭”们可以从以下这个例子中发现端倪。



**Describe an unusual job you would (like to) do, if you had the opportunity**

**You should say:**

**what job it would be**

**what you would do in that job**

**why this job is unusual**

**and explain why you would like to do that job.**

针对这个话题，我们可以有一些模板句型：

**Topic:** Describe an unusual job you would (like to) do, if you had the opportunity.

Well, today my topic is to describe \_\_\_\_\_.

**Question 1:** What job it would be



**模板句型：**

Let me tell you something about...

Well, let me talk about...

Well, I would like to tell you something about...

I'd like to describe something about...

I'll talk about...

**Question 2: What you would do in that job****模板句型：**

Secondly, I guess I will say...

Let me say a few things about...

**Question 3: Why this job is unusual****模板句型：**

What's more, I'd like to say something about...

Now regarding...

Moving on to the next question...

**Question 4: Explain why you would like to do that job****模板句型：**

Lastly, let me take care of the issue of...

Finally, let's look at...

Now, I'd like to explain to you...

Continuing with the next point, ...

我们从以上模板句型中各取一句，组成以下段落（黑色的字体是模板句型，下划线是话题卡上的原文，只有斜体的部分是考生需要现场思考的）：

Well, today my topic is to describe an unusual job I would (like to) do, if I had the opportunity.

Let me tell you something about what job it would be, *I really want to become a music teacher in the future. Maybe in my high school...*

Besides, I really want to say something about what I would do in that job. *I think I will do a lot of things, such as teaching students how to sing and how to play musical instrument.*

What's more, I'd like to say something about why this job is unusual.

*I think music can help people relax themselves, and at the same time, music can help people to release the pressure. Also it is very entertaining and funny.*

Lastly, let me take care of the issue of explaining why I would like to do that job.

*I like this job because I can make a lot of friends and also learn a lot of things from it. I think it*



*is beautiful and nice.*

### ① 模板受益人群：基础薄弱的考生

这些考生往往没有很好的英语基础，因此他们在极短的准备时间里连整理信息都还来不及，更别提把内容理顺然后自己造句了。这些考生在没有模板帮助的情况下去考雅思口语往往因为句法不通顺、信息混乱等原因获得 3~4 分甚至更低的口语分数。

如果使用模板，考生的准备时间基本可以用来整合信息，然后把内容替换到上面的斜体字部分，而不再需要再拿出大量精力和时间想句型。这样一来考生的答案从逻辑顺序上来说肯定能上不止一个台阶。另外，模板中套入了从句结构，所以考生不需要思考句型是否多样。这就为考生更好地把信息表达出来创造了基础和可能。

最后，这样的模板也可以让考生的回答时长达到一定的长度。

因此很多考生在利用模板的情况下把自己的口语分数提高至 5 分左右都是常见和可能的。

### ② 模板受害人群：基础优秀的考生

这些考生英语基础很好，能够顺利理清思路并整合信息，而且自己造句很少出错或者从不出错。在没有模板的情况下已经可以考出 5.5~6 分的口语分数。

这时问题出现了。这些考生能够表达的信息量非常庞大，能够表达的内容很多，而以上模板却限制了考生的说话内容甚至占用了考生的说话时间，导致出现说话超时等不好的情况。因此，我一般建议此类基础较好的考生尽量少用或不用模板。

但是不可否认，如果考生以前没有接触过雅思考试，那么适当地接触和了解口语模板可以帮助他们了解口语考试的形式及答案的结构布局。就算不背诵模板也应该提前接触、感受一番，好让自己更快地了解雅思口语考试的基本框架。但考生应该明白，口语模板不是每一个水平的学生都应该背诵或可以背诵的。大家应该根据自己的水平来决定模板的使用方式和多少。

## 06 | IELTS Part 2 的 4S 黄金法则

作为雅思口语老师，我已经有了一万小时以上的授课经验，在这些宝贵的时间里，我发现很多学生其实有着非常丰富的阅历，但是由于没有良好的积累习惯，结果让一批好的素材从自己身边溜走了。所以我来为大家提供一些我的“独家秘方”以及积累素材的建议，这样大家便可在日常生活中不知不觉地积攒优质素材。大家只需要跟着我的“4S 黄金法则”即可轻松完成话题素材收集及话题合并的准备。

首先，我来为大家介绍一下什么叫“4S 黄金法则”吧。所谓的“4S 黄金法则”是我独创的四个



口语素材的准备步骤，从单词到句子再到段落，从基础到高级。只要大家按照我的这四个步骤去准备，不知不觉间，雅思口语 Part 2 的备考就轻松解决了。

**4S 黄金法则：**

Step 1：要刻意地选择符合雅思口语考题的核心素材。

Step 2：喜欢的素材选定后要多留意与它相关的单词及信息。

Step 3：把相关单词串联成独立的自然段，Step 2 学会的单词就马上可以用到了。

Step 4：练习用四句话的描述把核心素材中常用的段落凝练出来，一般都是个人感受。

之后的章节我会手把手带着“烤鸭”朋友们进行准备，所以本章先不费篇幅。







# 第玖章

---

## Part 2 话题合并 DIY



# 01 | IELTS 人物类

## 1 如何选择并制作自己 DIY 的素材

人物类话题是雅思口语考试 Part 2 的第一大项，也是我们日常生活当中绝对不可能缺少的重要主题，人物类话题的出现也再一次体现了雅思考试亲近日常生活的这一特点。根据往年的考试我们可以发现，人物类考题的数量十分庞大，每月人物类活跃考题的数目也十分可观。因此，以人物类话题为开始进行准备是雅思口语 Part 2 准备的最佳策略。

我把雅思口语考试的人物类话题分为以下两个层级：

第二层：名人 & 偶像

第一层：家人 & 朋友

“烤鸭”

如果说“烤鸭”是一个核心的话，所有围绕在“烤鸭”身边的人物类题目都可以按照与“烤鸭”的远近亲疏关系分成两个层级：

第一层：家人 & 朋友。这是“烤鸭”们接触最多、了解最深的一个层级。往往是大家普遍认为比较简单的题目类型。常见的考题有：A family member、A neighbour、A happy person、A teacher、A child 等话题。

第二层：名人 & 偶像。常见的话题有：A person you would like to spend a day with、A famous person、A successful people、A singer、A character、A movie star 等话题。

很多考生总想把第二层的题目和第一层的题目合并解决，但是这样的可能性几乎为零。因为它们相似性和合并度实在是太低了，所以我们本节只解决第一层的话题核心素材，而第二层的话题将在本章第三小节与“媒体类题目”一起解决。

现在，我们来使用 4S 黄金法则来备考人物类题目之家人 & 朋友



**Step ① 要刻意地选择符合雅思口语考题的人物**

其实家人或者朋友都是外在的条件，他们的核心相似之处是他们的性格如何得好、他们与“烤鸭”之间发生过的或感人或有趣的故事。所以我们来看看常见的人物话题卡：“A friend”，“A person you know who likes to help others”，“Someone who does something very well”。

为了找到最恰当的核心素材，我们通常都要把常见的话题进行合并，这样就会形成一个新的话题：“A friend who **does something** well and **likes to help others**”。这样以上三个题目的关键点就都被涵盖在内了。大家请看一个例子：

**例**

王瑞是我的好朋友，她性格开朗、长相甜美，特别喜欢帮助别人，所以大家都喜欢她。另外，她有弹钢琴的特长，只要别人有需要她都乐意与别人分享她的经验和心得。有一次，她帮助我准备了一场钢琴大赛并助我获奖，这件事给我留下了很深的印象，也改变了我的性格。

这个故事就属于“A friend who does something well and likes to help others”。大家有没有发现这段描述的框架不仅跨越年龄，还跨越种族。不论是一个 10 岁的女孩，还是一个 20 岁的少女，甚至是一名 70 岁的退休教师，其实都可以使用这段话对其进行描述。这样的素材，就是核心素材。

**Step ② 喜欢的人物选定后要多留意以下单词及信息**

在人物题中，我们需要描述外貌、性格及人物之间的关系等单词，这种内容需要的单词方向性很强。但是另外一个核心内容是我们需要讲述自己和该人物之间的故事，一旦确定了故事的主线，每一个考生描述时需要的单词与其他考生使用的单词差别会非常大，这也是在人物题部分考生可以展现自己个性化特点及词汇量的好机会。

在本章节中，我使用的人物“王瑞”擅长弹钢琴，所以我们这个模板准备的内容都是和弹钢琴相关的。如果大家所要描述的人物擅长打篮球、美术、跳舞等，也是可以的，准备的方法和套路都一样。千万不要让我的例子局限大家的选材。

核心单词	针对人物“王瑞”的内容
外貌 appearance	taller than / skinny / Bob hair / black and white for clothes / pajama / lovely
性格 personality	different layers / cool / easy going / shy / blush / get along with



私密故事 intimate story	helped / play the piano / competing / slot / grand final / national piano competition / competitive / chosen / play each key perfectly / short amount of time / keep calm / keep up with my rhythm / selected / performed / a bunch of important guests / useful / inspiring
特别之处 special part	polite / warm-hearted / real lady / smile / influences / for instance / unconditionally / asks for return / charming
个人感受 personal feeling	changed / introvert / talk to people / make friends / secretly / cute / lovely / popular / nice / participated / piano club / different

把同一横行的单词串在一起，就是一段描述。

### Step ③ 把以上单词串联成独立的自然段，Step 2 学会的单词马上可以用到了

人物类话题的核心素材写作最重要的就是通用，很多学生喜欢使用特殊单词来进行描述，例如描述一个人的外貌，请大家来看以下三句话：

“She is very pretty with a pair of big black eyes and chubby rosy cheeks.”

“She has white hair and there are many wrinkles on her face.”

“She is taller than most of her friends, **skinny**, and with **Bob hair**.”

从以上三句话中，我们不难发现它们的通用程度是完全不一样的。

第一句话只能适用于孩子，因为“rosy cheeks”这个词 99% 的情况下不会用在成年人身上。而第二句话一般都是用来描述 60 岁以上的老年人，尤其是“white hair”以及“wrinkles”这样的词/词组。这样的句子适用型很差，题目稍微变化就不能再用了。

但是 we 来看第三句话。“She is taller than most of her friends, **skinny**, and with **Bob hair**.”大家有没有发现这汇总描述比较通用，不论这个人是孩子还是成年人或者上了年纪的人，都可以通过这句话对其进行描述。这样的句子就是核心素材的最好组成。

对于人物题，有以下几个段落是必须要准备的：



### Appearance

She is **taller than** most of her friends, **skinny**, and with **Bob hair**. We all call her “Panda”, as she prefers **black and white for clothes**, and most importantly, there is a picture of panda on her **pajama**, which makes her look so **lovely**.





## Personality

Her personality has several **different layers**. Usually, she looks like an **artist**, you know, being cool and all that. But in fact, she is very **easy going**. Sometimes, she would be so **shy** and easily **blush**. Unlike most people, she can **get along with** everyone very well.



## Intimate story

She **helped** me a lot by teaching me how to **play the piano** better. It was very important for me, as I was **competing** for a **slot** of the **grand final** of the **national piano competition**, which would be held in Beijing. It was really **competitive**, for only 10 of us will be chosen for it. However, I couldn't **play each key perfectly** during that **short amount of time**. That's where she helped me. She taught me how to **keep calm** and **keep up with my rhythm**. For the whole week, I didn't do anything else. Eventually, I got **selected** and went to Beijing and **performed** in front of **a bunch of important guests**, and I won first prize in the end. So it was really a great help. I loved her advice, as it was very **useful** and **inspiring**.

以上内容就是适合全年龄段的表达，这对于我们之后的话题合并和内容精简都是极有好处的。

### Step ④ 练习用四句话描述一个人的特别之处及个人感受

每一个人物都有许多的侧面和多元化的性格，正是这些侧面和性格让他们变得丰满和立体。然而，雅思口语考试 Part 2 的描述时间非常有限。因此，我们需要使用适量的语言来概括一个人物，而这就需要找出这个人物给你留下的最深刻的印象，以及你对他最直观的个人感受。

我们首先来看一个人的特别之处可以如何用四句话描述概括：



## Special part

1. I think she is the most **polite** and **warm-hearted** person who I know, a **real lady** in my heart; she always talks with a **smile** on her face.
2. She also **influences** others to be polite people as well.
3. **For instance**, she always says "thank you" when someone helps her.
4. What's more, she is willing to help other people in a polite way, **unconditionally**, and never **asks for return**; she is really **charming**.





大家从以上句子不难看出，并不是每一句话都要很长，可以长句、短句穿插使用。只要平均下来水平长度达到每句 15 个词左右即可。同理，我们来看个人感受的四句话描述。



### Personal feeling

1. My personality **changed** a lot after I met Wang Rui, you know. I used to be an **introvert** person, so I didn't like to **talk to people** and I didn't like to **make friends** very much.
2. This all changed after I met her, because she is a great person.
3. I **secretly** wanted to be like her, you know, **cute** and **lovely**, because everybody made friends with her and she is so **popular**, so I tried to be a **nice** person, and **participated in** the **piano club** with her.
4. I tried to talk to people more, and now I think I am quite **different**.

通过这样的概括和核心素材的准备，刚才所罗列的三个和人物有关的话题（“A friend”，“A person you know who likes to help others”，“Someone who does something very well”）肯定可以得到解答。

## 2 如何实际运用自己 DIY 的素材

有了这样的核心素材，以下题目均可迎刃而解。我们以“Describe a friend”为例，大家试试根据自己的情况造句并回答话题卡前两个问题；利用 Personal feelings 及 Intimate story 部分的内容，剩下的第三个及第四个问题也都可以迎刃而解了。



### Describe a friend.

#### You should say:

**how you first met this person**

**how long you have been friends**

**what you do together**

**and explain what you like about this person.**



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about a friend who I met in my high school, her name is Wang Rui.



We have known each other for more than 5 years. You know, we both play the piano and that's our thing.

### Intimate story

She helped me a lot by teaching me how to play the piano better. It was very important for me, as I was competing for a slot of the grand final of the national piano competition, which would be held in Beijing. It was really competitive, for only 10 of us will be chosen for it. However, I couldn't play each key perfectly in that short amount of time. That's where she helped me. She taught me how to keep calm and keep up with my rhythm. For the whole week, I didn't do anything else. Eventually, I got selected, went to Beijing and performed in front of a bunch of important guests, and I won first prize in the end. So it was really a great help. I loved her advice, as it was very useful and inspiring.

### Personal feeling

My personality changed a lot after I met Wang Rui, you know. I used to be an introvert person, so I didn't like to talk to people and I didn't like to make friends very much. This all changed after I met her, because she is a great person. I secretly wanted to be like her, you know, cute and lovely, because everybody made friends with her and she is so popular. So I tried to be a nice person, and I participated in the piano club with her. I tried to talk to people more, and now I think I am quite different.

那么换一张话题卡：“Describe someone who does something very well”，其实回答的内容基本上是一致的。



**Describe someone who does something very well.**

**You should say:**

**who the person is**

**what he/she does very well**

**how you know this person**

**and explain how this person does this skill so well.**





### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about a friend who I met in my high school. Her name is Wang Rui, and we have known each other for more than 5 years. You know, she is really good at playing the piano ever since she began to take piano lessons at the age of 6. She practiced every day and stopped at nothing.

#### Personal feeling

My personality changed a lot after I met Wang Rui, you know. I used to be an introvert person, so I didn't like to talk to people and I didn't like to make friends very much. This all changed after I met her, because she is a great person. I secretly wanted to be like her, you know, cute and lovely, because everybody made friends with her and she is so popular. So I tried to be a nice person, and I participated in the piano club with her. I tried to talk to people more, and now I think I am quite different.

#### Intimate story

She helped me a lot by teaching me how to play the piano better. It was very important for me, as I was competing for a slot of the grand final of the national piano competition, which would be held in Beijing. It was really competitive, for only 10 of us will be chosen for it. However, I couldn't play each key perfectly in that short amount of time. That's where she helped me. She taught me how to keep calm and keep up with my rhythm. For the whole week, I didn't do anything else. Eventually, I got selected, went to Beijing and performed in front of a bunch of important guests, and I won first prize in the end. So it was really a great help. I loved her advice, as it was very useful and inspiring.

She believes practice makes perfect and she is also really good at drawing lessons from all those practices. That's why she is so good at playing piano and she is not afraid of sharing. I just love her.

大家会发现这个话题中依然使用了很多核心素材的内容，对核心素材唯一的改动就是加上一句话并删掉一句话。但是第一段和最后一段则需要大家造句并回答。这属于非常正常的添加修改，大家要习惯。

那么 we 再看另一个话题卡：“Describe a person you know who likes to help others”，这个话题也可以使用我们的核心素材来解决。





**Describe a person you know who likes to help others.**

**You should say:**

**who this person is**

**how you know him or her**

**what kind of person he or she is**

**and explain why this person likes to help others.**



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about a friend who I met in my high school. Her name is Wang Rui, and we have known each other for more than 5 years. You know, we both play the piano and that's our thing.

#### Special part

I think she is the most polite and warm-hearted person who I know, a real lady in my heart, you know. She always talks with a smile on her face. She also influences others to be polite people as well. For instance, she always says "thank you" when someone helps her. What's more, she is willing to help other people in a polite way, unconditionally, and never asks for return; she is really charming.

#### Intimate story

She helped me a lot by teaching me how to play the piano better. It was very important for me, as I was competing for a slot of the grand final of the national piano competition, which would be held in Beijing. It was really competitive, for only 10 of us will be chosen for it. However, I couldn't play each key perfectly in that short amount of time. That's where she helped me. She taught me how to keep calm and keep up with my rhythm. For the whole week, I didn't do anything else. Eventually, I got selected, went to Beijing and performed in front of a bunch of important guests, and I won first prize in the end. So it was really a great help. I loved her advice, as it was very useful and inspiring.



我们再来看看这个话题卡：



**Describe a friend who you had at school.**

**You should say:**

**what he/she looked like**

**how you became friends**

**what you do/did together**

**and explain why you remember him/her so well.**



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about a friend who I met in my high school. Her name is Wang Rui, and we have known each other for more than 5 years. You know, we both play the piano and that's our thing.

#### Appearance

She is taller than most of her friends, skinny, and with Bob hair. We all call her "Panda", as she prefers black and white for clothes, and most importantly, there is a picture of panda on her pajama, which makes her look so lovely.

#### Personality

Her personality has several different layers. Usually, she looks like an artist, you know, being cool and all that. But in fact, she is very easy going. Sometimes, she would be so shy and easily blush. Unlike most people, she can get along with everyone very well.

#### Intimate story

She helped me a lot by teaching me how to play the piano better. It was very important for me, as I was competing for a slot of the grand final of the national piano competition, which would be held in Beijing. It was really competitive, for only 10 of us will be chosen for it. However, I couldn't play each key perfectly in that short amount of time. That's where she helped me. She taught me how to keep calm and keep up with my rhythm. For the whole week, I didn't do anything else. Eventually, I got selected, went to Beijing and performed in front of a bunch of important guests, and I won first prize in the end. So it was really a great help. I loved her advice, as it was very useful and inspiring.



现在大家不难发现，这样的素材重复使用率高，不让大家做无用功，可以真正做到以小博大。那么请大家用以下题目进行练习，看看是否可以顺利使用核心素材解决他们呢？



**Describe your best friend.**

**You should say:**

**how you first met this person**  
**when you see this person**  
**what kind of character he or she has**  
**what you usually do together**  
**and explain why you became such good friends.**



**Describe a teenager who you know.**

**You should say:**

**how old they are**  
**how and where you met him or her**  
**what you and this person do together**  
**what kind of person he or she is**  
**and explain how you feel about him or her.**



**Describe an occasion when someone gave you important help in a difficult situation.**

**You should say:**

**what occasion it was**  
**who helped you**  
**how he or she helped you**  
**and explain how/why this help was important to you.**



**Describe some good advice you received.**

**You should say:**

**when you received this advice**  
**who gave you the advice**  
**what the advice was**  
**and explain why you thought this advice was good.**



总体来说，以上话题的合并都非常简单，基本 90% 以上的内容均可以从核心素材中获取，但是以下几个话题大家可能会觉得比较有难度：“Describe a child you know”、“Describe a good neighbour of yours”、“Describe an old person you know who you admire”、“Describe a person you know who is good at his or her job”。针对这几个题目，大家请看我的示范。



**Describe a child you know.**

**You should say:**

**how you know him or her**

**what he or she likes to do**

**what kind of person he/she is**

**and explain how you feel about this child.**



**参考回答**

Let me tell you something about a child named Wang Rui. She is 11 years old and we live in the same community, 5 minutes' walk from each other, so we run into each other a lot. Our mothers are BFF (Best Friend Forever), so Wang Rui would stay at my home during the weekends when her mother is busy and we would do a lot of things together, such as reading comic books and playing the piano together. She is really good at playing the piano since she has been taking piano lessons from the age of 6. She practices every day and she stops at nothing.

**Appearance**

She is taller than most of her friends, skinny, and with Bob hair. We all call her “Panda”, as she prefers black and white for clothes, and most importantly, there is a picture of panda on her pajama, which makes her look so lovely.

**Personality**

Her personality has several different layers. Usually, she looks like an artist, you know, being cool and all that. But in fact, she is very easy going. Sometimes, she would be so shy and easily blush. Unlike most people, she can get along with everyone very well.

**Special part**

I think she is the most polite and warm-hearted person who I know, a real lady in my heart, you know. She always talks with a smile on her face. She also influences others to be



polite people as well. For instance, she always says “thank you” when someone helps her. What's more, she is willing to help other people in a polite way, unconditionally, and never asks for return; she is really charming.

以上段落除了第一自然段，剩余的段落依然使用了核心素材。而与这个题目相似的话题卡有几个，大家可以试着解决一下。

**Describe a friend you had when you were a child.**

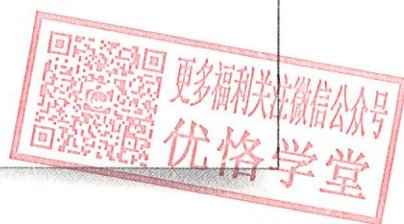
**You should say:**

**how you first met**

**how long you were friends**

**what you used to do together**

**and explain why you liked this person.**



**Describe a good neighbour of yours.**

**You should say:**

**how long you have known this neighbour**

**what sort of person they are**

**how often you see them**

**and explain what kind of relationship you have with them.**

**Describe a person who you once lived with.**

**You should say:**

**who this person is**

**how long you lived together**

**what you did together**

**and explain how well you get along with this person .**

大家不难发现，以上三个题目要使用的内容和“Describe a child you know”基本是一致的，需要修改的地方极少，这时大家便发现了核心素材的优势。

现在另一个比较难解决的问题是和“old person”相关的，我们以“Describe an old person you know who you admire”为例：





**Describe an old person you know who you admire.**

**You should say:**

**who this person is**

**how you know this person**

**what kind of person he or she is**

**and explain why you admire this person.**



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about my friend Wang Rui. She is retired and now she is a private piano teacher. Although she is almost as old as my grandmother, you know, around 70, I respect her so much. You know, we live in the same community, 5 minutes' walk from each other, so we run into each other a lot. She and my grandmother are BFF, so Wang Rui would stay at our home during the weekends and we would do a lot of things together, such as playing the piano together. She is really good at playing piano ever since she began to take piano lessons from the age of 6. She practices every day and she stops at nothing.

### Personality

Her personality has several different layers. Usually, she looks like an artist, you know, being cool and all that. But in fact, she is very easy going. Sometimes, she would be so shy and easily blush. Unlike most people, she can get along with everyone very well.

### Intimate story

My personality changed a lot after I met Wang Rui, you know. I used to be an introvert person, so I didn't like to talk to people and I didn't like to make friends very much. This all changed after I met her, because she is a great person. I secretly wanted to be like her, you know, cute and lovely, because everybody made friends with her and she is so popular. So I tried to be a nice person, and I participated in the piano club with her. I tried to talk to people more, and now I think I am quite different.

That's why I admire her.



与以上题目相似的话题有以下两个：



**Describe an interesting old person who you know.**

**You should say:**

**what this person looks like**

**what sort of person he or she is**

**how you met this person**

**and explain is/what was interesting about this person.**



**Describe a person who you would like to be similar to in the future.**

**You should say:**

**who this person is**

**how you know this person**

**what impresses you about this person**

**and explain why you would like to be similar to this person.**

还有一个话题侧重点不太一样：“Describe a person you know who is good at his or her job”。  
我们来看示范：



**Describe a person you know who is good at his or her job.**

**You should say:**

**who the person is**

**what job they do**

**what effect he or she has on other people**

**and explain why he or she impresses other people.**



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about my teacher Wang Rui, who is retired and now a private piano teacher. Although she is almost as old as my grandmother, you know, around 70, I respect her so much, because she is really good at playing piano. She began to take piano lessons at the age of 6. She practices every day and she stops at nothing.



### Intimate story

She helped me a lot by teaching me how to play the piano better. It was very important for me, as I was competing for a slot of the grand final of the national piano competition, which would be held in Beijing. It was really competitive, for only 10 of us will be chosen for it. However, I couldn't play each key perfectly in that short amount of time. That's where she helped me. She taught me how to keep calm and keep up with my rhythm. For the whole week, I didn't do anything else. Eventually, I got selected, went to Beijing and performed in front of a bunch of important guests, and I won first prize in the end. So it was really a great help. I loved her advice, as it was very useful and inspiring.

### Personal feeling

My personality changed a lot after I met Wang Rui, you know. I used to be an introvert person, so I didn't like to talk to people and I didn't like to make friends very much. This all changed after I met her, because she is a great person. I secretly wanted to be like her, you know, cute and lovely, because everybody made friends with her and she is so popular. So I tried to be a nice person, and I participated in the piano club with her. I tried to talk to people more, and now I think I am quite different. She loves to help other people so much.

练习到这里，大家不难发现雅思口语 Part 2 的部分无非是在玩“找不同”。“烤鸭”只要准确找出两个话题卡的不同之处即可顺利合并大量雅思口语话题。

例如：以下这张话题卡与“Describe a person you know who is good at his or her job”之间只差第一自然段。



**Describe the person in your family who you spend the most time with.**

**You should say:**

**who this person is**

**what kind of person he or she is**

**what you usually do together**

**and explain why you spend more time with this person than with other members of your family.**



**参考回答**

Let me tell you something about my grandmother Wang Rui, who is retired and now a private piano teacher. I respect her so much, because she is really good at playing piano ever since she began to take piano lessons from the age of 6. She practices every day and she stops at nothing.

**Special part**

I think she is the most polite and warm-hearted person who I know, a real lady in my heart, you know. She always talks with a smile on her face. She also influences others to be polite people as well. For instance, she always says “thank you” when someone helps her. What's more, she is willing to help other people in a polite way, unconditionally, and never asks for return; she is really charming.

**Personality**

Her personality has several different layers. Usually, she looks like an artist, you know, being cool and all that. But in fact, she is very easy going. Sometimes, she would be so shy and easily blush. Unlike most people, she can get along with everyone very well.

最后，我们以一个不太合群的话题卡作为收尾：“Describe a success you have had”。这个话题卡看似和人物关系不大，但是因为我们的核心素材实用性很强，所以我们依然可以使用核心素材解决这个问题。



**Describe a success you have had.**

**You should say:**

**what it was**

**when it happened**

**how easy or difficult it was to achieve**

**and explain how important this success was.**

**参考回答**

Let me tell you something about winning a competition. You know, I won a piano competition several months ago. It was really competitive and I was so happy that I did so well, as my father



said he would not allow me to waste any more time and energy on piano if I couldn't show my talent in it. It was really my last chance, so I had to practice every day for quite a while. And my piano teacher Wang Rui guided me throughout the whole experience.

### Intimate story

She helped me a lot by teaching me how to play the piano better. It was very important for me, as I was competing for a slot of the grand final of the national piano competition, which would be held in Beijing. It was really competitive, for only 10 of us will be chosen for it. However, I couldn't play each key perfectly in that short amount of time. That's where she helped me. She taught me how to keep calm and keep up with my rhythm. For the whole week, I didn't do anything else. Eventually, I got selected, went to Beijing and performed in front of a bunch of important guests, and I won first prize in the end. So it was really a great help. I loved her advice, as it was very useful and inspiring.

Now I get to keep on playing piano, so this success was extremely important for me.



### Describe a leader you admire



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about my captain of piano club, her name is Wang Rui, who I met in my high school. She is such a great leader. You know.

+Special Part

+Intimate Story

+Personal feeling



### Describe a creative person



**参考回答**

Let me tell you something about my caption of piano club, her name is Wang Rui, who I met in my high school. She is such a creative person. You know, she came up with her own ways to practice piano and she can draw many tips as practicing. I sometimes think she is even a better teacher than most teachers that I saw. And she shared her advice with me when I was most in need.

+Intimate Story

+ 结尾段



**Describe the first time when you talk to a foreigner**

**参考回答**

The first time when I talked to a foreigner, it was 2 years ago. Her name is Whitney and she was a piano teacher who my mother hired for my competition. All her instructions were English, and I had to respond in English as well. Let me tell you more in detail.

+intimate story

+Personal feeling



**Describe a person you helped**

**参考回答**

+ 首段

+Intimate story (主宾语对调)

+Personal feeling (主宾语对调)



具体如下：

Let me tell you something about a friend who I met in my high school, her name is Wang Rui. And we have known each other for more than 5 years. You know, we both play piano and that's our thing.

### Intimate story

I helped her a lot by teaching her how to play the piano better, it was very important for her, as she was competing for a slot of the grand final of the national piano competition, which would be held in Beijing. It was really competitive, or only 10 of them will be chosen for it. However, she couldn't play each key perfectly in that short amount of time. That's where I helped her. I taught her how to keep calm and keep up with her rhythm. For a whole week, I didn't do anything else. Eventually, she got selected and went to Beijing and performed in front of a bunch of important guests, and she won first prize in the end. So it was really a great help. She loved my advice, as it was very useful and inspiring.

### Personal feeling

Wang Rui's personality changed a lot after she met me, you know, she used to be a closed person, so she didn't like to talk to people and she didn't like to make friends very much. This all changed after she met me, because she thinks that I am a great person. She told me that secretly wanted to be like me, you know, cute and lovely, because everybody made friends with her and she is so popular. So she tried to be a nice person, and she participated in the piano club with me, she tried to talk to people more, and now I think she is quite different. She loves to help other people so much.



**Describe a positive change in your life**



### 参考回答

The positive change in my life is my personality.

+Personal feeling



+intimate story



**Describe a person you would like to spend some time with**



**参考回答**

+ 首段

+But she is now studying in the US. I miss her so much and I would love to spend more time with her, as she was such a good friend to me.

+intimate story

+Personal feeling



**Describe a person who move in with you**



**参考回答**

Let me tell you something about a time when my best friend Wang Rui moved in with me right before a competition. It was a really trying time, and she supported me so much that she even moved in with me. We practiced hours and hours in my bedroom, let me tell you more in detail.

+Intimate Story

She really is my best friend, you know, I don't think anyone would want to help me so much that they would move in with me. It's really inconvenient for her, you know, being away from her home, but she did this for me.

+Personal feeling



**Describe a person who moves to a new accommodation**





### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about a time when my best friend Wang Rui and I moved in together during a piano summer camp right before a competition. It was a really trying time for me, and she supported me so much that she even participated in the summer camp with me, you know, she had no need for it, as she was already so good at playing piano. We practiced hours and hours in the rehearsal room. let me tell you more in detail.

+Intimate Story

She really is my best friend, you know, I don't think anyone would want to help me so much that they would move in with me. It's really inconvenient for her, you know, being away from her home, but she did this for me.

+Personal feeling

至此，人物题这一个 Part 2 大类就先讲到这里。本小结的内容帮助大家学习了如下 26 个 Part 2 话题卡。大家有没有觉得很超值呢？

1. Describe a friend.
2. Describe someone who does something very well.
3. Describe a person you know who likes to help others.
4. Describe a friend who you had at school.
5. Describe your best friend.
6. Describe a teenager who you know.
7. Describe an occasion when someone gave you important help in a difficult situation.
8. Describe some good advice you received.
9. Describe a child you know.
10. Describe a friend you had when you were a child.
11. Describe a good neighbour of yours.
12. Describe a person who you once lived with.
13. Describe an old person you know who you admire.
14. Describe an interesting old person who you know.
15. Describe a person who you would like to be similar to in the future.
16. Describe a person you know who is good at his or her job.
17. Describe the person in your family who you spend the most time with.
18. Describe a success you have had.



19. Describe a leader you admire.
20. Describe a creative person.
21. Describe the first time when you talk to a foreigner.
22. Describe a person you helped.
23. Describe a positive change in your life.
24. Describe a person you would like to spend some time with.
25. Describe a person who move in with you.
26. Describe a person who moves to a new accommodation.

如果大家不想使用“王瑞”这个人物作为素材，只需要扫描二维码，关注东东老师的微信公众平台“谢绍东 Shadow”并回复关键词“谢绍东的 999 条英语口语素材”即可收到大量人物题素材的相关资料。



## IELTS 地点类 | 02

### 1 如何选择并制作自己 DIY 的素材

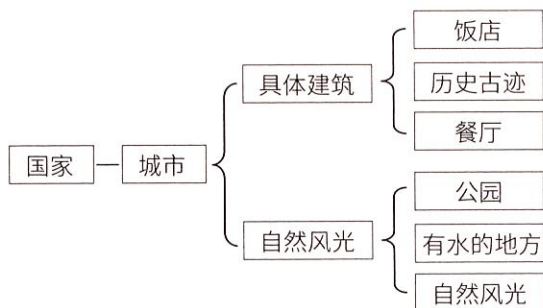
雅思口语 Part 2 中的地点题包含了大量与城市、景点、旅行等相关的话题，属于每月必考的类型，而这些话题使用的单词和思路都比较相似，所以将这些话题放在同一大类对于考生们的复习是极有好处的，核心素材一旦确认就会事半功倍。

Part 2 的地点题实际上可以分为国家城市、具象建筑和自然风光三个部分。对于外国的同学或朋友实际是比较容易的，因为建筑是他们文化的一部分，旅游也是必不可少的，所以他们的素材十分丰富。

但是对于中国学生来说这实际上是一个难点，主要是因为中国学生花费了大量的时间在学校和补习班，出游的次数很少，偶尔跟着旅行团出行也没有对所去的地方留下特别深刻的印象。因此找到属于“烤鸭”自己的核心素材其实是非常重要的。

现在我们来使用 4S 黄金法则准备一套大家可以使用的 Part 2 地点题核心素材。





### Step ① 要刻意地选择符合雅思口语考题的地点

既然 Part 2 的地点题是由国家城市、具体建筑和自然风光三个方向组成的，那么我们在寻找地点时就要找到一个城市既包含人文建筑也包含自然风光，这样我们才能把尽可能多的地点题合并到这个城市。试问，如果我们选择铁岭这个城市的话，很可能只有 3 ~ 4 个地点题可以得到解决，但是如果我们选择巴黎、洛杉矶则可能将 15 个以上的题目合并在这个城市里。

地点题中常见的话题有：“An interesting city you visited”，“A garden or park you visited and liked”，“A hotel you visited or have seen”，大家可以发现尽管它们有不同的侧重点，我们依然可以把以上话题进行合并变形，即：“An interesting city with a garden or park and a hotel that you visited”，这时细心的“烤鸭”一定会发现，只要选对了素材，还是可以用一个核心素材解决地点题中的三个方向的题目的。

大家请看一个例子：

### 例

新加坡又名“狮城”，是东南亚的一个岛国，也是大家口中常说的城市国——既是城市也是国家。新加坡是亚洲重要的金融中心之一，有许多著名的酒店、餐厅，并以名胜古迹及秀美的海景而闻名于世，是许多人旅行度假的首选。

这个地点就属于“An interesting city with a garden or park and a hotel that you visited”。像这样的城市还有很多，比如由日本的东京以及美国的纽约等城市都是很好的素材。找到这样的具备潜力的地点之后，素材 DIY 的第一步就完成了。

### Step ② 喜欢的地点选定后要多留意以下单词及信息

在地点题中，需要使用的名词和形容词非常多，相对于一般话题的名词，地点题的话题中名词难度更大，有些是专有名词，有些是外来词或者派生词，尤其是当地的一些小吃及景点的名字。所以一旦确认了地点的核心素材，一定要尽快查找需要使用的相关名词并使用。这里要提醒“烤鸭”们，如



果你是“背包客”并去过很多国家,核心素材对你往往不是很难,但是对于旅行次数不多的“烤鸭”们,地点题的准备则一定要善于利用网络资源。现在有很多旅游相关的网站和 App, 里面的介绍都包含了许多英文, 大家可以从中寻找自己需要的单词。我向大家推荐几个网站:

Agoda 英文版: [http:// www.agoda.com/](http://www.agoda.com/)

维基百科英文版: [http:// www.wikipedia.org/](http://www.wikipedia.org/)

通过准备并找到以下的内容后,不能只知道对应的单词翻译,更要针对你准备的地点,了解具体餐厅的名字、公园的名字、酒店的名字等。另外大家一定要注意地名、菜名的正确发音,现在很多的英语学习软件都具有真人发音的功能,如果你确实不知道或者不确定发音的话可以求助真人发音功能。虽然英语学习软件对于完整的句子往往发音僵硬,比较机械化,我也不建议大家模仿,但是这种软件对于单词的发音一般是很准确的,大家可以相信。

此外,准备地点类题目的核心素材时,往往可以根据地点题特有的“4E”原则来回答问题,适用于介绍任何城市或国家。“4E”就是 Economy (经济)、Entertainment (娱乐)、Environment (环境) 及 Education (教育)。

核心单词	针对新加坡这个城市的内容
城市 city	Singapore
花园 garden	Marina Sky Park
酒店 hotel	Marina Bay Sands Hotel
景点 tourist attraction/ destination	Marina Bay Sands Hotel
街道 street	Marina Bay street
餐厅 restaurant/ café	Sky on 57
地标物 landmark	merlion sculpture
经济 economy	economic centre / enterprises / economic district
娱乐 entertainment	high-end shopping centres / skyscrapers / five-star hotel / multifunctional centre / casino / theatre / museum / convention centre / swimming pool / various food flavours / souvenirs
环境 environment	views and fresh air / wild plants and flowers / tulip and fringed iris / colourful and exotic / beautiful sights
教育 education	one of the best in Asia



把同一横行的单词串在一起，这就是一句话。

**Step ③ 把以上单词串联成独立的自然段，Step 2 学会的单词马上可以用到了**

地点题中口语的素材，很多“烤鸭”容易机械性地使用单词去堆砌一些句子和答案，有的时候还会按照所谓的套路花大力气去描述一些本不重要的内容，例如：使用超过 1 分钟的时间去描述一个学校的建筑材料、屋顶、墙面及地基等内容，虽然这些都是可以描述的点，但是在这种次要的内容上花费 Part 2 总时长的 60% 是否得体？答案是否定的。

所以请大家记得，使用机械化的内容代替个人的感受，一定会让考官对你的描述如同嚼蜡。



### A city/ A country

**Singapore** is a **city-state** in Asia. It is not only famous for the fabulous **views**, but also the **high-end shopping centres** and **skyscrapers**. People consider it as the **economic centre** of the whole region and the **education** there is **one of the best in Asia**. Besides, there are a lot of well-recognised **enterprises** located in the city. What's more, it is well-known for its **various food flavours** and all kinds of **merlion sculptures** and gifts, which is amazing for travellers to buy as **souvenirs**. The merlion is the representative of the country, and it is very important for the Singaporean.



### A garden

**Marina Sky Park/ Garden** is located on the 57th floor of the **Marina Bay Sands Hotel**. There are amazing views and **fresh air**, with more than 250 kinds of different **wild plants and flowers**, including **tulip and fringed iris**, which make the garden really **colourful and exotic**. What's more, people can see the whole **economic district** of Singapore from the sky garden, and it is really stunning. When you get there, it is amazing for you to sit there and watch the amazing flowers. The most surprising part of the garden is the swimming pool in the air. It looks like a water fall and appears to be dangerous, but it is not. It really provides one perfect place for people to rest and enjoy the **beautiful sights** of the garden and the city below.



### A hotel

Marina Bay Sands of Singapore is a **five-star hotel**, which probably is also the most well-



known building in the country. It cost 60 billion US dollars to build and is a **multifunctional centre**, which includes **a casino, a theater, a museum, a restaurant and a convention centre**. But the most famous thing about it is the Marina Sky Park and the **swimming pool** called infinity pool in the air. Guests of the hotel can literally find everything that they need in the hotel without going anywhere else. Every day, thousands of tourists are waiting to go up the hotel and see the views of Singapore from the top floor. The hotel is as famous as the city itself and attracts massive people to come and visit.

大家可以注意一下，以上的内容基本使用了简单句和并列句，偶尔使用长难句（并列句和复合句），符合语法难度的 range，同时又符合 appropriate 这个感觉。这样的素材才是获得高分的根本。

#### Step ④ 练习用四句话描述当地人及个人感受

每一个城市有自己的特点，大家一定有很多感悟和想法，尤其是针对当地居民以及个人感受，但是我训练大家用四句话来描述以上两个要点，这样我们的内容才能既简明扼要，又展现亮点。虽然大家需要说或者想说的话有很多，但是 Part 2 的陈述时间只有两分钟，如何筛选并提炼自己要说话的内容也是至关重要的。

请大家看看四句话描述当地居民：



#### Local people

1. I think most people there were very nice and friendly, you know; they were genuinely good people.
2. But most importantly, they were very polite in their daily lives.
3. It was shown through really small things, such as a handshake, a smile and a helping hand when you were in need.
4. People there were true ladies and gentlemen.

接下来我们要说旅行时的个人感受了。Part 2 的个人独白中，“个人感受”是让自己与其他考生区别开来的最佳方法。地点的描述多多少少有些雷同，因为地点是不会变化的，但是每个人的感受是不同的，因此描述也会不同，大家一定要善用这一点。

现在我们来看看四句话旅行感受的示范：





### Personal feeling

1. I had a great time there and I loved every bit of that experience.
2. You know, it made me feel so relaxed and enlightened, as it is truly wonderful.
3. Even after I came back, I always think about it now and then.
4. I would love to go there one more time if I had a chance.

这样的四句话是不是既概括了个人感受又具备了个人特点呢？这样，刚才所罗列的三个和地点有关的话题（“An interesting city you visited”，“A garden or park you visited and liked”，“A hotel you visited or have seen”）肯定可以得到解答。

## 2 如何实际运用自己 DIY 的素材

有了以上这样的核心素材，下面的题目均可迎刃而解。我们以 “An interesting city you visited or lived in” 为例，大家试试把 A City/ A Country、Local people 及 Personal feeling 三个自然段连起来，是不是可以连成一篇完整且完全符合雅思口语考试高分标准的素材呢？



**Describe an interesting city you visited or lived in.**

**You should say:**

**when and where you went**

**what you saw and did there**

**who you went with**

**and explain why you enjoyed this trip.**



### 参考回答

Well, let me tell you something about Singapore as an interesting city I visited. I went there during the last summer holiday with my parents for sightseeing and the tour guide told us a lot.

#### A city/ A country

Singapore is a city-state in Asia. It is not only famous for the fabulous views, but also the high-end shopping centres and skyscrapers. People consider it as the economic centre of the whole region and the education there is one of the best in Asia. Besides, there are a lot of well-recognised enterprises located in the city. What's more, it is well-known for its



various food flavours and all kinds of merlion sculptures and gifts, which is amazing for travellers to buy as souvenirs. The merlion is the representative of the country, and it is very important for the Singaporean.

### Local people

I think most people there were very nice and friendly, you know; they were genuinely good people. But most importantly, they were very polite in their daily lives. It was shown through really small things, such as a handshake, a smile and a helping hand when you were in need. People there were true ladies and gentlemen.

### Personal feeling

I had a great time there and I loved every bit of that experience. You know, it made me feel so relaxed and enlightened, as it is truly wonderful. Even after I came back, I always think about it now and then. I would love to go there one more time if I had a chance.

经过这样精心的准备，我们对于核心素材的改动其实都是微调。例如，在以上题目中，唯一的改动就是加上两句话。所加的内容主要也是为了应对话题卡上提出而准备的素材中又没有体现的内容。

以上话题卡中开头第一、二句，因为核心素材没有直接应对的回答，所以需要考生去造句。即：“Well, let me tell you something about Singapore as an interesting city I visited. I went there during the last summer holiday with my parents for sightseeing and the tour guide told us a lot.”

大家肯定有些担心，以上文章的回答顺序没有完全按照话题卡中四个小问题的顺序回答。但是我在这里要再次指出，Part 2 的考试并不要求考生对四个问题进行顺序回答，回答顺序可以打乱，只要在收尾前全部顺利回答即可。

以下两个话题使用上面的素材也可以迎刃而解：



**Describe an interesting trip that you made.**

**You should say:**

**when and where you went**

**why you went there**

**how you travelled**

**and explain why this trip was interesting.**





**Describe a trip you went on in your childhood.**

**You should say:**

**how you travelled**

**why you went there**

**who you went with**

**and explain why you remember this trip.**

而在地点主题之下的其他题目：花园、酒店、标志性建筑等话题，也可以使用核心素材中的段落进行组合，这样大家就可以轻而易举地用新加坡这座城市来解决以下 Part 2 话题卡。



**Describe a garden or park you visited and liked.**

**You should say:**

**where it was**

**what it looked like**

**what you did there**

**and explain why you liked it.**



### 参考回答

Alright, let me tell you something about a park/ garden that I have been to, which is located in Singapore.

#### A garden

Marina Sky Park/ Garden is located on the 57th floor of the Marina Bay Sands Hotel. There are amazing views and fresh air, with more than 250 kinds of different wild plants and flowers, including tulip and fringed iris, which make the garden really colourful and exotic. What's more, people can see the whole economic district of Singapore from the sky garden, and it is really stunning. When you get there, it is amazing for you to sit there and watch the amazing flowers. The most surprising part of the garden is the swimming pool in the air. It looks like a water fall and appears to be dangerous, but it is not. It really provides one perfect place for people to rest and enjoy the beautiful sights of the garden and the city below.



**Local people**

I think most people there were very nice and friendly, you know, they were genuinely good people. But most importantly, they were very polite in their daily lives. It was shown through really small things, such as a handshake, a smile and a helping hand when you were in need. People there were true ladies and gentlemen.

**Personal feeling**

I had a great time there and I loved every bit of that experience. You know, it made me feel so relaxed and enlightened, as it is truly wonderful. Even after I came back, I always think about it now and then. I would love to go there one more time if I had a chance.



**Describe a hotel you visited or have seen.**

**You should say:**

**where it was**

**what the name of the hotel was**

**what the hotel looked like**

**and explain why people choose to stay at this hotel.**

**参考回答**

Alright, let me tell you something about a hotel that I have been to, which is located in Singapore. It looked like a ship flying in the sky.

**A hotel**

Marina Bay Sands of Singapore is a five-star hotel, which probably is also the most well-known building in the country. It cost 60 billion US dollars to build and is a multifunctional centre, which includes a casino, a theater, a museum, a restaurant and a convention centre. But the most famous thing about it is the Marina Sky Park and the swimming pool in the air. Guests of the hotel can literally find everything that they need in the hotel without going anywhere else. Every day, thousands of tourists are waiting to go up the hotel and see the views of Singapore from the top floor. The hotel is as famous as the city itself and attracts massive people to come and visit.



### Local people

I think most people there were very nice and friendly, you know, they were genuinely good people. But most importantly, they were very polite in their daily lives. It was shown through really small things, such as a handshake, a smile and a helping hand when you were in need. People there were true ladies and gentlemen.

### Personal feeling

I had a great time there and I loved every bit of that experience. You know, it made me feel so relaxed and enlightened, as it is truly wonderful. Even after I came back, I always think about it now and then. I would love to go there one more time if I had a chance.

以下两个话题卡与上一张话题的答案基本一致，在这里不赘述。



**Describe a modern building that you think is interesting.**

**You should say:**

**where it is**

**what it is used for**

**what it looks like**

**how you know about this building**

**and explain what you think is interesting about this building.**



**Describe an important building in your country.**

**You should say:**

**where it is**

**who visits this building or monument**

**why it is historically important**

**and explain how you feel about this building or monument.**

总体来说，以上话题的合并都非常简单，但是有四个话题大家可能会觉得比较有难度：“A café or restaurant that you know”、“A trip you would like to go on with a friend”、“A place you have been to that had a lot of water that you liked”、“A way to relax that you find effective”。针对这四个题目，大家请看我的示范。





**Describe a café or restaurant that you know.**

**You should say:**

**where it is**

**how often you go there**

**what kind of food they serve there**

**who you usually go there with**

**and explain why you like to eat at this place.**



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about a restaurant in Singapore. There is a restaurant in Marina Bay street, which is called Sky on 57. I went there once with my parents when I was a child and it truly attracted me, so I wish I could go there again soon. What I liked most about it are the chocolates, as all of them looked very different and colourful. Besides, most of the chocolates could hardly be seen in other countries and places. I also fancied the waiters and waitresses in the restaurant.

#### Local people

I think most people there were very nice and friendly, you know, they were genuinely good people. But most importantly, they were very polite in their daily lives. It was shown through really small things, such as a handshake, a smile and a helping hand when you were in need. People there were true ladies and gentlemen.

#### Personal feeling

I had a great time there and I loved every bit of that experience. You know, it made me feel so relaxed and enlightened, as it is truly wonderful. Even after I came back, I always think about it now and then. I would love to go there one more time if I had a chance.

这个话题的第一段需要考生进行创作，但是后期的两个自然段就再次回到了核心素材，这样大家的准备压力就会瞬间减小。





**Describe a trip you would like to go on.**

**You should say:**

**where you would go**

**how do you know about this place**

**how you would go there**

**and explain what you like most about this place.**



### 参考回答

OK, let me tell you something about a trip that I plan to go in the future. I would love to go to Singapore. One of my friend have been there once, so he told me a lot of things about the city and I saw a lot of photos on his iPad and, you know, I liked it so much. I even did a little research for it. Now all I can think about is flying there as early as possible. I will definitely stay in the hotel that my friend stayed. It is so good.

#### A hotel

Marina Bay Sands of Singapore is a five-star hotel, which probably is also the most well-known building in the country. It cost 60 billion US dollars to build and is a multifunctional centre, which includes a casino, a theater, a museum, a restaurant and a convention centre. But the most famous thing about it is the Marina Sky Park and the swimming pool in the air. Guests of the hotel can literally find everything that they need in the hotel without going anywhere else. Every day, thousands of tourists are waiting to go up the hotel and see the views of Singapore from the top floor. The hotel is as famous as the city itself and attracts massive people to come and visit.

I also like the park in the hotel. According to my little survey, it's really worth visiting.

#### A garden

Marina Sky Park/ Garden is located on the 57th floor of the Marina Bay Sands Hotel. There are amazing views and fresh air, with more than 250 kinds of different wild plants and flowers, including tulip and fringed iris, which make the garden really colourful and exotic. What's more, people can see the whole economic district of Singapore from the sky garden, and it is really stunning. When you get there, it is amazing for you to sit there and



watch the amazing flowers. The most surprising part of the garden is the swimming pool in the air. It looks like a water fall and appears to be dangerous, but it is not. It really provides one perfect place for people to rest and enjoy the beautiful sights of the garden and the city below.

I guess you can say I plan to go to a country because of a hotel!

大家会发现我们依然使用了大量的核心素材来解决问题。除了第一段需要大家自己造句，倒数第二段需要删除一些内容，大部分内容都可以使用核心素材解决。

这个话题和上一个话题几乎是一样的，请大家使用上面的素材练习一下。



**Describe a place in the world that you would like to travel to.**

**You should say:**

**how you would go there**

**how you know about this place**

**what the scenery is like in this place**

**and explain why you would like to go to this place.**



**Describe a place you have been to that had a lot of water that you liked.**

**You should say:**

**where this place was**

**what you did at this place**

**why you went there**

**and explain why you liked this place.**



### 参考回答

Actually, I personally think the swimming pool on the 57th floor of the famous hotel Marina Bay Sands is the most impressive place that I know in Singapore. Of course, Singapore is beautiful and all, but I love this place the most, because the views that had been formed by the water and sky is really a one-million-dollar view. The swimming pool is dangerously attractive, and its



visual effect is fascinating. It looks like edgeless and makes people feel that they may fall off over accidentally. The guests of the hotel can swim in it and most of them would take photos there. Every tourist wants to stay in the water and listen to the sound of wind as well as enjoying the water views.

#### Local people

I think most people there were very nice and friendly, you know; they were genuinely good people. But most importantly, they were very polite in their daily lives. It was shown through really small things, such as a handshake, a smile and a helping hand when you were in need. People there were true ladies and gentlemen.

#### Personal feeling

I had a great time there and I loved every bit of that experience. You know, it made me feel so relaxed and enlightened, as it is truly wonderful. Even after I came back, I always think about it now and then. I would love to go there one more time if I had a chance.

这个话题与上一个话题基本一致，请大家自己练习使用上面的内容进行回答。



**Describe a place where people go to swim.**

**You should say:**

**where this place is**

**what this place looks like**

**what kinds of people go there**

**and explain why people choose to go to this place.**

大家会发现我们依然使用了大量的核心素材来解决问题。除了第一段需要大家自己造句，大部分内容都可以通过核心素材解决。

接下来我们来看两个看似与“地点题”不沾边的话题卡，其实它们也是可以合并到地点题里的。





**Describe a way to relax that you find effective.**

**You should say:**

**what you do**

**when you usually do this**

**where you usually do it**

**who is usually with you at this place**

**and explain why this is relaxing for you.**



### 参考回答

My favorite way of relaxing is travelling, and I always think it is amazing to be able to go to other countries or cities, because I can see a lot of different things, meet the local people, learn their culture and taste the delicious food. I felt refreshed every time when I came back from a holiday trip. I like to go abroad with my families and friends. Communication with the local people is a very effective way to release the pressure. For instance, I went to Singapore once.

#### Local people

I think most people there were very nice and friendly, you know, they were genuinely good people. But most importantly, they were very polite in their daily lives. It was shown through really small things, such as a handshake, a smile and a helping hand when you were in need. People there were true ladies and gentlemen.

#### Personal feeling

I had a great time there and I loved every bit of that experience. You know, it made me feel so relaxed and enlightened, as it is truly wonderful. Even after I came back, I always think about it now and then. I would love to go there one more time if I had a chance.

So travelling around the world is the best way to relax in my mind.

另有一个话题，也可以使用以上内容来回答：





**Describe a happy memory from your childhood.**

**You should say:**

**what the memory is**

**when it happened**

**where you were at the time**

**who was with you**

**and explain why it is a happy memory.**



### 参考回答

I want to tell you something about the trip to Singapore. Singapore is an amazing place to travel, and it is one of the most famous tourist spot of Asia. I went there when I was a child with my families and it was such a happy memory for me, as it was my first time being abroad. We stayed in a very fancy hotel and it was truly fantastic.

#### A hotel

Marina Bay Sands of Singapore is a five-star hotel, which probably is also the most well-known building in the country. It cost 60 billion US dollars to build and is a multifunctional centre, which includes a casino, a theater, a museum, a restaurant and a convention centre. But the most famous thing about it is the Marina Sky Park and the swimming pool in the air. Guests of the hotel can literally find everything that they need in the hotel without going anywhere else. Every day, thousands of tourists are waiting to go up the hotel and see the views of Singapore from the top floor. The hotel is as famous as the city itself and attracts massive people to come and visit.

#### Local people

I think most people there were very nice and friendly, you know; they were genuinely good people. But most importantly, they were very polite in their daily lives. It was shown through really small things, such as a handshake, a smile and a helping hand when you were in need. People there were true ladies and gentlemen.



**Personal feeling**

I had a great time there and I loved every bit of that experience. You know, it made me feel so relaxed and enlightened, as it is truly wonderful. Even after I came back, I always think about it now and then. I would love to go there one more time if I had a chance.

除了需要删除 A Hotel 部分内容，其他基本都是核心素材。

\* **新加坡 infinity pool****A place near water****参考回答**

A place near water that I want to talk about is the Marina Bay Sands Hotel fronting Marina Bay in Singapore. You can see the CBD skyline, City Hall, and Esplanade from the Sky Park on top of the hotel or right outside the window. It only takes you one minute to the bay, and you can do lots of things there, such as jogging, cycling, or just sit there, enjoy the beautiful sea views and the passion from the people who are doing water sports, like sailing boats and yachting.

+A Hotel

+Personal feeling

+ Local people

**Describe a place you visited that had been affected by pollution****参考回答**

Singapore has been affected by pollution recently. I was only 7 years old when I went there for the first time. And I liked the city so much. You know, it was very clean. There were amazing views



and fresh air, with a lot of tropical trees and wild flowers, which make the city really peaceful and vibrant. It's amazing for you to sit on the grass and have a picnic in a sunny afternoon. It really provides a perfect place for people to rest and enjoy the peace and silence in the city.

**+Personal feeling**

But last summer holiday, I was a little bit surprised by what I saw after I went there with my father. Singapore, though with very strict laws, inevitably suffers from the consequences of having too many tourists. We went to the same place, but it was not as neat as before. I saw paper bags laying on the ground and someone spilled drinks on a chair. I even saw a plastic bag floating in the fountain. As a result, I think Singapore is affected by the pollution.



**Describe a law about environment (同上)**



**参考回答**

I think my favourite law about the environment protection is limiting the number of tourists in certain area in China. Take Mountain Emei for example.

It has been affected by pollution recently. I was only 7 years old when I went there for the first time. And I liked there so much. You know, it was very clean. There were amazing views and fresh air, with a lot of tropical trees and wild flowers, which make the mountain really peaceful and vibrant. It's amazing for you to sit on the grass and have a picnic in a sunny afternoon. It really provides a perfect place for people to rest and enjoy the peace and silence away from the city.

But last summer holiday, I was a little bit surprised by what I saw after I went there with my father. Mountain Emei, though with very strict laws, inevitably suffers from the consequences of having too many tourists. We went to the same place, but it was not as neat as before. I saw paper bags laying on the ground and someone spilled drinks on a chair. I even saw a plastic bag floating in the river. As a result, I think Mountain Emei is affected by the pollution.

Hopefully, with the help of this law, I think Mountain Emei will regain its quietness and peace in a very short amount of time.





**Describe one time when the weather changed your plan**



### 参考回答

My father and I were affected by the weather when we were in Singapore. We planned to go to Thailand the next day, but we were totally affected by the storm. I have never seen anything like it before. The storm was so huge that some local people were forced to move to a more secured location. Luckily, we were in the city center, but we had to stay in the hotel for a day, and of course our flight was cancelled as well. My father was tangled by work, so he stayed in the hotel room and I decided to go on my own little discovery trip. You know, to find out more about the Marina Bay Sands Hotel that we stayed in.

It puts you near the CBD district. Guests of the hotel can literally find anything that they need in the hotel without going anywhere else. But the most famous thing about it is the infinity pool and sky park, unfortunately, both of which were closed at the time. So I helped book our dinner in the hotel. You know, there is a restaurant called 1983 A Taste of Nanyang, which sounds very local. No wonder the hotel is very famous among tourists and business travelers.

After 2 days, we were finally able to fly to Thailand, but I didn't feel bored at all. Thanks to the hotel.



**Describe a house or flat that you like(except your home)**



### 参考回答

Alright, let me tell you something about my aunt's home in Singapore. Her home is a flat in the city center, and I love her neighbors so much.



### Local people

I think most people there were very nice and friendly, you know, they were just good people. But most importantly, they were very polite in their daily lives. It showed in really small things, such as a handshake, a smile and a helping hand when you were in need. People there were true ladies and gentlemen.

Also, her home is located near a very famous hotel called Marina Bay Sands Hotel, so we had a lot of entertainment while we stayed in Singapore. It only took us 15 minute to walk there. So the location of her home is my favourite part. We went to the infinity pool.

### Swimming pool

Actually, I personally think the swimming pool on the 57th floor of the famous hotel called Marina Bay Sands is the most impressive place that I know in Singapore. Of course, Singapore is beautiful and all, but I love this place the most, because the views that had been formed by the water and the sky is really a one million dollar view. The whole swimming pool is dangerously attractive, because it looks like the edge of a waterfall and you feel like you will fall off over accidentally. As a result, the visual effects are fascinating. The guests of the hotel can swim in it and most of them would take photos there. Every tourist wants to stay in the water and listen to the sound of the wind as well as enjoying the water views.

### Personal feeling

I had a great time there and I loved every bit of that experience. You know, it made me feel so relaxed and enlightened, as it is truly wonderful. Even after I come back, I always think about it now and then. I would love to go there one more time if I had a chance.



### Describe an App



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about an app called Agoda, which is an Online Travel Agency based in Singapore that offers accommodation booking services through its mobile app. It offers its



service in 38 different languages, with various types of accommodations included in its inventory, from hotels and b&bs to beach resorts, rest houses and homestays. I like Agoda so much, as it helped me a lot before I went to Singapore. I found and booked my hotel, Marina Bay Sands Hotel, on this app. It really provides all the information that one needed.

#### +Hotel

Someone commented like this:

#### +Personal Feeling

This comment helped me make up my mind to stay in this hotel, so I think this app is really useful.

至此，地点题这一个 Part 2 大类就先讲到这里。本小结的内容帮助大家学习了如下 20 个 Part 2 话题卡。大家有没有觉得很超值呢？

1. Describe an interesting city you visited.
2. Describe an interesting trip that you made.
3. Describe a trip you went on in your childhood.
4. Describe a garden or park you visited and liked.
5. Describe a hotel you visited or have seen.
6. Describe a modern building that you think is interesting.
7. Describe an important building in your country.
8. Describe a café or restaurant that you know.
9. Describe a trip you would like to go on with a friend.
10. Describe a place in the world that you would like to travel to.
11. Describe a place you have been to that had a lot of water that you liked.
12. Describe a place where people go to swim.
13. Describe a way to relax that you find effective.
14. Describe a happy memory from your childhood.
15. A place near water.
16. Describe a place you visited that had been affected by pollution.
17. Describe a law about environment.
18. Describe one time when the weather changed your plan.
19. Describe a house or flat that you like(except your home).





20. Describe an App.

如果大家不想使用新加坡这个地点作为素材，只需扫描二维码，关注东东老师的微信公众平台“谢绍东 Shadow”并回复关键词“谢绍东的 999 条英语口语素材”即可收到大量地点题素材的相关资料。



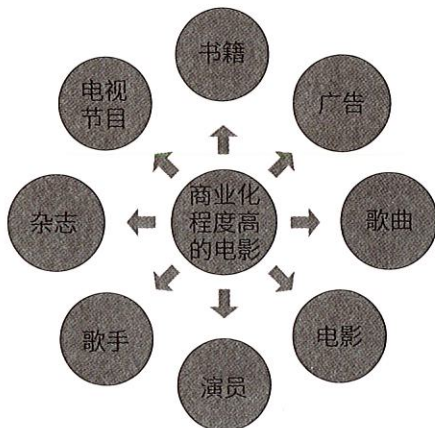
## 03 | IELTS 媒体类

### 1 如何选择并制作自己 DIY 的素材

大部分老师只把 Part 2 的题目分为四大类，所以从媒体题这一类题目开始就是我个人的分类方法了。我之所以没有按照传统的 Part 2 分类方法是因为那样分类范围过大，不利于话题合并。而如果比目前的八大类分类更多则失去了话题合并的意义。这样，大家准备八个主题即可解决 Part 2 中 99% 以上的内容。

媒体题包含了各种与媒体相关的内容，电影、音乐、书籍、杂志、明星、歌手等话题都包含在媒体这一大类当中，它们的相关程度高、可合并性强，放在一起给考生减少了很多的压力。

媒体题又要使用 4S 黄金法则啦，我们还是按照从单词到句子再到段落，从基础到高级的顺序去准备。





**Step ① 要刻意地选择符合雅思口语考题的电影**

一般情况下, Part 2 的话题卡很少让大家轻松过关, 所以极少有考生幸运地抽到类似“Describe a movie you **recently** watched”的题目。大部分考生往往非常不幸地抽到这类题目的变形, 这样难度系数一下子提升了至少 30%。常见的 2 种题目变形是: “Describe a **foreign** movie that you watched”, “Describe a movie **based on the real person or event**”。选材的重要性在这里就体现出来了。

我建议大家使用以上三个题目的综合体来准备: “A **foreign** movie **based on real person or event** that you **recently** watched” 这样以上三种题目的关键点就都被涵盖在内了。大家请看一个例子:

**例**

《沙漠之花 / Desert Flower》这部电影是根据出生在索马里的黑人模特 Waris Dirie 的个人自传体小说改编而成的电影。Waris Dirie 的童年异常艰难, 出生在索马里沙漠的她用非凡的勇气反抗生活的压迫和不公, 最终成为世界顶级名模。

这部电影就属于“A **foreign** movie **based on real person or event** that you **recently** watched”。像这样的电影还有很多, 比如《当幸福来敲门》以及《自闭历程》等电影都是很好的素材。找到这样的电影之后, 素材 DIY 的第一步就完成了。

**Step ② 喜欢的电影选定后要多留意以下单词及信息**

在媒体题目中, 大部分单词都是名词, 其实名词可以说是最简单的一种单词, 因为它不像动词有时态及人称的变化, 也不像形容词及副词有搭配的限制, 只要背会就可以使用。真可谓是“屌丝”逆袭雅思考试之必备武器啊。以下的内容不能只知道对应的单词翻译, 更要针对你准备的电影, 了解具体的人名、时间、演员的名字等。另外大家一定要注意导演、演员的名字发音必须是正确的。现在很多的英语学习软件都具有真人发音的功能, 如果你确实不知道或者不确定的话可以求助真人发音功能。虽然英语学习软件对于完整的句子往往发音僵硬, 比较机械化, 我也不建议大家模仿。但是这种软件对于单词的发音一般是很准确的, 大家可以相信。

核心单词	针对电影《沙漠之花》的内容
导演 director	Sherry Horman
主演 main actor/ actress	Liya Kebede
上映年份 year	2009



原著作者 author	Waris Dirie
奖项 award	German Film Awards
票房 box office	not a blockbuster
电影类型 type of movies	based on the autobiographical book
主题曲 theme song	Let's Stick Together
原声音乐 OST (original Sound Track)	Desert Flower
歌手 singer	Slackwax and Anna Leyne

把同一横行的单词串在一起，这就是一句话。

### Step ③ 把以上单词串联成独立的自然段，Step 2 学会的单词马上可以用到了

口语的素材，其流畅、自然、适合表达是最根本的原则。任何过于热衷炫技的考生都会适得其反，很可能在词汇及语法的 accuracy 这一项被扣分。

一定要使用简单句、并列句及复合句相结合的方式来完成以下素材的准备。大家可以每隔三句话左右就用一个并列句或者复合句。这只是只是一个建议，不一定非要这么精确，但是希望这样的描述能够让大家都明白复合句的使用频率。有些句型虽然不是复合句，其实也能起到很好的加分效果，比如被动语态等。

大家一定要记住，雅思口语的素材与写作的素材差别非常之大，过多的长难句并不能起到加分的效果，反而会给人一种 inappropriate 的感觉。

比如你想表达，“我觉得这部电影太好看了。”我们可以看看以下两个例句，大家来体会一下。

自然地表达方式：“I truly think this is an amazing movie.”

造作的表达方式：“This is that kind of movie which I think is incredibly wonderful to watch.”

第一句话简洁自然，适合口语交流。第二句话矫揉造作，就像在演戏，考官毫无疑问会更喜欢第一种表达方式。如果你通篇都是第二种句型，那你的口语成绩是绝不会突破 6 分的。



### A Book/ Movie

**Desert Flower** is an **autobiographical book** published in 1998. It is about the life of famous Somali model, **Waris Dirie**. In **2009**, the book was adapted into a movie, which is also called the *Desert Flower*. It was **directed** by **Sherry Horman**. The supermodel **Liya Kebede** played Waris. It was not a **blockbuster**, but it had a deep influence. It won the **German Film**



**Award in 2010.** The story of the book and the movie is similar and both of them are amazing.



### Song/ Singer

I love a lot of songs, but one song did give me a deep impression, as it is very meaningful. Its name is ***Let's Stick Together***, an **original sound track** from *The Dessert Flower*, performed by **Slackwax and Anna Leyne**. The song is of typical modern style. I like it very much, because it suits the mood of the movie and **Waris Dirie's** spirit very well. **Waris** had a horrible past and her life was painful, but she never gave up, never gave in, and I was totally encouraged by her. In the film, the song came up in the right place and at the right time.

大家可以注意一下，以上的内容基本使用了简单句和并列句，偶尔使用长难句（并列句和复合句），符合语法难度的 range，同时又符合 appropriate 这个感觉。这样的素材才是获得高分的根本。

#### Step ④ 练习用四句话简单介绍一下电影并描述个人感受

每一部电影都有很多细节及华丽的场面，如果逐一描述肯定会让大家心力交瘁，而口语考官也不想听全部的剧情，所以大家只需要说出一些给你留下深刻影响的片段即可。大家也可以只说开头、转折、发展及结果这四个点，每个点用一句话说明，这样会有很好的概括效果。首先大家可以看看以下四句话的剧情：



### Plot

1. Waris Dirie was born in Somalia in 1965. At the age of thirteen, she fled her family in order to escape from an arranged marriage to a man about 60 years old.
2. She landed in London and worked for wealthy relatives, later as well as a local McDonald's, after the closure of the Somalian Embassy caused by the war that had broken out in her country.
3. By chance, Waris was discovered by a photographer, who helped her to appear on the cover of a Calendar.
4. From then on, her modeling career took off.

接下来我们要说观影感受了。Part 2 的个人独白中，“观影感受”往往是体现个人品位及价值观的好机会，而抒发个人感受的单词和句子往往又特别简单，这样既能让考官听明白考生的想法，而考生在表达时也不费力，同时提前准备好的“观影感受”还能帮助考生占掉一段个人独白的时间以减小



一分钟准备时的压力，这确实是一举多得的好手段。现在我们来看看用四句话表达观影感受的示范：



### Personal feeling

1. I was so inspired by the story, because the heroine went through all the darkness and shadows in her life, but she never gave up.
2. When she looked back, she viewed this black period as the gift that had helped her to be stronger.
3. I want to be as strong as her, you know, being able to conquer all the hardship in my life.
4. Just thinking about what she has gone through, I will realize the hardship or obstacles in my life are really trivial.

这样的四句话是不是既概括了剧情及个人感受又短小精干呢？这样，刚才所罗列的三个和电影有关的话题（“Describe a movie you recently watched”、“Describe a foreign movie that you watched”、“Describe a movie based on the real person or event”）肯定可以得到解答。

## 2 如何实际运用自己 DIY 的素材

有了以上这样的核心素材，以下题目均可迎刃而解。我们以“A Book You Would Recommend”为例，大家试着把 A Book/ Movie、Plot 及 Personal feeling 三个自然段连起来，是不是可以连成一篇完整且完全符合雅思口语考试高分标准的素材呢？



**Describe a book you recently read that you would recommend to others.**

**You should say:**

**what book it was**

**what the book was about**

**why you read it**

**what you learned from this book**

**and explain why you would (like to) recommend it.**



### 参考回答

Well, let me tell you something about a book called *Desert Flower*. I just read it after I watched the movie based on it.



**A Book/ Movie**

*Desert Flower* is an autobiographical book published in 1998. It is about the life of famous Somali model, Waris Dirie. In 2009, the book was adapted into a movie, which is also called the *Desert Flower*. It was directed by Sherry Horman. The supermodel Liya Kebede played Waris. It was not a blockbuster, but it had a deep influence. It won the German Film Award in 2010. The story of the book and the movie is similar and both of them are amazing.

**Plot**

Waris Dirie was born in Somalia in 1965. At the age of thirteen, she fled her family in order to escape from an arranged marriage to a man about 60 years old. She landed in London and worked for wealthy relatives, later as well as a local McDonald's, after the closure of the Somalian Embassy caused by the war that had broken out in her country. By chance, Waris was discovered by a photographer, who helped her to appear on the cover of a Calendar. From then on, her modeling career took off.

**Personal feeling**

I was so inspired by the story, because the heroine went through all the darkness and shadows in her life, but she never gave up. When she looked back, she viewed this black period as the gift that had helped her to be stronger. I want to be as strong as her, you know, being able to conquer all the hardship in my life. Just thinking about what she has gone through, I will realize the hardship or obstacles in my life are really trivial.

经过这样精心的准备，我们对于核心素材的改动其实都是微调。例如，在以上题目中，唯一的改动就是加上一句话并删掉一句话。

加上的话是开头第一句，这个句子通常都需要考生去造句。大家一定要记得开头点题，我非常不推荐大家在开场浪费太多的时间，单刀直入的对主题进行阐述永远是更好的选择，例如我们开头只用两句话就完成了点题的工作：“Well, let me tell you something about a book called *Desert Flower*. I just read it after I watched the movie based on it.”

省略的话是与电影有关的描述，因为这个描述与本话题相关性低。“It is directed by Sherry Horman. The super model Liya Kebede plays Waris. It is not a blockbuster, but it had a deep influence. It was awarded by the German Film Award.”

这样的素材即简单好背又可以体现大家自己的想法，是冲击高分的必备良品。相信大家对于媒体



题核心素材的使用已经非常熟悉了，那么请大家用以下题目进行练习，看看是否可以顺利解决它们。



**Describe a book that you enjoyed reading.**

**You should say:**

**what the book was**

**what was in this book**

**why you read it**

**and explain what effect the book had on you.**



**Describe a book you enjoyed when you were a child.**

**You should say:**

**what kind of book it was**

**whether it had pictures**

**what the book was about**

**and explain how (why) this book was special to you.**



**Describe a book you recently read that you would like to read again.**

**You should say:**

**what the book was about**

**why you read it**

**what you learned from this book**

**and explain why you would like to read it again.**

而在媒体主题之下的其他题目：电影、歌曲、乐队、歌手等，只要将上述内容稍作修改，大家就可以用 Waris Dirie 的故事轻松解决以下话题卡。

- Describe a meaningful song.
- Describe a popular band or singer.

另外，很多同学喜欢把“名人”放到 Part 2 的“人物题”中，但是大家会发现这一类题目其实和常见的人物题（朋友、老人、同学、邻居等）话题没有任何共同之处。我们应该按照话题卡所需要的核心素材分类，而不是简单地按照题目主题分类，所以我建议把以下名人相关话题分类至媒体题大类。大家就会发现这样的分类特别的合理。请大家试试用 Waris Dirie 的故事解决以下题目。

- Describe a famous foreign person.
- Describe a foreign film you enjoyed.
- Describe a person who has an interesting job.



- Describe a successful person.

总体来说，以上话题的合并都非常简单，但是有三个话题大家可能会觉得比较有难度：“A Magazine”、“A Television Program You Like”、“An Advertisement”。针对这三那个题目，大家请看我的示范。



**Describe a magazine or newspaper that you like to (or, often) read.**

**You should say:**

**what magazine or newspaper it is**

**what the magazine or newspaper is about**

**how often you read it**

**what kinds of people generally read this magazine or newspaper**

**and explain why you like to read it.**



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about the *China Screen* (《中国银幕》), which is my favorite movie magazine. It introduces a lot of wonderful films to us, most of which are domestic movies, but sometimes there are also the latest foreign films. Young people like me practically read it every day, because we can get amazing recommendation about movies. For instance, my favorite movie *Desert Flower* was recommended by it.

#### A Book/ Movie

*Desert Flower* is an autobiographical book published in 1998. It is about the life of famous Somali model, Waris Dirie. In 2009, the book was adapted into a movie, which is also called the *Desert Flower*. It was directed by Sherry Horman. The super model Liya Kebede played Waris. It was not a blockbuster, but it had a deep influence. It won the German Film Award in 2010. The story of the book and the movie is similar and both of them are amazing.

The magazine also talked a lot about the plot. What's more, it introduced quite a bit



about the background information. I watched *Desert Flower* after I read the article, and I was not disappointed. I can still remember the comment from the article, which is really professional and moving. That's also why I like it. The author wrote:

#### Personal feeling

"I was so inspired by the story, because the heroine went through all the darkness and shadows in her life, but she never gave up. When she looked back, she viewed this black period as the gift that had helped her to be stronger. I want to be as strong as her, you know, being able to conquer all the hardship in my life. Just thinking about what she has gone through, I will realize the hardship or obstacles in my life are really trivial."

大家会发现我们依然使用了大量的核心素材来解决问题。A Book/ Movie 中不相关的内容已经用删除线体现，大家请注意。



**Describe a TV program that you like to watch.**

**You should say:**

**what type of program it is**

**when you watch it (or, how often you watch it)**

**what the contents of the program are**

**and explain what you learn from this program.**



#### 参考回答

Speaking of a TV program, *Late Show with David Letterman* is definitely my all-time favorite, which is a very popular talk show in the US. It invites many guests to come on the stage and share their life experience with the audiences. Although it is a late night show, it has a huge fan base. When a star appears in a new movie or a singer has a new album, they will come to the show. For instance, in 2011, David Letterman interviewed the super model Waris Dirie, after her autobiographical book had been adapted into a movie called *Desert Flower*. And she shared a lot of stories about herself.



**Plot**

Waris Dirie was born in Somalia in 1965. At the age of thirteen, she fled her family in order to escape from an arranged marriage to a man about 60 years old. She landed in London and worked for wealthy relatives, later as well as a local McDonald's, after the closure of the Somalian Embassy caused by the war that had broken out in her country. By chance, Waris was discovered by a photographer, who helped her to appear on the cover of a Calendar. From then on, her modeling career took off.

**Personal feeling**

I was so inspired by the story, because the heroine went through all the darkness and shadows in her life, but she never gave up. When she looked back, she viewed this black period as the gift that had helped her to be stronger. I want to be as strong as her, you know, being able to conquer all the hardship in my life. Just thinking about what she has gone through, I will realize the hardship or obstacles in my life are really trivial.

I was moved by this program, and that's why I like this TV show so much.



**Describe a radio program that you find interesting.**

**You should say:**

**what this program is**

**when and where you listen to this program**

**what the contents of the program are**

**and explain why you like this program.**

**参考回答**

My favourite radio program is called *More to Learn of CRI*, aka China Radio International. Some of the reoccurring hosts may introduce a lot of wonderful movies, so I have learned many meaningful films through this program. I think the taste and the choice of this program suits me well. For instance, I got to know my favourite movie called the *Dessert Flower*, which is based on Waris Dirie's autobiographical book. In the program when they were introducing the movie, they also shared a lot of stories about Waris Dirie. I learned a lot about this strong woman.



### Plot

Waris Dirie was born in Somalia in 1965. At the age of thirteen, she fled her family in order to escape from an arranged marriage to a man about 60 years old. She landed in London and worked for wealthy relatives, later as well as a local McDonald's, after the closure of the Somalian Embassy caused by the war that had broken out in her country. By chance, Waris was discovered by a photographer, who helped her to appear on the cover of a Calendar. From then on, her modeling career took off.

### Personal feeling

I was so inspired by the story, because the heroine went through all the darkness and shadows in her life, but she never gave up. When she looked back, she viewed this black period as the gift that had helped her to be stronger. I want to be as strong as her, you know, being able to conquer all the hardship in my life. Just thinking about what she has gone through, I will realize the hardship or obstacles in my life are really trivial.

I was moved by this program, and that's why I like this radio show so much.

以上两个话题，除了第一自然段和最后一句话，剩余的两段依然取自我们的核心素材。



**Describe an advertisement that made you (caused you to) buy something.**

**You should say:**

**what kind of advertisement it was**

**when and where you saw (or heard) this advertisement**

**what product (or service) it advertised**

**what the advertisement said**

**and explain why you decided to buy that product.**



### 参考回答

My favourite advertisement is from the movie *Dessert Flower*. It was a very short movie trailer on the Internet, and it was a well-designed movie advertisement. Waris, the heroine, stands in a desert with black surf that covers her whole body. Everything seems to be so small and it really makes you feel the loneliness and hopelessness from her, but you can also sense the fire in her eyes. I love the advertisement, as it shows the true meaning of the film. People can get much



information from it, as there are key words flashing while the trailer is playing.

### A Book/ Movie

*Desert Flower* is an autobiographical book published in 1998. It is about the life of famous Somali model, Waris Dirie. In 2009, the book was adapted into a movie, which is also called the *Desert Flower*. It was directed by Sherry Horman. The super model Liya Kebede played Waris. It was not a blockbuster, but it had a deep influence. It won the German Film Award in 2010. The story of the book and the movie is similar and both of them are amazing.

After watching the advertisement, I googled Waris Dirie and bought not only the DVD but also the book of hers. Her life was truly a struggle, but she powered through it in the end.

### Personal feeling

I was so inspired by the story, because the heroine went through all the darkness and shadows in her life, but she never gave up. When she looked back, she viewed this black period as the gift that had helped her to be stronger. I want to be as strong as her, you know, being able to conquer all the hardship in my life. Just thinking about what she has gone through, I will realize the hardship or obstacles in my life are really trivial.

大家会发现我们依然使用了大量的核心素材来解决问题。A Book/ Movie 中不相关的内容已经用删除线表示，大家请注意。



### Describe a meaningful Song



### 参考回答

Let me tell you a meaningful song.

### Song\ Singer

I loved a lot of songs, but one song did give me a deep impression, as it is very meaningful, its name is *Let's Stick Together*, it was performed by Slackwax and Anna Leyne,



it is an original sound track from The *Desert Flower*.

The song is a typical modern style song.

I like the song very much is because that it suits the mood of the movie and Waris Dirie's spirit very well, Waris was having a horrible life and it was a painful life, but she never gives up, never gives in, and I was totally encouraged by her, when the song was on in the film, it came up in the right place and the right time.

### Personal feeling

1. I was so inspired by the story, because she went through all the darkness and shadows in her life, but she never gave up.

2. When she looked back, she views this black period as the gift that helped her to be stronger.

3. I want to be as strong as her, you know, being able to conquer the hardship in my life.

4. When you think about it, she can go through all these things and still become successful, the hardship in your life is really small comparing with them.



### Describe a piece of local news



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about a piece of local news, which is about the movie *Desert Flower*. It was years ago, around 2010.

### A Book/Movie

*Desert Flower* is an autobiographical book published in 1998. It is about the life of famous Somali model, Waris Dirie. In 2009, the book was adapted into a movie, which is also called the *Desert Flower*. It is directed by Sherry Horman, and produced by Peter Herrmann and Benjamin Herrmann. The supermodel Liya Kebede played Waris. It is not a blockbuster, but it is very deep. It won the German Film Award in 2010. The story of the book and the movie is similar and both of them are amazing.



**+Personal Feeling**

I knew about this movie already on the internet since 2009, so I had been looking forward to seeing it in China. However, there was no news about it at all. As a result, I thought it was censored by the government and gave up hope, then I got news from a local newspaper saying that it would be on display during a foreign movie festival for a week. Of course, I booked a ticket immediately after I got the news, and I was very impressed by the film.



**Describe an interesting story from a TV program**

**Describe a newspaper**

**参考回答**

Let me tell you something about the Southern Weekly, which is my favorite Newspaper. It introduces a lot of wonderful films to us, most of which are domestic movies, but sometimes there are also the latest foreign films. Young people like me practically read it every day, because we can get amazing recommendation about movies. For instance, my favorite movie *The Dessert Flower* was recommended by it.

**A Book/ Movie**

~~(Desert Flower is an autobiographical book published in 1998, it is about the life of famous Somali model, Waris Dirie. In 2009, the book was adapted into a movie, which is also called the Desert Flower.)~~ It is directed by Sherry Horman. Produced by Peter Herrmann and Benjamin Herrmann, the supermodel Liya Kebede plays Waris. It is not a blockbuster, but it is very deep. It was awarded by the German Film Award. ~~(The story of the book and the movie is similar and both of them are amazing.)~~

The Newspaper also talked a lot about the plot. What's more, it introduced quite a bit about the background information. I watched *Dessert Flower* after I read the article, and I was not disappointed. I can still remember the comment from the article, which is really professional and moving. That's also why I like it. The author wrote



### Personal feeling

"I was so inspired by the story, because she went through all the darkness and shadows in her life, but she never gave up. When she looked back, she views this black period as the gift that helped her to be stronger. I want to be as strong as her, you know, being able to conquer the hardship in my life. When you think about it, she can go through all these things and still become successful, the hardship in your life is really small comparing with them."

至此，媒体题这一个 Part 2 大类就先讲到这里。本小结的内容帮助大家学习了如下 21 个 Part 2 话题卡。大家有没有觉得很超值呢？

1. Describe a movie you recently watched.
2. Describe a foreign movie that you watched.
3. Describe a movie based on the real person or event.
4. Describe a book you recently read that you would recommend to others.
5. Describe a book that you enjoyed reading.
6. Describe a book you enjoyed when you were a child.
7. Describe a book you recently read that you would like to read again.
8. Describe a meaningful song.
9. Describe a popular band or singer.
10. Describe a famous foreign person.
11. Describe a foreign film you enjoyed.
12. Describe a person who has an interesting job.
13. Describe a successful person.
14. Describe a magazine or newspaper that you like to (or, often) read.
15. Describe a TV program that you like to watch.
16. Describe an advertisement that made you (caused you to) buy something.
17. Describe a radio program that you find interesting.
18. Describe a meaningful Song.
19. Describe a piece of local news.
20. Describe an interesting story from a TV program.
21. Describe a newspaper



如果大家不想使用《沙漠之花》这部电影作为素材，只需要扫描二维码，关注东东老师的微信公众平台“谢绍东 Shadow”并回复关键词“谢绍东的 999 条英语口语素材”即可收到大量媒体题素材的相关资料。



## IELTS 工作事件类 | 04

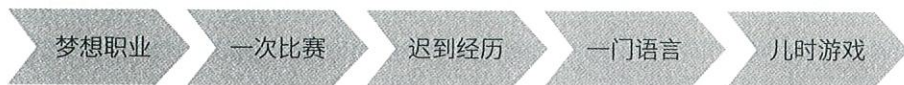
### 1 如何选择并制作自己 DIY 的素材

很多老师简单地把“事件题”作为一种题目讲解，当然这样的划分是绝对可以的，但是对于熟悉话题合并技巧的同学们就会形成负担。因此，按照“合并同类项”的原则。我把事件题目分为了“工作事件”和“家庭事件”两大类。

本节先讲解“工作事件”这一个大类，里面包含了各种与工作相关的话题，例如：较为基础的“想做的一份工作”以及较有难度的“一门想学的语言”。当然 4S 黄金法则又要出场啦，我们依然先梳理思路在准备单词、句子和段落。

#### Step ① 要刻意地选择符合雅思口语考题的工作事件

工作事件题目的准备很像以下这个流程图：



大家肯定会想这么不着边际的几个主题要如何用一个核心素材进行合并呢？请大家看看下面这个故事：

#### 例

我一直都希望成为银行家，这是我的梦想职业，为了能够成为银行家，我不仅学习了第二外语，还经常参加许多与创业、企业策划有关的比赛，也赢得过不少奖项。虽然比赛时有意外发生，比如险些迟到，但是我作为银行家的梦想从没有动摇过，因为我儿时就已经确定自己的目标了，就连我小时候最喜欢玩的游戏也是《大富翁》。



这时，大家就发现我们的工作事件确实可以由以上这个核心素材解决。

### Step ② 梦想工作选定后要多留意以下单词及信息

工作事件题目如果要按照以上流程图进行准备就一定要把需要的相关内容一并查找出来，大家如果担心自己的词汇量不能顺利描述自己心仪职业的话请不要慌张，直接登录维基百科（[www.wikipedia.com](http://www.wikipedia.com)）进行查找即可，而且建议大家的查找顺序应该是先使用汉语检索，再从左侧进入英文界面，这样可以进行一定的英汉对照。我们以银行家为例的话，关键单词如下所示：

核心单词	针对“银行家”这份工作
梦想职业 banker	sense of achievement / self-realization / material staff / stable financial support / perfect combination / thrilled / intelligent / energetic brains / smartest / recruit / stand a better chance
一次比赛 game competition	entrepreneurship / package / prize / knowledge / skills / consolation / proposal / maintain / balance / challenge / handle / pressure / busy / exhausting
迟到经历 late for	went to sleep very late / woke up / imagine / anxious / rushed / venue / crazy hairstyle
一门语言 French	two words / salute / merci / official language / export-import / cases / communications / multilingual / better chance / qualified
学习语言经验 read foreign books listen to foreign songs	summarized / helpful / useful / effective / interesting
儿时游戏 zillionaire monopoly	cultivated / fun game / fell for it / complicated for kids / build a hotel / build a bridge / satisfied / content / bored / to anybody's surprise

每一个重要节点的关键单词都在以上表格中。

### Step ③ 把以上单词串联成独立的自然段，Step 2 学会的单词马上可以用到了

和之前的几个大类的 Part 2 和核心素材不同，“工作事件”话题需要进行流程图式的准备，所以不像人物题或者媒体题的核心素材较为短小，工作事件的核心素材是一个完整故事的串联，最后考生只需要根据自己抽到的话题从这段故事中选择一部分讲解即可。因此大家还是要注意几种 Part 2 题目核心素材的区别。现在我们把以上核心单词串联之后就会有一个完整的核心素材了。





### A great job

I always think the **sense** of **achievement** and **self-realization** is way more important than merely money and all the **material staff**, but I also understand how hard people's life can be without a **stable financial support**. So when I found out that **banker** is the **perfect combination** for those two, you can imagine how **thrilled** I was. The most **intelligent** and **energetic brains** work there, as they only **recruit** the **smartest** people, so I started to read books and took lessons related with banking much earlier than others in order to **stand a better chance** of getting accepted in the future.



### One competition

The **game** was related with **entrepreneurship**. Actually, we needed to come up with a plan for starting a new business, and we had to work really hard and present one **proposal** as the plan in the end of the **competition**. I became really **busy** and **exhausted during that** time. For instance, **maintaining** the **balance** between the game and my study is quite a **challenge**, but I think I **handled** it pretty well. That was my first time to enter and I felt a lot of **pressure**, so I worked really hard for that. You know, I spend at least 10 hours a day on the whole **package**. Eventually I won the second **prize**, as it requires some **knowledge** and **skills** that I still need time to learn and improve, but I am quite happy with my “**consolation prize**”, as I worked really hard and delivered a wonderful speech to win it.



### Being late

I have been **late for** class or bus, but there is one time that I will always remember, you know, that I was late for a competition. I was preparing for the presentation the night before and **went to sleep very late**, so when I got **woke up** by the phone call from my friend 5 minutes before the competition, you can **imagine** how **anxious** I was. She was like: “WHERE ARE YOU? The competition is going to start at any second now!” So I **rushed** to the **venue** without washing my face or brushing my teeth. What a mess! But I had confidence about my presentation, as I worked really hard for it, and it was a success, despite of my **crazy hairstyle**.



### A language

I love **French** very much since I was a child. I only know **two French words**. One



is “**Salute**”, which means “hello”; the other one is “**Merci**”, which means “thank you”. But it is still my favourite language besides Mandarin and English, because I want to be a banker in the future, and I learned from my aunt, who works in the **Export-Import** Bank of China, that our country has a lot of business deals with African countries that take French as an **official language**, and there are a lot of **cases** and **communications** that require French. I think I will have a **better chance** to get into an investment bank if I could be **multilingual**, and I can make myself **qualified**.



### Useful way to learn a foreign language

I always **read foreign books** and **listen to foreign songs** when I have some free time, which are very **useful** ways to learn a foreign language. Personally, I think those methods would be **effective** and **interesting**, because they did help me learn English well. I can use those methods when I start to learn French, and if I can speak French well, it will increase the possibility of me getting into an investment bank in the future.



### A Game

I loved to play **Monopoly**, a, k, a, and **Zillionaire**, with my aunt Wang Rui ever since I was little. My aunt works in an investment bank, so she **cultivated** my interest in this area. Of course, we played mostly at my home, sometimes hers. The game was quite **complicated for kids**, you know, as I had to make more “money”, but it was a **fun game** for me. I would try my best to come up with an idea to **build a hotel** in the central area or **build a bridge** for my factory so that I could have better business deals. I knew it was not real, but I just could not help but **fell for it**. It made me feel **satisfied** and **content**, and I could never get **bored** with those games. So it was not **to anybody's surprise** that I want to become a banker in Wall Street someday in the future.

大家会发现以上内容基本上是一个人如何对“银行家”这个职业出现兴趣，然后让自己一步步地朝着这个方向去努力的故事。

#### Step ④ 练习用四句话描述自己对心仪工作的个人感受

和之前的核心素材一样，个人感受是本类话题中较为通用的素材，几乎每个与工作相关的话题都可以：





## Personal feeling

1. The advantage of being a banker is crystal clear.
2. You know, working in a bank is a path where anything is possible with fantastic working environment and huge salary check.
3. Under the seduction of those great temptations, you can imagine how much it attracts dreamers from the very beginning, so being a banker in an investment bank is probably the only option for ambitious young people like me.
4. I really couldn't see myself being anywhere else.

以上段落是工作事件较为核心的段落，使用频率极高。推荐大家准备这样一个通用段落，极其适合放在收尾处。

## 2 如何实际运用自己 DIY 的素材

有了以上这样的核心素材以下题目均可迎刃而解。我们以 “Your work plans for the future” 为例，大家试着把 A great job 及 Personal feeling 两个自然段连起来，是不是可以连成一篇完整且完全符合雅思口语考试高分标准的素材呢？



**Describe your work plans for the future.**

**You should say:**

**what job you would like to do**

**what qualities are required for this work**

**what you should learn to get this job**

**and explain why you want to do this work.**



## 参考回答

OK, the plan for my future work has always been a very singular choice, which is being a banker. Some people think it is chasing the rainbows, while others think it is more like a quick success, but I really believe it is an unusual job.



### A great job

I always think the sense of achievement and self-realization is way more important than merely money and all the material stuff, but I also understand how hard people's life can be without a stable financial support. So when I found out that banker is the perfect combination for those two, you can imagine how thrilled I was. The most intelligent and energetic brains work there, as they only recruit the smartest people, so I started to read books and took lessons related with banking much earlier than others in order to stand a better chance of getting accepted in the future.

### Personal feeling

The advantage of being a banker is crystal clear. You know, working in a bank is a path where anything is possible with fantastic working environment and huge salary check. Under the seduction of those great temptation, you can imagine how much it attracts dreamers from the very beginning, so being a banker in an investment bank is probably the only option for ambitious young people like me, and I really couldn't see myself being anywhere else.

按照惯例开头点题需要学生自己造句，其他内容都可以按照之前准备的核心素材准备，而就算遇到其他 Part 2 话题卡，也不过是将我们的已知素材进行简单修改而已。



**Describe an unusual job you would (like to) do, if you had the opportunity**

**You should say:**

**what job it would be**

**what you would do in that job**

**why this job is unusual**

**and explain why you would like to do that job.**

针对以上话题卡，大家会发现以上答案只需要将开头点题句进行简单调整，后面的内容依然可以使用 A great job 及 Personal feeling，内容几乎是完全一样的。在此不费篇幅。

而在工作事件主题之下的其他题目：比赛、迟到、语言、儿时游戏等，只要将上述内容稍作修改，大家就可以轻易地用“银行家”的故事解决以下话题卡。





**Describe a success you have had.**

**You should say:**

**what it was and when it happened**

**why you chose this area of activity**

**how easy or difficult it was to achieve**

**and explain how important this success was.**



### 参考回答

Well, let me tell you something about a competition that I won a few weeks ago.

#### One competition

The game was related with entrepreneurship. Actually, we needed to come up with a plan for starting a new business, and we had to work really hard and present one proposal as the plan in the end of the competition. I became really busy and exhausted during that time. For instance, maintaining the balance between the game and my study is quite a challenge, but I think I handled it pretty well. That was my first time to enter and I felt a lot of pressure, so I worked really hard for that. You know, I spend at least 10 hours a day on the whole package. Eventually I won the second prize, as it requires some knowledge and skills that I still need time to learn and improve, but I am quite happy with my “consolation prize”, as I worked really hard and delivered a wonderful speech to win it.

The reason why I chose this competition is that I want to be a banker in the future.

#### Personal feeling

The advantage of being a banker is crystal clear. You know, working in a bank is a path where anything is possible with fantastic working environment and huge salary check. Under the seduction of those great temptation, you can imagine how much it attracts dreamers from the very beginning, so being a banker in an investment bank is probably the only option for ambitious young people like me, and I really couldn't see myself being anywhere else.

大家会发现以上素材学生只根据话题卡自己组织两句开头即可，其他都是提前准备好的内容。



再看一张话题卡大家会发现效果依然强劲。



**Describe a time when you were very busy.**

**You should say:**

**when this time was**

**what you did at this time**

**how you arranged your time**

**and explain how you felt after this busy time was over.**



### 参考回答

Alright, let me tell you something about a busy time for me, you know, when I was preparing for a competition.

#### One competition

The game was related with entrepreneurship. Actually, we needed to come up with a plan for starting a new business, and we had to work really hard and present one proposal as the plan in the end of the competition. I became really busy and exhausted during that time. For instance, maintaining the balance between the game and my study is quite a challenge, but I think I handled it pretty well. That was my first time to enter and I felt a lot of pressure, so I worked really hard for that. You know, I spend at least 10 hours a day on the whole package. Eventually I won the second prize, as it requires some knowledge and skills that I still need time to learn and improve, but I am quite happy with my “consolation prize”, as I worked really hard and delivered a wonderful speech to win it.

I learnt so many things during the competition, but the most important thing for me was that I became more determined than ever to be a banker in the future.

#### Personal feeling

The advantage of being a banker is crystal clear. You know, working in a bank is a path where anything is possible with fantastic working environment and huge salary check.



Under the seduction of those great temptation, you can imagine how much it attracts dreamers from the very beginning, so being a banker in an investment bank is probably the only option for ambitious young people like me, and I really couldn't see myself being anywhere else.

以上话题核心段落中 One competition 与 Personal feeling 是完全重复上一张话题卡的, 只有第一及第三自然段有微量变化。



**Describe a difficult thing you did well.**

**You should say:**

**what it was**

**how you did it**

**why (or how) it was difficult**

**and explain how you felt after you did it.**



### 参考回答

Alright, let me tell you something difficult that I did well, you know, when I was preparing for a competition.

#### One competition

The game was related with entrepreneurship. Actually, we needed to come up with a plan for starting a new business, and we had to work really hard and present one proposal as the plan in the end of the competition. I became really busy and exhausted during that time. For instance, maintaining the balance between the game and my study is quite a challenge, but I think I handled it pretty well. That was my first time to enter and I felt a lot of pressure, so I worked really hard for that. You know, I spend at least 10 hours a day on the whole package. Eventually I won the second prize, as it requires some knowledge and skills that I still need time to learn and improve, but I am quite happy with my “consolation prize”, as I worked really hard and delivered a wonderful speech to win it.

I learnt so many things during the competition, but the most important thing for me was that I became more determined than ever to be a banker in the future.



### Personal feeling

The advantage of being a banker is crystal clear. You know, working in a bank is a path where anything is possible with fantastic working environment and huge salary check. Under the seduction of those great temptation, you can imagine how much it attracts dreamers from the very beginning, so being a banker in an investment bank is probably the only option for ambitious young people like me, and I really couldn't see myself being anywhere else.

不难看出以上三个话题都可以用核心素材 One competition 与 Personal feeling 进行解决。但是这个话题中 One competition 这个核心素材中删除了一句话：but I think I handled it pretty well。这句话与话题卡要求主题不符，故将其删除。

而和“迟到”有关的话题卡内容则在以下几个题目中体现。



**Describe an important occasion when you were late.**

**You should say:**

**when this happened**

**what occasion you were late for**

**why you were late**

**and explain what happened after you were late.**



### 参考回答

#### Being late

I have been late for class or bus, but there is one time that I will always remember, you know, that I was late for a competition. I was preparing for the presentation the night before and went to sleep very late, so when I got woke up by the phone call from my friend 5 minutes before the competition, you can imagine how anxious I was. She was like: "WHERE ARE YOU? The competition is going to start at any second now!" So I rushed to the venue without washing my face or brushing my teeth. What a mess! But I had confidence about my presentation, as I worked really hard for it, and it was a success, despite of my crazy hairstyle.



**One competition**

The game was related with entrepreneurship. Actually, we needed to come up with a plan for starting a new business, and we had to work really hard and present one proposal as the plan in the end of the competition. I became really busy and exhausted during that time. For instance, maintaining the balance between the game and my study is quite a challenge, but I think I handled it pretty well. That was my first time to enter and I felt a lot of pressure, so I worked really hard for that. You know, I spend at least 10 hours a day on the whole package. Eventually I won the second prize, as it requires some knowledge and skills that I still need time to learn and improve, but I am quite happy with my "consolation prize", as I worked really hard and delivered a wonderful speech to win it.

Being late was awful and I will try not to do it ever again. Especially after hearing other contestants' presentations, I realised that they all worked really hard, and even the slightest mistake may cost too much. It was a lesson to me.

以上答案只有结尾时需要考生临场准备的, 其他的则都是核心素材已经准备的内容。不过 One competition 这个核心素材中有部分内容被删除, 请大家注意以上被删除的部分。

**Describe something you once forgot to do.**

**You should say:**

**what you forgot to do**

**when this happened**

**where it happened**

**and explain why you forgot to do this.**

**参考回答**

I think it is very common for people to forget things, but let me tell you one funny thing about how I was late because I forget to turn on the alarm clock the night before an important competition.

**Being late**

I have been late for class or bus, but there is one time that I will always remember, you-



know, that I was late for a competition. I was preparing for the presentation the night before and went to sleep very late, so when I got woke up by the phone call from my friend 5 minutes before the competition, you can imagine how anxious I was. She was like: "WHERE ARE YOU? The competition is going to start at any second now!" So I rushed to the venue without washing my face or brushing my teeth. What a mess! But I had confidence about my presentation, as I worked really hard for it, and it was a success, despite of my crazy hairstyle.

### One competition

The game was related with entrepreneurship. Actually, we needed to come up with a plan for starting a new business, and we had to work really hard and present one proposal as the plan in the end of the competition. I became really busy and exhausted during that time. For instance, maintaining the balance between the game and my study is quite a challenge, but I think I handled it pretty well. That was my first time to enter and I felt a lot of pressure, so I worked really hard for that. You know, I spend at least 10 hours a day on the whole package. Eventually I won the second prize, as it requires some knowledge and skills that I still need time to learn and improve, but I am quite happy with my "consolation prize", as I worked really hard and delivered a wonderful speech to win it.

Being late was awful and I will try not to do it ever again. Especially after hearing other contestants' presentations, I realised that they all worked really hard, and even the slightest mistake may cost too much. It was a lesson to me.

与上一张话题卡相比,这一张话题卡只需要学生在核心素材前进行适量描述。不过 One competition 及 Being late 这两个核心素材中有部分内容被删除,请大家注意以上被删除的部分。



**Describe a foreign language that you want to learn in the future (except Mandarin and English).**

**You should say:**

**what this language is**

**why you want to learn it**

**how this language will be used**

**and explain how difficult it would be to learn this language.**





## 参考回答

**A language**

I love French very much since I was a child. I only know two French words. One is “Salute”, which means “hello”; the other one is “Merci”, which means “thank you”. But it is still my favourite language besides Mandarin and English, because I want to be a banker in the future, and I learned from my aunt, who works in the Export-import bank of China, that our country has a lot of business deals with African countries that take French as an official language, and there are a lot of cases and communications that require French. I think I will have a better chance to get into an investment bank if I could be multilingual, and I can make myself qualified.

**Useful way to learn a foreign language**

I always read foreign books and listen to foreign songs when I have some free time, which are very useful ways to learn a foreign language. Personally, I think those methods would be effective and interesting, because they did help me learn English well. I can use those methods when I start to learn French, and if I can speak French well, it will increase the possibility of me getting into an investment bank in the future.

I love it so much that I will do anything to help me improve.



**Describe something you that helped you learn another language (besides your own language).**

**You should say:**

**what it was**

**where you used it**

**who you used it with**

**and explain how this thing helped you.**



## 参考回答

**Useful way to learn a foreign language**

I always read foreign books and listen to foreign songs when I have some free time,



which are very useful ways to learn a foreign language. Personally, I think those methods would be effective and interesting, because they did help me learn English well. I can use those methods when I start to learn French, and if I can speak French well, it will increase the possibility of me getting into an investment bank in the future.

### A language

I love French very much since I was a child. I only know two French words. One is “Salute”, which means “hello”; the other one is “Merci”, which means “thank you”. But it is still my favourite language besides Mandarin and English, because I want to be a banker in the future, and I learned from my aunt, who works in the Export-import bank of China, that our country has a lot of business deals with African countries that take French as an official language, and there are a lot of cases and communications that require French. I think I will have a better chance to get into an investment bank if I could be multilingual, and I can make myself qualified.

I love it so much that I will do anything to help me and improve.

大家会发现这两张话题卡最根本的不同就是 A language 与 Useful way to learn a foreign language 调换了前后顺序。

而最后一个部分是“儿时游戏”，请大家看这张话题卡。



**Describe a game you enjoyed when you were a child.**

**You should say:**

**what the game was**

**when, where and with whom you usually played it**

**how you played it**

**and explain why you enjoyed this game.**





## 参考回答

### A game

I loved to play Monopoly, Aka and Zillionaire, with my aunt Wang Rui ever since I was little. My aunt works in an investment bank, so she cultivated my interest in this area. Of course, we played mostly at my home, sometimes hers. The game was quite complicated for kids, you know, I had to make more “money”, but it was a fun game for me. I would try my best to come up with an idea to build a hotel in the central area or build a bridge for my factory so that I could have better business deals. I knew it was not real, but I just could not help but fell for it. It made me feel satisfied and content, and I could never get bored with those games. So it was not to anybody's surprise that I want to become a banker in Wall Street someday in the future.

### A great job

I always think the sense of achievement and self-realization is way more important than merely money and all the material stuff, but I also understand how hard people's life can be without a stable financial support. So when I found out that banker is the perfect combination for those two, you can imagine how thrilled I was. The most intelligent and energetic brains work there, as they only recruit the smartest people, so I started to read books and took lessons related with banking much earlier than others in order to stand a better chance of getting accepted in the future.

### Personal feeling

The advantage of being a banker is crystal clear. You know, working in a bank is a path where anything is possible with fantastic working environment and huge salary check. Under the seduction of those great temptation, you can imagine how much it attracts dreamers from the very beginning, so being a banker in an investment bank is probably the only option for ambitious young people like me, and I really couldn't see myself being anywhere else.

全部使用了我们的核心素材。细心的同学一定已经注意到以上素材稍作修改还可以解决一道题目就是“A family member who you would like to work with in the future”。





**Describe a perfect job which you would like to have in the future**

**Describe a dream a goal you want to achieve**

**Describe a person who has apologized to you**



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about a friend of mine, her name is Wang Rui. She apologized to me once in a very serious manner.

#### Being late

She has been late for class or bus, but there is one time that I will always remember. you know, she was late for a competition. She was preparing for the presentation the night before and went to sleep very late, so when she got woke up by the phone call of mine 5 minutes before the competition, you can imagine how anxious she was. I was like: " WHERE ARE YOU? The competition is going to start at any second now!" So she rushed to the venue without washing her face and brushing her teeth. What a mess! But I had confidence about her presentation, as she worked really hard for it, and it was a success, despite of her crazy hairstyle.

She apologized to me right after the competition. She said: " Being late was awful and I will try not to do it again ever, especially after hearing other contestants' presentations, I realized that they all worked really hard, even the slightest mistake will cost you. It is a big time for me."

#### One competition

(The game was related with entrepreneurship. Actually, we needed to come up with a plan for starting a new business, and we had to work really hard and present one proposal as the plan in the end of the competition. It was a really busy and exhausting time for me. For instance, maintaining the balance between the game and my study is quite a challenge, but I think I handled it pretty well. That was my first time to enter and I felt a lot of pressure, so I worked really hard for that. You know, I spend at least 10 hours a day on the whole



package. ) Eventually we won the second prize, as it requires some knowledge and skills that we still need time to learn and improve, but I am quite happy with my “consolation prize” , as I worked really hard and delivered a wonderful speech to win it.



**Describe a big company that you are interested in**



### 参考回答

I like GoldmanSachs very much, so I wish someday in the future I could work there as an banker. They are so ahead of the game and the pioneer of the finance and banking world. Also, I heard they offer the best salary, and their dress code is more formal and fancy there. The atmosphere is so vibrant and energetic. It just makes you want to fight every day. I have been preparing myself for this goal for a long time. For instance, I participated in a game.

+One competition

+Personal feeling



**Describe a time that you have to get up early**



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about a competition. I had to get up very early for it, as I needed to practice my speech before the competition. It was the only time that I had to wake up at 4 o'clock. It was very important for me.

+One Competition

I hope this experience can help me to become a banker in the future easily.

+Personal feeling

至此，工作事件这一个 Part 2 大类就先讲到这里。本小结的内容帮助大家学习了如下 16 个 Part 2 话题卡。大家有没有觉得很超值呢？



1. Describe your work plans for the future.
2. Describe an unusual job you would (like to) do, if you had the opportunity.
3. Describe a success you have had.
4. Describe a time when you were very busy.
5. Describe a difficult thing you did well.
6. Describe an important occasion when you were late.
7. Describe something you once forgot to do.
8. Describe a foreign language that you want to learn in the future (except Mandarin and English).
9. Describe something you that helped you learn another language (besides your own language).
10. Describe a game you enjoyed when you were a child.
11. Describe a family member who you would like to work with in the future.
12. Describe a perfect job which you would like to have in the future.
13. Describe a dream a goal you want to achieve.
14. Describe a person who has apologized to you.
15. Describe a big company that you are interested in.
16. Describe a time that you have to get up early.

如果大家不想使用“银行家”这个职业作为素材,只需要扫描二维码,关注东东老师的微信公众平台“谢绍东 Shadow”并回复关键词“谢绍东的 999 条英语口语素材”即可收到大量工作素材的相关资料。



## 05 | IELTS 家庭事件类

### 1 如何选择并制作自己 DIY 的素材

其实“家庭事件”类的题目本身不算太难,每个考生都能随口说出几个中国的传统节日,包括节日、生日的庆祝方式和需要吃点什么,但是本着话题合并的原则,大多数的节日和庆祝活动也许可以涵盖



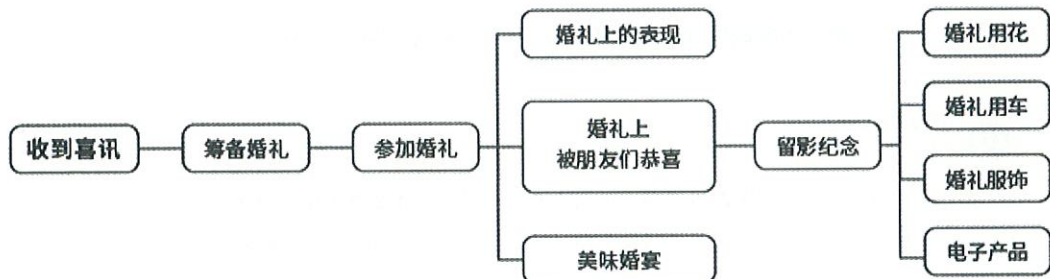
三到五个话题卡，却不能将更多话题卡合并。

虽说话题合并不是万能的，但是好的核心素材的判别标准是一个主题素材至少可以涵盖本大类中 10 个以上的话题卡，少于这个数量的素材通用性往往较差，会给考生带来不必要的负担。本次“家庭事件”类话题中，我特意在结尾处加入了几个不易合并的话题卡分支，希望大家能够感受到如果核心素材不能适用的话，给大家造成的压力和难度到底有多大。

但一开始，我们还是按照 4S 黄金法则，我们以“婚礼”这个家庭事件为例。

### Step ① 要刻意地选择符合雅思口语考题的家庭事件主题

“婚礼”的话题分布不仅仅是一个流程，还拥有几处分支（如下图所示），思路上还是比较复杂的。“留影纪念”之后的四个分支，即“婚礼用花”、“婚礼用车”、“婚礼服饰”和“电子产品”则是我在上一段中提到的“不易合并的话题卡分支”，大家会在本章节最后的部分看到它们的特点和话题合并。详情请大家见下图：



针对这个流程图的话题合并，请大家看这个故事：

#### 例

我的表哥张志豪和嫂子张筱雨因为一次游泳时发生的意外邂逅并相爱，相处一段时间后便举行了婚礼，并发邀请函邀请我担任了伴郎。期间我帮助他们进行了婚礼的各种筹划，包括邀请宾客，准备婚礼用花、用车等细节。婚礼当天他们举行了中国传统的婚礼仪式，所以大家都穿着唐装并合影留念。我非常喜欢这种热闹的场合，所以这件事给我留下了很深的印象。

相信大家已经明白我们的故事要如何开始了。

### Step ② 具体家庭事件选定后要多留意以下单词及信息

具体事件确定后，我们要准备如下相关单词。不过东东老师在这里要特别建议“烤鸭”们不要豪放地准备大量描述性的单词，一定要先按照话题合并的原则构思好故事，再按照构思好的故事选择需要的单词背诵即可。



我们以我表哥的婚礼为例，简单看看核心单词到底有多少。

核心单词	针对婚礼这件事
邀请 Invitation	invitation letter / getting married / best man / piece of news / guest / wedding / background / sealed / envelope / message / simple / smelled
准备活动 Preparation	preparation / occasion / excruciating / be assigned to / responsibilities / wedding ceremony / dress fitting / cake choosing / Tang suit / plate
庆祝典礼 Celebration	hotel / happy occasion / tasty food / band / huge cake / colourful / fun / formal / Tang suits / Tang dresses / traditional theme
快乐夫妻 Happy couple	admire / wonderful / meant to be together / save / drowning / swimming pool / struggling / rushed / pulled / in pain / leg cramp / resting area / accompanied / fell in love / true love

**Step ③ 把以上单词串联成独立的自然段，Step 2 学会的单词马上可以用到了**



### Invitation

I got an **invitation letter** from my cousin, as he was **getting married** and he asked me to be his **best man**. It was such a happy and important **piece of news** for me, as it was my first time to be invited as not just a **guest** but as the best man to a **wedding**. The invitation was printed on one card with flowers as the **background sealed** in a white **envelope**. The **message** was **simple**, you know. It went like this: “welcome to the wedding of Zhang Zhihao and Zhang Xiaoyu, and wear something nice, because you are going to be the best man.” And it **smelled** really nice. Of course, I felt so happy for them.



### Preparation

The **preparation** for this **occasion** is **excruciating**. I didn't know I would **be assigned to** so many responsibilities. You have no idea—I had to help them with the **wedding ceremony** and the **dress fitting**, along with **cake choosing**. Of course, let's not forget my **Tang suit**. I got too many things on my **plate**, but I also enjoyed it for I knew how much this really meant for them.





## Celebration

There were a lot of people in the **hotel**, and it was a **happy occasion**. You know, everybody enjoyed **tasty food**, the **band** and a **huge cake** which was very **colourful**. Everyone was dancing and having a great time, and it was a great celebration with so much **fun**. Of course, they all dressed **formal**. Men wore **Tang suits** and ladies wore **Tang dresses**, as it was under the Chinese **traditional theme**.



## Happy couple

I **admire** the marriage of my cousin and his wife. They had a **wonderful** wedding and they are so happy now. I always believe that they were **meant to be together**, as Zhang Zhihao **saved** Zhang Xiaoyu from **drowning** in a **swimming pool**. That day, when he was swimming, he suddenly saw a girl **struggling** in the water, so he **rushed** to her side and **pulled** her out of the water. She was **in pain** because of her leg cramp, so he took her to the **resting area** and **accompanied** her. That's how they met. And they **fell in love** with each other and then got married. I believe they have found the **true love**.

### Step ④ 练习用四句话描述参加一次婚礼个人感受

到今天为止，相信大家对于如何用四句话概括对人或事物的感受应该已经非常熟悉了，在此给大家的任务依然是用四句话描述对婚礼等庆祝活动的感受：



## Personal feeling

1. I am a social person, so I like the crowd and I like hearing the laughter and feeling the positive energy in the air.
2. You know, it just takes your worries and anxieties away.
3. Also, where is a crowd, there is great music and food.
4. What's not to like, right?

以上内容基本可以用在家庭事件所有的话题中，但是大家依然应当注意本段落的通用性导致了描述中不应该出现过多的过于具体的名词和指代关系。



## 2 如何实际运用自己 DIY 的素材

现在，有了以上这样的核心素材以下题目均可迎刃而解。我们以“A piece of happy family news”为例，大家试着把 Invitation, Personal feeling 及 Celebration 三个自然段连起来，是不是可以连成一篇完整且完全符合雅思口语考试高分标准的素材呢？



**Describe a piece of happy family news that you once received.**

**You should say:**

**what it was**

**who told you the news**

**how you received this news**

**and explain why it was good news.**



### 参考回答

OK, the piece of happy family news that I want to talk about is a wedding invitation.

#### Invitation

I got an invitation letter from my cousin, as he was getting married and he asked me to be his best man. It was such a happy and important piece of news for me, as it was my first time to be invited as not just a guest but as the best man to a wedding. The invitation was printed on one card with flowers as the background sealed in a white envelope. The message was simple, you know. It went like this: “welcome to the wedding of Zhang Zhihao and Zhang Xiaoyu, and wear something nice, because you are going to be the best man.” And it smelled really nice. Of course, I felt so happy for them.

I remember I was looking forward to the wedding so much, frankly speaking.

#### Personal feeling

I am a social person, so I like the crowd and I like hearing the laughter and feeling the positive energy in the air. You know, it just takes your worries and anxieties away. Also, where is a crowd, there is great music and food. What's not to like, right?

The wedding was like a dream.



**Celebration**

There were a lot of people in the hotel, and it was a happy occasion. You know, everybody enjoyed tasty food, the band and a huge cake which was very colourful. Everyone was dancing and having a great time, and it was a great celebration with so much fun. Of course, they all dressed formal. Men wore Tang suits and ladies wore Tang dresses, as it was under the Chinese traditional theme.

请再看一个极其相似的话题卡：



**Describe a special letter or card you received.**

**You should say:**

**who sent you the letter or card**

**when you received it**

**what message the letter or card had**

**and explain what was special about this card or letter.**

**参考回答**

OK, the special card that I want to talk about is a wedding invitation.

**Invitation**

I got an invitation letter from my cousin, as he was getting married and he asked me to be his best man. It was such a happy and important piece of news for me, as it was my first time to be invited as not just a guest but as the best man to a wedding. The invitation was printed on one card with flowers as the background sealed in a white envelope. The message was simple, you know. It went like this: “welcome to the wedding of Zhang Zhihao and Zhang Xiaoyu, and wear something nice, because you are going to be our best man.” And it smelled really nice. Of course, I felt so happy for them.

I remember I was looking forward to the wedding so much, frankly speaking.

**Personal feeling**

I am a social person, so I like the crowd and I like hearing the laughter and feeling the positive energy in the air. You know, it just takes your worries and anxieties away. Also, where is a crowd,



there is great music and food. What's not to like, right?

The wedding was like a dream.

### Celebration

There were a lot of people in the hotel, and it was a happy occasion. You know, everybody enjoyed tasty food, the band and a huge cake which was very colourful. Everyone was dancing and having a great time, and it was a great celebration with so much fun. Of course, they all dressed formal. Men wore Tang suits and ladies wore Tang dresses, as it was under the Chinese traditional theme.

以下三个话题的答案和以上完全一致，在此不赘述。

- Describe a piece of happy family news.
- Describe a piece of important information.
- Describe a letter you received.

以下话题要求描述一个“你组织的派对”，大家会发现我们使用的核心素材包括：Celebration、Preparation 及 Personal feeling。但是请注意核心素材中有一部分内容不符合题目问题，已经被删除了。



**Describe a party you arranged for your friends or family.**

**You should say:**

**who you invited to the party**

**when and where you held the party**

**what you did at the party**

**and explain why you held this party.**



### 参考回答

Well, let me tell you something about the party that I held for my cousin. He was about to get married, so I thought it was really necessary to throw him a bachelor party before the wedding. We used the hotel called Jinyuan for the wedding ceremony two days before the wedding, as I got a discount from the hotel manager. All his friends and colleagues showed up.



**Celebration**

There were a lot of people in the hotel, and it was a happy occasion. You know, everybody enjoyed tasty food, the band and a huge cake which was very colourful. Everyone was dancing and having a great time, and it was a great celebration with so much fun. Of course, they all dressed formal. Men wore Tang suits and ladies wore Tang dresses, as it was under the Chinese traditional theme.

I have to tell you the truth.

**Preparation**

The preparation for this occasion is excruciating. I didn't know I would be assigned to so many responsibilities. You have no idea—I had to help them with the wedding ceremony and the dress fitting, along with cake choosing. Of course, let's not forget my Tang suit. I got too many things on my plate, but I also enjoyed it for I knew how much this really meant for them.

**Personal feeling**

I am a social person, so I like the crowd and I like hearing the laughter and feeling the positive energy in the air. You know, it just takes your worries and anxieties away. Also, where is a crowd, there is great music and food. What's not to like, right?

以下这三个话题的题干在问法上相似性极高，但是对于考生来说，不能掉以轻心。仔细观察，大家会发现即使套用了核心素材，第三个话题的答案差异还是比较大。

首先来看最基本的“一次婚礼”。



**Describe a wedding you attended.**

**You should say:**

**whose wedding it was**

**who was there**

**where it was**

**and explain how you felt about this wedding.**

**参考回答**

Let me tell you something about the wedding of my cousin Zhang Zhihao. The wedding was held in a hotel called Jinyuan in the city centre of our hometown, as we got a discount from the



manager. And I liked it so much.

### **Celebration**

There were a lot of people in the hotel, and it was a happy occasion. You know, everybody enjoyed tasty food, the band and a huge cake which was very colourful. Everyone was dancing and having a great time, and it was a great celebration with so much fun. Of course, they all dressed formal. Men wore Tang suits and ladies wore Tang dresses, as it was under the Chinese traditional theme.

### **Personal feeling**

I am a social person, so I like the crowd and I like hearing the laughter and feeling the positive energy in the air. You know, it just takes your worries and anxieties away. Also, where is a crowd, there is great music and food. What's not to like, right?

Also,

### **Happy couple**

I admire the marriage of my cousin and his wife. They had a wonderful wedding and they are so happy now. I always believe that they were meant to be together, as Zhang Zhihao saved Zhang Xiaoyu from drowning in a swimming pool. That day, when he was swimming, he suddenly saw a girl struggling in the water, so he rushed to her side and pulled her out of the water. She was in pain because of her leg cramp, so he took her to the resting area and accompanied her. That's how they met. And they fell in love with each other and then got married. I believe they have found the true love.

第二个话题则是“一次有趣的家庭庆祝活动”，不难发现前两个话题核心素材为 Celebration、Personal feeling 及 Happy couple。



**Describe an enjoyable family event that you attended.**

**You should say:**

**where and when this event took place**

**what happened at this event**

**who was there at this event**

**and explain why this event was enjoyable.**





### 参考回答

Well, the enjoyable family event is the wedding of my cousin Zhang Zhihao about 10 years ago. The wedding was held in a hotel called Jinyuan in the city centre of our hometown, as we got a discount from the manager. All his friends and colleagues showed up and I liked it so much.

#### Celebration

There were a lot of people in the hotel, and it was a happy occasion. You know, everybody enjoyed tasty food, the band and a huge cake which was very colourful. Everyone was dancing and having a great time, and it was a great celebration with so much fun. Of course, they all dressed formal. Men wore Tang suits and ladies wore Tang dresses, as it was under the Chinese traditional theme.

#### Personal feeling

I am a social person, so I like the crowd and I like hearing the laughter and feeling the positive energy in the air. You know, it just takes your worries and anxieties away. Also, where is a crowd, there is great music and food. What's not to like, right?

Also,



更多福利关注微信公众号  
优格学堂

#### Happy couple

I admire the marriage of my cousin and his wife. They had a wonderful wedding and they are so happy now. I always believe that they were meant to be together, as Zhang Zhihao saved Zhang Xiaoyu from drowning in a swimming pool. That day, when he was swimming, he suddenly saw a girl struggling in the water, so he rushed to her side and pulled her out of the water. She was in pain because of her leg cramp, so he took her to the resting area and accompanied her. That's how they met. And they fell in love with each other and then got married. I believe they have found the true love.

Those are the reasons why I enjoyed the wedding so much.

以上两个话题相似程度很高，但第三个话题则主要使用了 Personal feeling 及 Happy couple 而去掉了 Celebration 这一段。因为这个话题卡要求描述“一对幸福夫妻”。





**Describe a couple you know who you think have a happy marriage.**

**You should say:**

**who they are**

**how long they have been married**

**how they live their lives**

**and explain why you think they are happily married.**



### 参考回答

The couple that I like the most is my cousin and his wife. They have been married for more than 10 years, yet they act like they have just got married for two weeks. They sometimes hold parties on weekends with families and friends, and that's what I like most about them.

#### Personal feeling

I am a social person, so I like the crowd and I like hearing the laughter and feeling the positive energy in the air. You know, it just takes your worries and anxieties away. Also, where is a crowd, there is great music and food. What's not to like, right?

#### Happy couple

I admire the marriage of my cousin and his wife. They had a wonderful wedding and they are so happy now. I always believe that they were meant to be together, as Zhang Zhihao saved Zhang Xiaoyu from drowning in a swimming pool. That day, when he was swimming, he suddenly saw a girl struggling in the water, so he rushed to her side and pulled her out of the water. She was in pain because of her leg cramp, so he took her to the resting area and accompanied her. That's how they met. And they fell in love with each other and then got married. I believe they have found the true love.

Those are the reasons why I like them.

以下话题描述一次“你需要非常有礼貌的场合”。在婚礼上表现得有礼貌是很容易被考官带入和理解的，可以使用的核心素材有：Preparation 和 Personal feeling。





### **Describe an occasion when you were polite**

**You should say:**

**what the situation was**

**where it happened**

**who you were polite to**

**and explain how you showed politeness**



### **参考回答**

People are always very polite when they are at the wedding, including me. I was invited to be the best man of my cousin's wedding, so I had to be extra polite and kind. The wedding was held in a hotel called Jinyuan in the downtown. I was the one who held the ring for my cousin, so I had to stand there for more than 2 hours without moving. My face hurt a lot, because I had to smile all the time. Although it was very tiring for me, people all thought I was very polite and nice, and they say I was a real gentleman.

Well, I have to tell you the truth.

### **Preparation**

The preparation for this occasion is excruciating. I didn't know I would be assigned to so many responsibilities. You have no idea—I had to help them with the wedding ceremony and the dress fitting, along with cake choosing. Of course, let's not forget my Tang suit. I got too many things on my plate, but I also enjoyed it for I knew how much this really meant for them.

Besides,

### **Personal feeling**

I am a social person, so I like the crowd and I like hearing the laughter and feeling the positive energy in the air. You know, it just takes your worries and anxieties away. Also, where is a crowd, there is great music and food. What's not to like, right?

以下话题描述一次“你被恭喜的场合”。自己家人结婚，宾客对你们家的喜事进行赞美和恭维是世界通用的概念，所以本次话题嫁接就会变得非常简单，核心素材有：Personal feeling 和 Happy couple。





**Describe a situation when you received congratulations from others.**

**You should say:**

**what the situation was**

**who congratulated you**

**why you were congratulated**

**and explain how you felt.**



### 参考回答

I was congratulated at the wedding of my cousin by many of my friends when we were enjoying the wedding banquet, because they all thought my cousin and his bride were the perfect couple together, and they felt so happy for them. As the groom's cousin and his best friend, I was congratulated for having such a beautiful and kind sister-in-law. In China, this kind of happy marriage is the joy of the whole family, so every family member will be congratulated by the guests.

It was not my wedding, but I also felt the blessing around me.

### Personal feeling

I am a social person, so I like the crowd and I like hearing the laughter and feeling the positive energy in the air. You know, it just takes your worries and anxieties away. Also, where is a crowd, there is great music and food. What's not to like, right?

Also, I felt extremely happy for them as well, you know.

### Happy couple

I admire the marriage of my cousin and his wife. They had a wonderful wedding and they are so happy now. I always believe that they were meant to be together, as Zhang Zhihao saved Zhang Xiaoyu from drowning in a swimming pool. That day, when he was swimming, he suddenly saw a girl struggling in the water, so he rushed to her side and pulled her out of the water. She was in pain because of her leg cramp, so he took her to the resting area and accompanied her. That's how they met. And they fell in love with each other and then got married. I believe they have found the true love.



接下来这个话题是一顿特殊的饭菜，有两个核心段落可以使用：Preparation 和 Celebration。其中有部分核心素材删减，请大家注意。



**Describe a special meal you invited your friends to eat with you.**

**You should say:**

**who you invited**

**where you ate this meal**

**what you ate**

**and explain why you chose to eat this food.**



### 参考回答

The special meal is a wedding banquet of my cousin. The wedding was held in a hotel called Jinyuan in the downtown. I invited 2 of my best friends to come with me, and the dishes were amazing. Well it was me who helped them decide what dishes should be served.

#### Preparation

The preparation for this occasion is excruciating. I didn't know I would be assigned to so many responsibilities. You have no idea—I had to help them with the wedding ceremony and the dress-fitting, along with cake choosing. Of course, let's not forget my Tang suit. I got too many things on my plate, but I also enjoyed it for I knew how much this really meant for them.

And the dishes turned out to be amazing. Honestly speaking, the steak and red wine was such a nice match and the taste was really good, but among all of them, my favorite dish was the lobster. You know, my hometown is a coastal city, so the seafood there is very famous for its freshness and high quality. I wanted my friends to share this delicacy, and that's why I invited them. Also, the wedding banquet is of special meanings according to the Chinese tradition, so only the best friends and family members can be invited.

#### Celebration

There were a lot of people in the hotel, and it was a happy occasion. You know, everybody enjoyed tasty food, the band and a huge cake which was very colourful. Everyone was dancing and having a great time, and it was a great celebration with so much fun. Of course, they all dressed formal. Men wore Tang suits and ladies wore Tang dresses, as it was under the Chinese traditional theme.



I was just happy about having meal with my friends and families, and it makes the banquet really special.

以上就是对一顿特殊的饭菜的描述。

接下来我们会进入到一个新的家庭事件分支，那就是“照片”。婚礼这种场合，照片肯定必不可少，嫁接婚礼的现场描述及个人感受，核心素材使用率很高。



**Describe a photograph that you like.**

**You should say:**

**when it was taken**

**who took it**

**what is in the photograph**

**and explain why you like it.**



### 参考回答

I remember an old photo of my cousin about 10 years ago. It was taken at his wedding by a photographer and it was a great one. My cousin is 13 years older than me. On this photo, you can see a lot of my family members who were all very young then, including me, you know. I was so young in the photo, smiling nervously. My cousin and his wife were in the middle of the picture and you can also see people dancing in the background, wearing their best clothes. From this photo, you can see that the wedding was a really big one.

### Celebration

There were a lot of people in the hotel, and it was a happy occasion. You know, everybody enjoyed tasty food, the band and a huge cake which was very colourful. Everyone was dancing and having a great time, and it was a great celebration with so much fun. Of course, they all dressed formal. Men wore Tang suits and ladies wore Tang dresses, as it was under the Chinese traditional theme.

The reason why I like this photo is because that I've always liked weddings and parties, you know. It is who I am.



**Personal feeling**

I am a social person, so I like the crowd and I like hearing the laughter and feeling the positive energy in the air. You know, it just takes your worries and anxieties away. Also, where is a crowd, there is great music and food. What's not to like, right?

以下这两个话题卡的答案和上面这一个是完全一样的，一字不变，再次不赘述。



**Describe one of your favourite family photographs.**

**You should say:**

**who took the photo**

**when it was taken**

**where it was taken**

**and explain why you like it.**



**Describe an old photograph that you like.**

**You should say:**

**who took the photo**

**when it was taken**

**where it was taken**

**and explain why you like it.**

接下来我们来看看“不易合并的话题卡分支”。

以下这几个话题和家庭事件的相关性非常小，但是它们的特点就在于合并特性差，基本上很难合并到我们分类的某个话题中。因此，东东老师在这里给大家合并一下，作为一个话题合并的特殊化例子。

不过很遗憾，以下几个话题卡能够使用的核心素材比例比起之前我们遇见的和以后将要遇见的每一个大类都有明显的下降，是话题合并这种备考思路中比较棘手的几个话题卡。

首先我们来看“一种你喜欢的花儿”。





**Describe a flower that you like.**

**You should say:**

**what flower it is**

**what it looks like**

**where you have seen this flower**

**and explain why you like it.**



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about roses. I helped my cousin with his wedding prep, including what kind of flowers we should use.

#### Preparation

The preparation for this occasion is excruciating. I didn't know I would be assigned to so many responsibilities. ~~You have no idea—I had to help them with the wedding ceremony and the dress fitting, along with cake choosing. Of course, let's not forget my Tang suit. I~~ got too many things on my plate, but I also enjoyed it for I knew how much this really meant for them.

Well, I first decided to use roses as the background of the card for wedding invitation.

#### Invitation

~~I got an invitation letter from my cousin, as he was getting married and he asked me to be his best man. It was such a happy and important piece of news for me, as it was my first time to be invited as not just a guest but as the best man to a wedding. The invitation was printed on one card with roses flowers as the background sealed in a white envelope. The message was simple, you know. It went like this: “welcome to the wedding of Zhang Zhihao and Zhang Xiaoyu, and wear something nice, because you are going to be our best man.” And it smelled really nice. Of course, I felt so happy for them.~~

Also, I decide to use rose at the wedding right after I saw them in the dozens of samples that the wedding planner showed me. You know, the wedding was held in a hotel lobby which filled with white, pink and red roses. The guests could sense the sweet smell formed by



the mixture of rose. Many people hate rose, saying it is too common and regular, but I beg to differ, as it is really suitable and romantic. I think it is truly the best representative of love. After the wedding banquet, we all gathered in the central area of the lobby and took a family photo there. The background was filled with roses, so everyone in the photo looked amazing, and my cousin looked extremely handsome in the wedding with the decoration of flowers.

以下话题卡要求考生描述一件特殊场合的衣服，其实衣服的描述本身难度并不高，但是和特殊场合相关就一下子缩小了大家可选择的范围。但是相信大家都会同意婚礼是绝对特殊的场合，而婚礼上的着装则是我们的最合理选择。

大家还是会发现这种合并性较差的题目能够使用的核心素材比较少。



**Describe an item of clothing that you wear on special occasions.**

**You should say:**

**what is it**

**what this clothing looks like**

**on what special occasions you wear it**

**and explain why you wear it on special occasions.**



### 参考回答

OK, let me tell you something about the clothes for traditional Chinese weddings, which are really special occasions, right? Wearing the right clothes to a wedding is the basic etiquette for everybody in every country. In China, it's the same. Usually, males wear suits while females wear dresses. It's really nice. Sometimes the couple and guests would put on Tang suits, especially the red ones, you know, they are a kind of traditional Chinese clothes.

Tang suits originally refer to the traditional clothes of Tang dynasty, with many layers and made of silk. The signature feature of Tang suits is the long sleeves and Chinese style patterns, such as flowers and animals. Of course, the colours can be various, but the most symbolic ones are the red ones, as people wear them to the most important happy occasions, such as weddings.

And now they gets popular again. I remember my cousin's wedding was of traditional style, and everyone was required to wear Tang suits or Tang dresses.



### Celebration

There were a lot of people in the hotel, and it was a happy occasion. You know, everybody enjoyed tasty food, the band and a huge cake which was very colourful. Everyone was dancing and having a great time, and it was a great celebration with so much fun. Of course, they all dressed formal. Men wore Tang suits and ladies wore Tang dresses, as it was under the Chinese traditional theme.

以下两个话题的答案和以上基本一致，在此不赘述。

- Describe an item of clothing bought for you.
- Describe the type of clothes you like to wear.

以下话题卡我一般要求学生描述一辆汽车，毕竟选择余地更大且可说内容更多，如果要在家庭事件中合并的话我们可以选择“婚车”作为底料配上汽车的相关描述。但是同样的，因为话题卡的限制，我们可以用的核心素材非常有限。



**Describe a vehicle you would like to have in the future.**

**You should say:**

**what sort of vehicle it is**

**where you (first) saw this vehicle**

**what it looks like**

**and explain why you would like to have this vehicle.**



### 参考回答

I really want to buy a Mini Cooper of BMW in the future if I get a lot of money. It is called John Cooper and I saw it at my cousin's wedding.

John Cooper is very cute and small, and 4 people can fit in, but its function is amazing. When the weather is good, you can push the button and change it into a convertible, enjoy the beautiful sunshine and let the wind blow through your fingers and hair. Also, it can speed up within a few seconds, and the feeling is awesome. What's more, I think it is a very cost efficient car in the BMW company, you know, 400,000 RMB for such a wonderful car.

On my cousin's wedding day, he drove this car to pick up the bride from her home and he drove superfast, and then her Tang dress and wedding veil looked like they were floating in the sky.



That car was the wedding gift from my cousin's parents. It was so cool.

If I can be completely honest with you, I have another reason for it.

### Happy couple

I admire the marriage of my cousin and his wife. They had a wonderful wedding and they are so happy now. I always believe that they were meant to be together, as Zhang Zhihao saved Zhang Xiaoyu from drowning in a swimming pool. That day, when he was swimming, he suddenly saw a girl struggling in the water, so he rushed to her side and pulled her out of the water. She was in pain because of her leg cramp, so he took her to the resting area and accompanied her. That's how they met. And they fell in love with each other and then got married. I believe they have found the true love.

As a result, I also secretly want to be this happy, you know. I've always imagined that this would be my wedding car someday in the future as well.

以下话题卡的答案完全同上，在此不再赘述。



### **Describe a vehicle you would like to buy**

**You should say:**

**what vehicle it would be**

**what it would look like**

**why you would like to have it**

**and explain why you would prefer this means of transport.**

以下这个话题也是不容易合并的话题卡，即有“用的电子产品”。同样的原创内容相对较多，核心素材比例很低。



### **Describe a useful piece of electrical equipment (besides the computer) that you use.**

**You should say**

**how you use it**

**where you use it**

**what you use it for**

**and explain why you think this thing is useful.**





### 参考回答

I want to tell you something about the GPS, aka Global Position System. It is very cool. I bought one after I got my driver's license, you know, in case I ran into some unfamiliar neighborhood. And it came in handy right away, well, not for me, but for my cousin. A while ago,

#### Invitation

I got an invitation letter from my cousin, as he was getting married and he asked me to be his best man. It was such a happy and important piece of news for me, as it was my first time to be invited as not just a guest but as the best man to a wedding. The invitation was printed on one card with flowers as the background sealed in a white envelope. The message was simple, you know. It went like this: "welcome to the wedding of Zhang Zhihao and Zhang Xiaoyu, and wear something nice, because you are going to be our best man." And it smelled really nice. Of course, I felt so happy for them.

So I was told to help them with the wedding planning and everything,

#### Preparation

The preparation for this occasion is excruciating. I didn't know I would be assigned to so many responsibilities. You have no idea—I had to help them with the wedding ceremony and the dress fitting, along with cake choosing. Of course, let's not forget my Tang suit. I got too many things on my plate, but I also enjoyed it for I knew how much this really meant for them.

I was told to drive him from his home to pick up his bride on the big day, but the original GPS system in his car was kind of out of order for some unknown reasons, you know. It was extremely slow and always led you to the long way rather than the short cut, and I was new in town as well. So instead, we decided to use my GPS, which could lead the way even on the grassland. It tells you the right way and alert you about the road condition in advance, as it connected with the police traffic system. Well, thanks to my GPS, everything went on smoothly on the wedding day. It's hard to imagine what would happen if they use the old one.

The little gadget, you can't live by it, nor live without it.

以上几个话题卡是 Part 2 话题中不容易合并的几个，大家一定要对它们更加留意，以防止自己在



遇到该话题后被打得措手不及。



**Describe a piece of clothes that was given by someone (见 345, 改)**



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about a Tang suit that my cousin gave me during his wedding, as he invited me to be his best man. That was my first formal wear and it was really special.

OK, let me tell you something about the clothes for Chinese traditional weddings, which are special occasions, right? Wearing the right clothes to weddings is the basic responsibility for everybody in every country. In China, it's the same, usually, male will wear suits and girls will wear dresses. It is really nice. But in the past the couple and the guests would put on Tang suits, especially the red ones, you know, it is a kind of traditional Chinese clothes.

Tang suits originally refer to the traditional clothes of Tang dynasty, so it has many layers and made of silk. The signature feature of it is the long sleeves and Chinese style patterns, such as flowers and animals. Of course, the colors can be various, from green to blue, but the most symbolic ones are the red ones, as people wear them to the most important occasions, such as wedding.

And now it gets popular again. I remember my cousin's wedding was under the theme of it, and everyone was required to wear Tang suits or Tang dresses.

+Celebration

+Personal feeling



**Describe a food that you tried for the first time(340)**



### 参考回答

The food that I tried for the first time was lobster. It was a very special dinner.

The special meal is a wedding banquet of my cousin. The wedding was held in a hotel called



Jinyuan in the city center of our hometown. I invited 2 of my best friends to come with me, and the dishes were amazing, because I helped them to decide what dishes should be served.

And the dishes turned out to be amazing. Honestly speaking, the steak and red wine was such a nice match and the taste was really good, but among all of them, my favorite dish was the lobster, you know, my hometown is a coastal city, so the seafood there is very famous for its freshness and high quality. I wanted my friends to share this delicacy, that's why I invited them. Also, the wedding banquet is a special thing according to Chinese tradition, so only the best friends and family members can be invited.

### Celebration

There were a lot of people in the hotel, and it was a happy occasion. You know, everybody had tasty food, the band and a huge cake which was very colorful. Everyone was dancing and having a great time, and it was a great celebration with so much fun. (Of course, they all dressed formal. Men wore Tang suits and ladies wore Tang dresses, as it was under the Chinese traditional theme.)

I was just happy about having lobster with my friends and families, that's what makes it really special.



**Describe something that you shared with others**



### 参考回答

I want to tell you something about my GPS, aka Global Position System, which I shared with my cousin on his wedding day. It is very cool. I bought one after I got my driver's license, you know, in case I ran into some unfamiliar neighborhood and it came in handy right away. Well, not for me, but for my cousin.

A while ago,

### Invitation

I got an invitation letter from my cousin, as he was getting married and he asked me to be his best man. (It was such a happy and important piece of news for me, as it was my



first time to be invited as not just a guest but as the best man to a wedding. The invitation was printed on one card with flowers as the background sealed in a white envelope. The message was simple, you know, it went “welcome to the wedding of Zhang Zihao and Zhang Xiaoyu, and wear something nice, because you are going to be our best man.” And it smelled really nice. Everyone in the family felt so happy for them. )

So I was told to help them with the wedding planning and everything,



### 参考回答

#### Preparation

The preparation for this occasion is excruciating. (I didn't know I would be assigned to so many responsibilities. You have no idea, I had to help them with the wedding ceremony and the dress fitting, along with cake choosing. Of course, let's not forget my Tang suit. I got too many things on my plate, but I also enjoyed it for I knew how much this really meant for them.)

My cousin needed to pick up his bride on the big day, but the original GPS system in his car was kind of dead for some unknown reasons, you know, it was extremely slow and always led you to the long way rather than the short cut, and I was new in town as well. So instead, we decided to use my GPS, which can lead the way even on the grassland. It tells you the right way and alert you about the road condition in advance, as it connected with the police traffic system. Well, thanks to my GPS, and everything went on smoothly on the wedding day, it's hard to imagine what would happen if they use the old one.

The little gadget, can't live it, can't live without it.



**Describe a tradition in your country (344)**



### 参考回答

One tradition in my country is to wear Chinese traditional clothes, which are Tang suits and Tang dresses during the wedding. Wearing the right clothes to weddings is the basic responsibility



for everybody in every country. In China, it's the same, usually, male will wear suits and girls will wear dresses. It is really nice. But in the past the couple and the guests would put on Tang suits, especially the red ones, you know, it is a kind of traditional Chinese clothes.

This is such an important tradition, and many areas of China still follow this tradition, especially in the rural areas.

Tang suits originally refer to the traditional clothes of Tang dynasty, so it has many layers and made of silk. The signature feature of it is the long sleeves and Chinese style patterns, such as flowers and animals. Of course, the colors can be various, from green to blue, but the most symbolic ones are the red ones, as people wear them to the most important occasions, such as wedding.

And now it gets popular again. I remember my cousin's wedding was under the theme of it, and everyone was required to wear Tang suits or Tang dresses.

### Celebration

There were a lot of people in the hotel, and it was a happy occasion. (You know, everybody had tasty food, the band and a huge cake which was very colorful. Everyone was dancing and having a great time, and it was a great celebration with so much fun.) Of course, they all dressed formal. Men wore Tang suits and ladies wore Tang dresses, as it was under the Chinese traditional theme.

至此，婚礼这个家庭事件就先讲解到此。本小结的内容帮助大家学习了如下 23 个 Part 2 话题卡，希望大家可以尽快按照这个思路修改内容并形成自己的模版。

1. Describe a piece of happy family news that you once received.
2. Describe a special letter or card you received.
3. Describe a party you arranged for your friends or family.
4. Describe a wedding you attended.
5. Describe an enjoyable family event that you attended.
6. Describe a couple you know who you think have a happy marriage.
7. Describe an occasion when you were polite.
8. Describe a situation when you received congratulations from others.
9. Describe a special meal you invited your friends to eat with you.
10. Describe a photograph that you like.
11. Describe one of your favourite family photographs.
12. Describe an old photograph that you like.



13. Describe a flower that you like.
14. Describe an item of clothing that you wear on special occasions.
15. Describe an item of clothing bought for you.
16. Describe the type of clothes you like to wear.
17. Describe a vehicle you would like to have in the future.
18. Describe a vehicle you would like to buy.
19. Describe a useful piece of electrical equipment (besides the computer) that you use.
20. Describe a piece of clothes that was given by someone.
21. Describe a food that you tried for the first time.
22. Describe something that you shared with others.
23. Describe a tradition in your country.



如果大家不想使用婚礼作为素材，只需要扫描二维码，关注东东老师的微信公众平台“谢绍东 Shadow”并回复关键词“谢绍东的 999 条英语口语素材”即可收到大量家庭事件题素材的相关资料。



## IELTS 物品类 | 06

### 1 如何选择并制作自己 DIY 的素材

物品题是目前雅思口语老师上课时分类最混乱的一个 Part 2 大类，不少老师选择把电影、音乐、花朵、学科等话题都放在物品题中讲解。但是根据我的个人经验，只有极少数水平很高的考生可以在这样的前提下准备好物品题。大部分“烤鸭”都会因为这种过于宽泛的分类方式导致思路混乱和大量的重复工作。

因此，我的物品题目分类比较明确地指具体的物品以及与具体的物品相关的买卖或赠与行为，而不会包括很抽象的学科、花朵等题目。这些话题都在我的八大类当中，虽然，比起一般老师的四大类 Part 2 话题分类多出一些，但是这样分类 Part 2 的主题更加鲜明，从效果上来看其实更为理想。

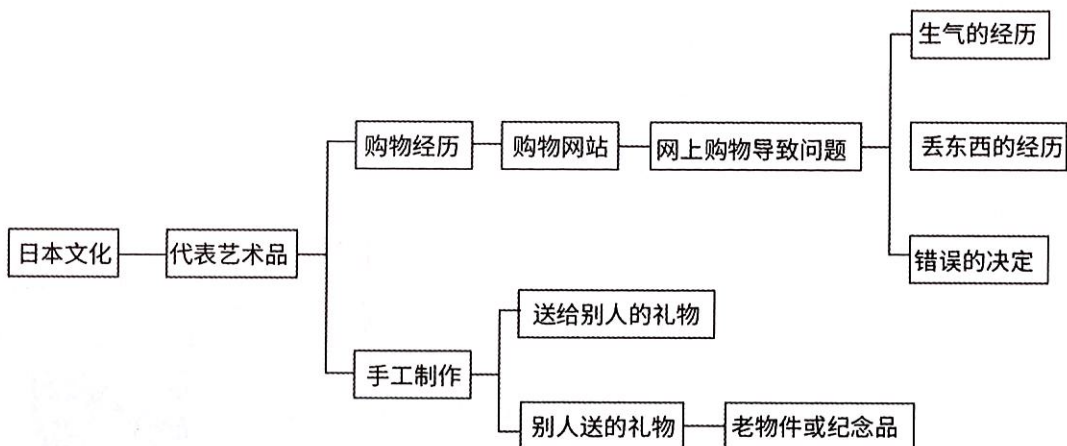
现在，我们还是按照 4S 黄金法则，进行准备。



### Step ① 要刻意地选择符合雅思口语考题的物品主题

物品题的话题分布有两个主流分支，从思路上还是比较清晰。一条分支着重在物品本身，另一条分支则集中在于物品相关的行为及事件上。

详情请大家见下图：



针对以上流程图的话题合并，我们以晴天娃娃这个物品为例，请大家看这个故事：

#### 例

晴天娃娃是我最喜欢的日本手工艺品，它有很强的日本文化特点，而且我经常在动画片中看到晴天娃娃作为装饰挂在主角的窗户旁，所以我很喜欢它。它的制作方法和材料都非常简单，只需要一个木头球、白手帕、铃铛和一根绳子。但是真正纯手工制作的晴天娃娃往往因为数量稀少、材料讲究而十分昂贵。在我小时候，我的阿姨从日本归来时送给我一个晴天娃娃的手工艺品，我一直都珍藏着，那也是我最喜欢的儿时玩具。

虽然我的学生大多为 90 后，但是大家对于晴天娃娃应该是不陌生的，相信大家也已经明白我们的故事要如何开始了。

### Step ② 具体物品选定后要多留意以下单词及信息

具体物品（如本章节使用的晴天娃娃）确定后，烤鸭可以按照以上逻辑图示准备适量的相关单词，切记不要选择过难或者与实际要说内容没有相关性的单词。一定要时刻谨记“过犹不及”。现在我们看看核心单词到底有多少呢？



核心单词	针对“晴天娃娃”这个物品
物品外观 outlook	Sunny Doll / alternative / version / wind bell / huge head / covered / white silk handkerchief / hang / bell / literally / window
日本文化 Japanese culture	Japan / famous / exotic / culture / represented / paintings / legends / exquisite / detailed / handicrafts / curious / cartoon / combined / charming / factors / several / legends / consider / well-recognised / symbol / local culture / popular / religious
艺术品 piece of art	true / art form / springs / require / skill / purely / by hand / complicated / get in touch / easily / beautiful / mysterious myth
相关传说 legends	according / legend / ancient / pray / weather / roof / prays / paint / patterns / show / gratitude / dance / positive atmosphere
网购的问题 problems with shopping online	unpleasant / shopping / dissatisfied / product / regretted / specific / material / right choice / check / credit / comment / customer / unlucky / lost / major part / package / delivery
手工艺品 handicrafts	Sunny doll / classy / train station / consideration / wooden ball / white silk / strings / pattern / spontaneous / wrapped / tied / shape / star / decoration / unique
亲友馈赠礼物 gift from others	favourite toy / amazing gift / surprised / typical / abroad / value / sentimental / addicted / obvious / dust

**Step ③ 把以上单词串联成独立的自然段，Step 2 学会的单词马上可以用到了**



### Outlook

**Sunny Doll** is like an **alternative version** of the **wind bell**. It has a huge **head** and **covered** by a **white silk handkerchief**. Sometimes, people **hang** a **bell** under it so it can **literally** be a wind bell and hung by the **window**.



### Japanese culture

**Japan** is **famous** for its **exotic culture**. Some parts of it are **represented** by **paintings** and **legends** while some by **exquisite** and **detailed handicrafts**. I started to feel **curious** about Japanese culture because of one handicraft that I saw on one **cartoon**, you know,



Sunny Doll. As it **combined** those two **charming features**, it is not only a handicraft but with **several** different versions of **legends** as well. I really **consider** it as one of the most **well-recognised symbol** of the **local culture**. The most **popular** version of its legend is rather **religious** in my mind.



### Piece of art

---

It is the **true art form** in my mind, as it **springs** from the culture and **requires** very little **skill** if you want to make it **purely by hand**. Usually people believe that art should be **complicated**, but I think true art should be the ones that people can **get in touch easily** and do it by themselves. And of course, there is a **beautiful** and **mysterious myth** behind it.



### Legend

---

**According** to the **legend**, in **ancient** times, people **pray** to have a good **weather** so they made Sunny Dolls and hung them under the **roof**. If their **prayers** had been answered, I mean, if it's sunny the next day, they will **paint** some beautiful **patterns** on it or to hang a bell under it to **show** their **gratitude**. When the wind is blowing, the Sunny Doll will **dance** with it and the bell will ring and give people a **positive atmosphere**.



### Problems with shopping online

---

I had a very **unpleasant** experience about **shopping** on the Internet, which makes me feel **dissatisfied** with the **product** and **regretted** it a lot. It was because of the Sunny Doll that I bought. To be more **specific**, there was one time that I really needed to buy some **material** of making Sunny Dolls online, and it was quite important for me to make the **right choice**. As a result, I took a lot of time to **check** the **credit** of the shops and **comments** from other **customers**. Well, I guess I was really just **unlucky**, as one **major part** of the **package** was lost during the **delivery**.



### Handicraft

---

Making a **Sunny Doll** was actually not as easy as people think it would be, if you really want it to be classy rather than looking like something you bought from a shop in a **train station**. Everything must be taken into **consideration**, including the **wooden ball, white silk**



and **strings**. But the **pattern** can be a little bit more **spontaneous**. I drew a smiling face on the silk before I **wrapped** the ball with it and tied them together with the strings. What's more, I cut the silk into a **shape** of the **star** as a **decoration**, so I could have a **unique** Sunny Doll.



### Gift from others

Sunny Doll is my **favorite toy** when I was a child, as it was an **amazing gift**. You may feel **surprised**, because it is not a **typical** toy for kids; let me tell you why. When I was a child, one day, my aunt visited my family, and she gave me a Sunny Doll that she bought from Japan. It was my first gift from **abroad**, so I really **value** it for **sentimental** reasons. Back then, I was **addicted** to it without any **obvious** reason, and I would watch it all day long. I did spend a lot of time with the doll and the rest of my toys were put under my bed covered by **dust**.

#### Step ④ 练习用四句话描述对日本文化 / 晴天娃娃的感受

我们来试试看如何用四句话概括对日本文化 / 晴天娃娃的感受，本大类话题中包含了抽象的文化描述和具体的物品描述，所以个人感受段落也肩负着对这两种主题的描述。请大家先看如下表述：



### Personal feeling

1. Japanese culture has always held a special place in my heart.
2. And many of my peers feel exactly the same way, because it appeared in cartoons that we used to watch every day when we were kids.
3. You know, just like the capital letter S always reminds American kids of Superman, the Japanese culture always reminds us about the cartoons that we used to watch and the fun that they used to bring to us.
4. That's why we all like it very much.

以上内容基本可以具体物品描述的话题卡收尾段，大家在必要时将以上段落中的 Japanese culture 替换成 Sunny Doll 就可以进行抽象文化和具体物品之间的替换了。

## 2 如何实际运用自己 DIY 的素材

现在，有了以上这样的核心素材以下题目均可迎刃而解。我们以“Describe a foreign culture that you are interested in”为例，大家试着把 Japanese culture 和 Personal feeling 两个自然段连起



来,是不是可以连成一篇完整且完全符合雅思口语考试高分标准的素材呢?



**Describe a foreign culture that you are interested in.**

**You should say:**

**what this culture is**

**what you know about this culture**

**how you learned about this culture**

**and explain why you feel this culture is interesting.**



### 参考回答

OK, I like Japanese culture the most. Actually, I think most people of my age are all under some influence of it, as we all watch Japanese cartoons when we were children.

#### Japanese culture

Japan is famous for its exotic culture. Some parts of it are represented by paintings and legends while some by exquisite and detailed handicrafts. I started to feel curious about Japanese culture because of one handicraft that I saw on one cartoon, you know, Sunny Doll. As it combined those two charming features, it is not only a handicraft but with several different versions of legends as well. I really consider it as one of the most well-recognised symbol of the local culture. The most popular version of its legend is rather religious in my mind.

Besides, the Internet is so convenient right now, so we can get tons of first hand material if we need to and even buy some handicrafts online. The more I get to know about it, the more I like it.

#### Personal feeling

Japanese culture has always held a special place in my heart. And many of my peers feel exactly the same way, because it appeared in cartoons that we used to watch every day when we were kids. You know, just like the capital letter S always reminds American kids of Superman, the Japanese culture always reminds us about the cartoons that we used to watch and the fun that they used to bring to us. That's why we all like it very much.



以下话题虽然使用了 Japanese culture, Legend 及 Piece of art 三个核心素材, 但是 Japanese culture 这个部分有部分内容与本话题无关并进行了删除, 请大家注意。



**Describe a piece of art that you like.**

**You should say:**

**What this piece of art is**

**what you know about it**

**how you learnt about this piece of art**

**and explain why you like it.**



### 参考回答

Well, the piece of art that I like is a handicraft that my aunt brought back from Japan. It is a really delicate Sunny Doll that she found in a boutique shop next to a Japanese shrine. It really is not the mediocre, run of the mill, gift shop type, but a very nice and expensive one.

#### Japanese culture

Japan is famous for its exotic culture. Some parts of it are represented by paintings and legends while some by exquisite and detailed handicrafts. I started to feel curious about Japanese culture because of one handicraft that I saw on one cartoon, you know, Sunny Doll. As it combined those two charming features, it is not only a handicraft but with several different versions of legends as well. I really consider it as one of the most well-recognised symbol of the local culture. The most popular version of its legend is rather religious in my mind.

My aunt told me a lot about it.

#### Legend

According to the legend, in ancient times, people pray to have a good weather so they made Sunny Dolls and hung them under the roof. If their prayers had been answered, I mean, if it's sunny the next day, they will paint some beautiful patterns on it or to hang a bell under it to show their gratitude. When the wind is blowing, the Sunny Doll will dance with it and the bell will ring and give people a positive atmosphere.



### Piece of art

It is the true art form in my mind, as it springs from the culture and requires very little skill if you want to make it purely by hand. Usually people believe that art should be complicated, but I think true art should be the ones that people can get in touch easily and do it by themselves. And of course, there is a beautiful and mysterious myth behind it.

And this is a piece of art that I like.

以下两个话题卡都是与“钱”有关的物品题，所以有一定的相似之处，都使用了之前提到过的核心段落 Personal feeling。但是因为话题卡中具体问题的差异，第一个话题卡使用了 Outlook 这一核心素材，而第二个话题卡则使用了 Legend 这个核心素材，值得大家注意和区分。



**Describe something expensive you would buy if you had a lot of money.**

**You should say:**

**what it would be**

**what it would look like**

**how much it would cost**

**and explain why you would buy this.**



### 参考回答

I've always wanted to buy a Sunny Doll if I had a lot of money, not the mediocre, run of the mill, gift shop type, but a very nice and expensive one. You know, the ones that you can only find in a boutique shop next to a Japanese shrine, the real handicraft. Those are very rare; usually even the smallest one may cost 100 US dollars, but it will be worth it.

### Outlook

Sunny Doll is like an alternative version of the wind bell. It has a huge head and covered by a white silk handkerchief. Sometimes, people hang a bell under it so it can literally be a wind bell and hung by the window.

I've always liked Japanese culture, so I wish I could have something in my home to represent it, and



that's why I want to buy a well-made Sunny Doll. You know, so that I can have a sense of the culture.

### Personal feeling

Sunny Doll (Japanese culture) has always held a special place in my heart. And many of my peers feel exactly the same way, because it appeared in cartoons that we used to watch every day when we were kids. You know, just like the capital letter S always reminds American kids of Superman, the Sunny Doll (Japanese culture) always reminds us about the cartoons that we used to watch and the fun that they used to bring to us. That's why we all like it very much.

以上答案和以下答案的相似之处主要在于 Personal feeling 这个段落的使用。



### Describe something that you saved money to buy.

**You should say:**

**what it was**

**how long it took you to save enough money to buy it**

**why you wanted to buy this thing**

**and explain how you felt when you bought it.**



### 参考回答

Once, I saved about 100 US dollars, which took me about half a year for it, as I really wanted to buy a Sunny Doll, not the mediocre, run of the mill, gift shop type, but a very nice and expensive one, you know, the ones that you can only find in a boutique shop next to a Japanese shrine, the real handicraft. Those are very rare, usually even the smallest one may cost 100 US dollars, but it was totally worth it when I finally got it.

### Personal feeling

Sunny Doll (Japanese culture) has always held a special place in my heart. And many of my peers feel exactly the same way, because it appeared in cartoons that we used to watch every day when we were kids. You know, just like the capital letter S always reminds American kids of Superman, the Sunny Doll (Japanese culture) always reminds us about the cartoons that we used to watch and the fun that they used to bring. That's why we all like it very much.



I've always liked Japanese culture, so I wish I could have something in my home to represent it, and that's why I wanted to buy a well-made one. You know, so that I can have a better sense of the culture.

### Legend

According to the legend, in the ancient times, people pray to have a good weather so they made Sunny Dolls and hung them under the roof. If their prayers had been answered, I mean, if it's sunny the next day, they will paint some beautiful patterns on it or to hang a bell under it to show their gratitude. When the wind is blowing, the Sunny Doll will dance with it and the bell will ring and give people a positive atmosphere.

“一个有用的网站”是很容易进行话题合并题目,难度很低。既可以合并在本书之前已经提到的“地点题”大类,也可以合并在本书之后将要提到的“学术科目”大类。可以算是少有的非常简单的话题卡,今天以物品题为例进行合并,核心段落为 Outlook 及 Handicraft.



**Describe a useful website that helps you do something.**

**You should say:**

**what this website helps you to do**

**how (and when) you first found (or found out about) this website**

**how often you go to this website**

**and explain how (or, why) this website helps you.**



### 参考回答

The website that I like the most is a shopping website, which is called eBay. Well, I choose to talk about it not because that I am a shopaholic or anything, but because that I really like the shopping experience while buying things on it. One time, I bought some materials for making the Japanese Sunny Doll on this website and it really helped me in many ways, you know, saved me a lot of trouble and time. For instance, I found out how the doll looked like online with pictures.

### Outlook

Sunny Doll is like an alternative version of the wind bell. It has a huge head and covered by a white silk handkerchief. Sometimes, people hang a bell under it so it can literally be a wind bell and hung by the window.



Also, the shop online of eBay actually offers a very detailed description of how to make a Sunny Doll. It's all there.

### Handicraft

Making a Sunny Doll was actually not as easy as people think it would be, if you really want it to be classy rather than looking like something you bought from a shop in a train station. Everything must be taken into consideration, including the wooden ball, white silk and strings. But the pattern can be a little bit more spontaneous. I drew a smiling face on the silk before I wrapped the ball with it and tied them together with the strings. What's more, I cut the silk into a shape of the star as a decoration, so I could have a unique Sunny Doll.

And I learnt all those things on eBay and bought all the material there as well, that's why I like this website so much.

以下五个话题：“一件不满意的商品”、“一次不愉快的购物体验”、“一个让你感到生气的情形”、“一个错误的决定”、“一件丢失的物品”，这些话题卡总体的情绪是负面消极的，所以和它们相关的核心素材也主要围绕在 Problems with shopping online 这个段落，但是随着话题卡的变化，该核心段落前后的回答也特别值得关注和调整，具体变化请大家阅读以下内容。



**Describe something that you bought that you were dissatisfied with.**

**You should say:**

**what the item was**

**when and where you bought it**

**why you bought it**

**and explain why you were not happy with this product.**



### 参考回答

I once bought a Sunny Doll and I didn't like it very much. Frankly speaking, I had a very good reason for it.



### Problems with shopping online

I had a very unpleasant experience about shopping on the Internet, which makes me feel dissatisfied with the product and regretted it a lot. It was because of the Sunny Doll that I bought. To be more specific, there was one time that I really needed to buy some material of making Sunny Dolls online, and it was quite important for me to make the right choice. As a result, I took a lot of time to check the credit of the shops and comments from other customers. Well, I guess I was really just unlucky, as one major part of the package was lost during the delivery.

For some reason, they lost the doll's head, which is the most important part of a Sunny Doll, so I refused to sign the goods which contained only the silk and strings. And I was a little angry, because that I didn't pay the money doesn't mean that I didn't lose anything. I lost my time. So I made a phone call and negotiated with the seller, and they agreed to send me a new one. This time it was just fine. However, I had missed the birthday of my friend, as it was supposed to be a present. I never looked at the Sunny Doll again.



**Describe an unhappy shopping experience that you had.**

**You should say:**

**what you bought**

**when and where you bought it**

**why you bought it**

**and explain why this experience was unhappy.**



### 参考回答

Well, about one year ago, I bought something on eBay and I will never do it again.

### Problems with shopping online

I had a very unpleasant experience about shopping on the Internet, which makes me feel dissatisfied with the product and regretted it a lot. It was because of the Sunny Doll that I bought. To be more specific, there was one time that I really needed to buy some material of making Sunny Dolls online, and it was quite important for me to make the right choice.



As a result, I took a lot of time to check the credit of the shops and comments from other customers. Well, I guess I was really just unlucky, as one major part of the package was lost during the delivery.

For some reason, they lost the doll's head, which is the most important part of a Sunny Doll, so I refused to sign the goods which contained only the silk and strings. And I was a little angry, because that I didn't pay the money doesn't mean that I didn't lose anything. I lost my time. So I made a phone call and negotiated with the seller, and they agreed to send me a new one. This time it was just fine. However, I had missed the birthday of my friend, as it was supposed to be a present. I never looked at the Sunny Doll again.



**Describe a situation that made you a little angry.**

**You should say:**

**what it was that made you angry**

**where you were when this happened**

**what you were doing at the time**

**how you handled it**

**and explain why you felt angry.**



### 参考回答

Well, about one year ago, I bought something on eBay and I will never do it again.

#### Problems with shopping online

I had a very unpleasant experience about shopping on the Internet, which makes me feel dissatisfied with the product and regretted it a lot. It was because of the Sunny Doll that I bought. To be more specific, there was one time that I really needed to buy some material of making Sunny Dolls online, and it was quite important for me to make the right choice. As a result, I took a lot of time to check the credit of the shops and comments from other customers. Well, I guess I was really just unlucky, as one major part of the package was lost during the delivery.

For some reason, they lost the doll's head, which is the most important part of a Sunny



Doll, so I refused to sign the goods which contained only the silk and strings. And I was little angry, because that I didn't pay the money doesn't mean that I didn't lose anything. I lost my time. So I made a phone call and negotiated with the seller, and they agreed to send me a new one. This time it was just fine. However, I had missed the birthday of my friend, as it was supposed to be a present. I never looked at the Sunny Doll again.



**Describe a wrong decision made by someone you know.**

**You should say:**

**who made this wrong decision**

**what the decision was**

**what the situation was**

**and explain why you think it was the wrong decision.**



### 参考回答

Well, about one year ago, I bought something on eBay and I will never do it again. It was one of the most stupid decisions that I have ever made.

#### Problems with shopping online

I had a very unpleasant experience about shopping on the Internet, which makes me feel dissatisfied with the product and regretted it a lot. It was because of the Sunny Doll that I bought. To be more specific, there was one time that I really needed to buy some material of making Sunny Dolls online, and it was quite important for me to make the right choice. As a result, I took a lot of time to check the credit of the shops and comments from other customers. Well, I guess I was really just unlucky, as one major part of the package was lost during the delivery.

For some reason, they lost the doll's head, which is the most important part of a Sunny Doll, so I refused to sign the goods which contained only the silk and strings. And I was a little angry, because that I didn't pay the money doesn't mean that I didn't lose anything. I



lost my time. So I made a phone call and negotiated with the seller, and they agreed to send me a new one. This time it was just fine. However, I had missed the birthday of my friend, as it was supposed to be a present. I never looked at the Sunny Doll again.



**Describe a time when you lost something.**

**You should say:**

**what you lost**

**when and where and you lost it**

**what you were doing at the time**

**and explain how you felt after you lost it.**



### 参考回答

About one year ago, I lost something during the delivery after I made an order online. It was fine at the very beginning, but then it got horrible. I didn't know what went wrong; some part just went missing.

#### Problems with shopping online

I had a very unpleasant experience about shopping on the Internet, which makes me feel dissatisfied with the product and regretted it a lot. It was because of the Sunny Doll that I bought. To be more specific, there was one time that I really needed to buy some material of making Sunny Dolls online, and it was quite important for me to make the right choice. As a result, I took a lot of time to check the credit of the shops and comments from other customers. Well, I guess I was really just unlucky, as one major part of the package was lost during the delivery.

Let me tell you more in detail.

#### Outlook

Sunny Doll is like an alternative version of the wind bell. It has a huge head and covered by a white silk handkerchief. Sometimes, people hang a bell under it so it can literally be a wind bell and hung by the window.

For some reason, they lost the doll's head, which is the most important part of a Sunny



Doll, so I refused to sign the goods which contained only the silk and strings. And I was a little angry, because that I didn't pay the money doesn't mean that I didn't lose anything. I lost my time. So I made a phone call and negotiated with the seller, and they agreed to send me a new one. This time it was just fine. However, I had missed the birthday of my friend, as it was supposed to be a present. I never looked at the Sunny Doll again.

以下三个话题都着重在物品体中手工艺品的制作方面，所以核心段落主要集中在 Outlook 及 Handicraft 部分。但是值得注意的是，一下三个话题卡中有一些较为细节的问题，不在核心素材内，大家会发现我们需要在开头就进行“开门见山”式的解答，并在段落之间进行补充和过度。



**Describe something you made yourself (either alone or with others) when you were a child.**

**You should say:**

**what it was**

**where (and when) you made it**

**how you made it**

**what you needed to make it (e.g., what tools, equipment and materials)**

**and explain why you made it yourself.**



### 参考回答

Well, I made a Sunny Doll all by myself when I was a child. I spent a whole Sunday afternoon at home finishing it.

#### Outlook

Sunny Doll is like an alternative version of the wind bell. It has a huge head and covered by a white silk handkerchief. Sometimes, people hang a bell under it so it can literally be a wind bell and hung by the window.

I bought all the materials online and found a very detailed description of how to make it.

#### Handicraft

Making a Sunny Doll was actually not as easy as people think it would be, if you really want it to be classy rather than looking like something you bought from a shop in a train station. Everything must be taken into consideration, including the wooden ball, white silk



and strings. But the pattern can be a little bit more spontaneous. I drew a smiling face on the silk before I wrapped the ball with it and tied them together with the strings. What's more, I cut the silk into a shape of the star as a decoration, so I could have a unique Sunny Doll.

The reason why I went through all those trouble was that I wanted to surprise my friend Fiona on her birthday, and she did like it very much.



**Describe a special gift that you gave to someone.**

**You should say:**

**what the gift was**

**who the gift was for**

**when and where you bought it**

**and explain why it was special.**



### 参考回答

Well, I made a Sunny Doll all by myself when I was a child. I spent a whole Sunday afternoon at home finishing it. The reason why I went through all those trouble was that I wanted to surprise my friend Fiona on her birthday, and she did like it very much.

### Outlook

Sunny Doll is like an alternative version of the wind bell. It has a huge head and covered by a white silk handkerchief. Sometimes, people hang a bell under it so it can literally be a wind bell and hung by the window.

I bought all the materials online and found a very detailed description of how to make it.

### Handicraft

Making a Sunny Doll was actually not as easy as people think it would be, if you really want it to be classy rather than looking like something you bought from a shop in a train station. Everything must be taken into consideration, including the wooden ball, white silk and strings. But the pattern can be a little bit more spontaneous. I drew a smiling face on



the silk before I wrapped the ball with it and tied them together with the strings. What's more, I cut the silk into a shape of the star as a decoration, so I could have a unique Sunny Doll.



**Describe an important decision that you made.**

**You should say:**

**what the decision was**

**how you made your decision**

**what the results of the decision were**

**and explain why it was important.**



### 参考回答

Well, I remember I decided to make a Sunny Doll all by myself, as I wanted to surprise my friend Fiona on her birthday, so I spent a lot of time at home finishing it.

### Outlook

Sunny Doll is like an alternative version of the wind bell. It has a huge head and covered by a white silk handkerchief. Sometimes, people hang a bell under it so it can literally be a wind bell and hung by the window.

I bought all the materials online and found a very detailed description of how to make it.

### Handicraft

Making a Sunny Doll was actually not as easy as people think it would be, if you really want it to be classy rather than looking like something you bought from a shop in a train station. Everything must be taken into consideration, including the wooden ball, white silk and strings. But the pattern can be a little bit more spontaneous. I drew a smiling face on the silk before I wrapped the ball with it and tied them together with the strings. What's more, I cut the silk into a shape of the star as a decoration, so I could have a unique Sunny Doll.



Luckily, Fiona did like the gift very much. As her best friend, I think it is very important to choose the right present for her.

以下三个话题在问发上有很多的相似之处，核心素材主要集中在 Legend, Gift from others 及 Outlook 这三个段落。因此需要灵活变通的地方主要集中在答案一开始的段落和段落之间衔接的部分。



**Describe a toy that was special to you when you were a child.**

**You should say:**

**when you got it**

**what it looked like**

**where you played with it**

**who gave it to you**

**and explain how you used it (how you played with it).**



### 参考回答

Well, usually kids like Transformers or Teddy Bears, but my taste is a little bit different from others. I like Sunny Doll, and I used to hang it by my bedroom window and listen to the sound of wind blowing through or hang it under my lamp as a decoration.

#### Outlook

Sunny Doll is like an alternative version of the wind bell. It has a huge head and covered by a white silk handkerchief. Sometimes, people hang a bell under it so it can literally be a wind bell and hung by the window.

#### Gift from others

Sunny Doll is my favorite toy when I was a child, as it was an amazing gift. You may feel surprised, because it is not a typical toy for kids; let me tell you why. When I was a child, one day, my aunt visited my family, and she gave me a Sunny Doll that she bought from Japan. It was my first gift from abroad, so I really value it for sentimental reasons. Back then, I was addicted to it without any obvious reason, and I would watch it all day



long. I did spend a lot of time with the doll and the rest of my toys were put under my bed covered by dust.

### Legend

According to the legend, in ancient times, people pray to have a good weather so they made Sunny Dolls and hung them under the roof. If their pray had been answered, I mean, if it's sunny the next day, they will paint some beautiful patterns on it or to hang a bell under it to show their gratitude. When the wind is blowing, the Sunny Doll will dance with it and the bell will ring and give people a positive atmosphere.



**Describe a person who visited your home.**

**You should say:**

**who the person was**

**why they visited your home**

**how you spent the time with this visitor (or how you entertained this visitor)**

**and explain how you felt about the visit.**



### 参考回答

My aunt visits my family very often as we live in the same community and it is really easy to stop by just like that. There was this one visit that I remember very well, as she bought me an expensive gift, a Sunny Doll.

### Outlook

Sunny Doll is like an alternative version of the wind bell. It has a huge head and covered by a white silk handkerchief. Sometimes, people hang a bell under it so it can literally be a wind bell and hung by the window.

### Gift from others

Sunny Doll is my favorite toy when I was a child, as it was an amazing gift. You may feel



surprised, because it is not a typical toy for kids; let me tell you why. When I was a child, one day, my aunt visited my family, and she gave me a Sunny Doll that she bought from Japan. It was my first gift from abroad, so I really value it for sentimental reasons. Back then, I was addicted to it without any obvious reason, and I would watch it all day long. I did spend a lot of time with the doll and the rest of my toys were put under my bed covered by dust.

### Legend

According to the legend, in ancient times, people pray to have a good weather so they made Sunny Dolls and hung them under the roof. If their pray had been answered, I mean, if it's sunny the next day, they will paint some beautiful patterns on it or to hang a bell under it to show their gratitude. When the wind is blowing, the Sunny Doll will dance with it and the bell will ring and give people a positive atmosphere.



**Describe an antique or some other old thing that your family has kept for a long time.**

**You should say:**

**what it is**

**how (or when) your family first got this thing**

**how long your family has kept it**

**and explain why this thing is important to your family.**



### 参考回答

One of the old things in my family is a Sunny Doll in my bedroom. I got it when I was 6 and it has been in my family for more than 10 years.

### Outlook

Sunny Doll is like an alternative version of the wind bell. It has a huge head and covered by a white silk handkerchief. Sometimes, people hang a bell under it so it can literally be a wind bell and hung by the window.



### Gift from others

Sunny Doll is my favorite toy when I was a child, as it was an amazing gift. You may feel surprised, because it is not a typical toy for kids; let me tell you why. When I was a child, one day, my aunt visited my family, and she gave me a Sunny Doll that she bought from Japan. It was my first gift from abroad, so I really value it for sentimental reasons. Back then, I was addicted to it without any obvious reason, and I would watch it all day long. I did spend a lot of time with the doll and the rest of my toys were put under my bed covered by dust.

### Legend

According to the legend, in ancient times, people pray to have a good weather so they made Sunny Dolls and hung them under the roof. If their pray had been answered, I mean, if it's sunny the next day, they will paint some beautiful patterns on it or to hang a bell under it to show their gratitude. When the wind is blowing, the Sunny Doll will dance with it and the bell will ring and give people a positive atmosphere.

以下六个话题的答案和以上基本一致，在此不赘述。

- Describe a childhood toy.
- Describe a gift that you received.
- Describe a gift you received in your childhood.
- Describe a souvenir.
- Describe a time when someone visited you.
- Describe something you cannot live without.



**Describe a product that you bought and felt happy with**



### 参考回答

Once, I saved about 100 US dollars and it took me about half a year for it, as I really wanted to buy a sunny doll, not the mediocre, run of the mill, gift shop kind, but a very nice and expensive one. You know, the ones that you can only find in a boutique shop next to a Japanese shrine, the real handicraft. Those are very rare, usually 100 US dollars can only buy the smallest one, but it



was totally worth it when I finally bought it. I felt so happy.

### Personal feeling

Sunny doll (Japanese culture) has always held a special place in my heart. And many of my peers feel the exact same way, because it appeared in cartoons that we used to watch every day when we were kids. You know, just like the capital letter S always reminds American kids of Superman, the Sunny doll (Japanese culture) always reminds us about the cartoons that we used to watch and the fun that they used to bring. That's why we all like it very much.

I've always liked Japanese culture, so I wish I could have something in my home to represent it, and that's why I wanted to buy a better one. You know, so that I can have a sense of the culture.

### Legend

According to the legend, in the ancient times, people pray to have a good weather so they made the sunny doll and hung them under the roof, if their prayers had been answered, you know, if it's sunny the next day, they will paint some beautiful patterns on it or to hang a bell under it to show their gratitude. When the wind is blowing, the sunny doll will dance with it and the bell will ring and give people a positive atmosphere.



### Describe a difficult choice you made(358)



### 参考回答

One difficult choice for me was saving money. I am not the saving type of person. I guess you can say I am living in the moment, but I did made up my mind to save money once. Let me tell you more in detail.

Once, I saved about 100 US dollars and it took me about half a year for it, as I really wanted to buy a sunny doll, not the mediocre, run of the mill, gift shop kind, but a very nice and expensive one. You know, the ones that you can only find in a boutique shop next to a Japanese shrine, the real handicraft. Those are very rare, usually 100 US dollars can only buy the smallest one, but it



was totally worth it when I finally bought it.

### Personal feeling

Sunny doll (Japanese culture) has always held a special place in my heart. And many of my peers feel the exact same way, because it appeared in cartoons that we used to watch every day when we were kids. You know, just like the capital letter S always reminds American kids of Superman, the Sunny doll (Japanese culture) always reminds us about the cartoons that we used to watch and the fun that they used to bring. That's why we all like it very much.

I've always liked Japanese culture, so I wish I could have something in my home to represent it, and that's why I wanted to buy a better one. You know, so that I can have a sense of the culture.

### Legend

According to the legend, in the ancient times, people pray to have a good weather so they made the sunny doll and hung them under the roof, if their prayers had been answered, you know, if it's sunny the next day, they will paint some beautiful patterns on it or to hang a bell under it to show their gratitude. When the wind is blowing, the sunny doll will dance with it and the bell will ring and give people a positive atmosphere.

至此，晴天娃娃这个物品就先讲解到此。本小结的内容帮助大家学习了如下 24 个 Part 2 话题卡，希望大家可以尽快按照这个思路修改内容并形成自己的模板。

1. Describe a foreign culture that you are interested in.
2. Describe a piece of art that you like.
3. Describe something expensive you would buy if you had a lot of money.
4. Describe something that you saved money to buy.
5. Describe a useful website that helps you do something.
6. Describe something that you bought that you were dissatisfied with.
7. Describe an unhappy shopping experience that you had.
8. Describe a situation that made you a little angry.
9. Describe a wrong decision made by someone you know.
10. Describe a time when you lost something.
11. Describe something you made yourself (either alone or with others) when you were a child.



12. Describe a special gift that you gave to someone.
13. Describe an important decision that you made.
14. Describe a toy that was special to you when you were a child.
15. Describe a person who visited your home.
16. Describe an antique or some other old thing that your family has kept for a long time.
17. Describe a childhood toy.
18. Describe a gift that you received.
19. Describe a gift you received in your childhood.
20. Describe a souvenir.
21. Describe a time when someone visited you.
22. Describe something you cannot live without.
23. Describe a product that you bought and felt happy with.
24. Describe a difficult choice you made.



如果大家不想使用晴天娃娃作为物体题的核心素材，只需要扫描二维码，关注东东老师的微信公众平台“谢绍东 Shadow”并回复关键词“谢绍东的 999 条英语口语素材”即可收到大量物品题素材的相关资料。



## IELTS 户外活动类 | 07

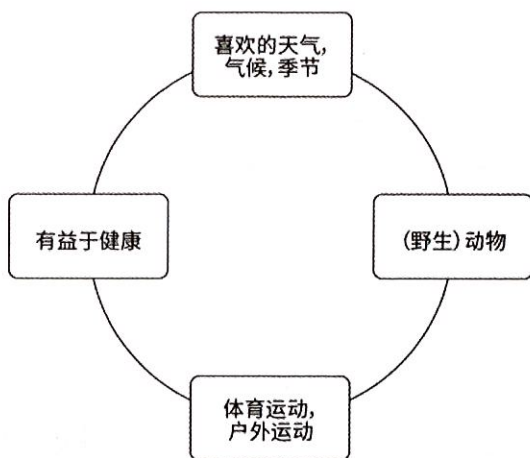
### 1 如何选择并制作自己 DIY 的素材

“户外活动”这个大类的话题如果单个准备都非常简单，因为中国学生对于活动类词汇的使用还是相对熟练的，但正因为此，在话题合并的大前提下，如何能够找到符合 4S 原则的活动类话题并进行准备就成了难点。

大部分考生所熟悉的活动是不具备话题合并的特性的。为了帮助大家，我画了一个不定向循环示意图。对于户外活动这个话题大类，准备轨迹就应该是一个不定向的循环，只要准备好以下四个要点，在不同的话题下寻找不同的几个要点进行组合即可，使用的方向可能是顺时针，也可能是逆时针，甚



至是跳跃使用，具体情况请参考以下图示：



我们依然按照 4S 法则来准备核心素材。

#### Step ① 要刻意地选择符合雅思口语考题的活动

按照以上示意图，我们可以发现我们需要准备的活动是一项集“户外”、“健康”、“好天气”、“(野生) 动物”这些话题于一体的活动。那么大家常用的羽毛球、乒乓球等运动虽然针对单个话题有较好的效果，但是在话题合并的大背景下就显得不那么合适了。

请大家和我一起来看以下活动：

#### 例

马术是我最喜欢的活动，因为我喜欢草原和马。虽然我本人没有太多与马术相关的经验，但是天气晴朗的周末我常和家人朋友去市区周边的马场骑马，要是有机会我也会去看马术比赛。另外，我喜欢阳光和晴天，这也是最适宜骑马的天气。因此马术是我最喜欢的户外活动。

相信“烤鸭”们很容易就能看出以上素材的卓越之处：它涵盖了户外、健康、天气、动物等比较分散的要点，这样为考生们准备素材及熟悉素材节约了大量的时间。

#### Step ② 喜欢的活动选定后要多留意以下单词及信息

现在我们需要根据以上核心素材，即“马术”，进行相关的单词准备，作为体育活动，核心单词自然需要准备与自然、健康、活力相关的词汇。下面我把单词按照核心素材分好了大类，帮助大家进行单词的梳理。



核心单词	针对马术的内容
户外活动、体育运动 outdoor activities, sports activities	equestrianism / horse riding / relieved / free / high demand / skill / patience / co-operation / rider / saddle horse / practice / bonding
有益于健康 healthy	afraid / white skin / beauty / getting tanned / cheerful / bright / important factor
喜爱的天气、气候、季节 weather, climate, seasons	sunny / great mood / indoor game / views / fresh air / sunlight / energy / vivid / energetic
(野生) 动物 a wild animal	horse / strong / intelligent / enjoyment / trotting / grassland / Inner Mongolia / leader / intelligence / similar / obsessed

**Step ③ 把以上单词串联成独立的自然段, Step 2 学会的单词马上可以用到了**



### An outdoor activity

I like **equestrianism** (or **horse riding**) the most among all other kinds of **outdoor activities**. Personally, it makes me feel **relieved** and **free**. You know, equestrianism has a **high demand** for **skills** and **patience**. The **co-operation** between the **rider** and his **saddle horse** is also worth mentioning, which often takes years of **practice** and **bonding**. This is not something easy for either of them.



### Favourite weather

My favourite **weather** is **sunny** day, while a lot of Chinese people are **afraid** of the sunny weather, especially girls, because they believe that **white skin** is the **beauty**. They are afraid of **getting tanned**. But I like sunny weather very much, as it is **bright** and it makes me **cheerful**. Also, I love outdoor activities which require sunny weather as an **important factor**. It is very hard to enjoy them when it rains, right?



### A healthy habit

Outdoor activities and sunny days make people **healthy**. When people are watching or doing outdoor activities, it is very important to be sunny. You know, so that we could have a



**great mood**, it is very different from the **indoor game**. People can enjoy the **views** outside, the **fresh air** and the **sunlight** as well. All of those fill you with **energy**. This is the reason why I like outdoor games so much. It's more **vivid** and **energetic**.



### A wild animal

I like **horses**. They are very **strong** and **intelligent**, so it is such an **enjoyment** to watch them **trotting** outdoors. I remember I saw some wild horses on the **grassland** when I was travelling with my parents to Inner Mongolia. They clearly had a **leader**, because the rest of the horses just followed it wherever it went. This shows the **intelligence** of the horses and how similar they could be like human beings. I was **obsessed** with what I saw and later started to learn horse riding during the weekends.

#### Step ④ 练习用四句话描述自己对马术这个活动的个人感受

户外活动同样需要大家用四句话来描述自己的个人感受。和 Part 2 其他话题大类中的 Personal feeling 段落一样，本段也是本大类话题中的万能段落，几乎每个和户外活动有关的话题都可以适当使用本段落：



### Personal feeling

1. I really think it is important to keep close to the nature and animals, and that's why I always enjoy the daylight in the afternoon, you know, as it is so bright and warm.
2. Just imagine, if you see a wild animal, such as a horse, running on the grassland, you will feel free and relaxed as well.
3. If you get a chance to get close to the nature, it will heal you both physically and mentally.
4. I enjoy that feeling so much.

这样个人感受就大功告成了。

## 2 如何实际运用自己 DIY 的素材

有了以上这样的核心素材以下题目均可迎刃而解。我们以 “An outdoor activity” 为例，大家试着把 An outdoor activity、Personal feeling 及 A healthy habit 三个自然段连起来，是不是可以连成一篇完整且完全符合雅思口语考试高分标准的素材呢？





**Describe an outdoor activity that you like doing (or do regularly).**

**You should say:**

**what this activity is**

**where you do it**

**when you do it**

**and explain why you like it.**



### 参考回答

Actually, I love a lot of different outdoor games, such as cycling and tennis, but my favourite one is horse riding. I usually go horse riding during the weekends with my parents or friends. There are more than 20 racecourses around Beijing, so it is truly convenient for me.

#### An outdoor activity

I like equestrianism (or horse riding) the most among all other kinds of outdoor activities. Personally, it makes me feel relieved and free. You know, equestrianism has a high demand for skills and patience. The co-operation between the rider and his saddle horse is also worth mentioning, which often takes years of practice and bonding. This is not something easy for either of them.

#### Personal feeling

I really think it is important to keep close to the nature and animals, , and that's why I always enjoy the daylight in the afternoon, you know, as it is so bright and warm. Just imagine, if you see a wild animal, such as a horse running on the grassland, you will feel free and relaxed as well. If you get a chance to get close to the nature, it will heal you both physically and mentally. I enjoy that feeling so much.

Another reason why I like equestrianism was the benefits. As we all know,

#### A healthy habit

Outdoor activities and sunny days make people healthy. When people are watching or doing outdoor activities, it is very important to be sunny. You know, so that we could have



a great mood, it is very different from the indoor game. People can enjoy the views outside, the fresh air and the sunlight as well. All of those fill you with energy. This is the reason why I like outdoor games so much. It's more vivid and energetic.

大家可以看到核心话题三段 An outdoor activity、Personal feeling 及 A healthy habit 顺利地解决了以上话题卡。

再看一张和上题有一定相似性的话题卡。



**Describe something you do that is good for your health.**

**You should say:**

**what you do**

**when you do it**

**whether you enjoy doing this**

**and explain why you think this is important for your health.**



### 参考回答

OK, let me tell you something about an outdoor activity that I do to keep fit. I usually go horse riding during the weekends with my parents or friends. There are more than 20 racecourses around Beijing, so it is truly convenient for me.

#### An outdoor activity

I like equestrianism (or horse riding) the most among all other kinds of outdoor activities. Personally, it makes me feel relieved and free. You know, equestrianism has a high demand for skills and patience. The co-operation between the rider and his saddle horse is also worth mentioning, which often takes years of practice and bonding. This is not something easy for either of them.

Also, for all I know, sports make people wholesome.

#### A healthy habit

Outdoor activities and sunny days make people healthy. When people are watching or doing outdoor activities, it is very important to be sunny. You know, so that we could have



a great mood, it is very different from the indoor game. People can enjoy the views outside, the fresh air and the sunlight as well. All of those fill you with energy. This is the reason why I like outdoor games so much. It's more vivid and energetic.

I like equestrianism also because of the healthy elements it involves.

### Personal feeling

I really think it is important to keep close to the nature and animals, and that's why I always enjoy the daylight in the afternoon, you know, as it is so bright and warm. Just imagine, if you see a wild animal, such as a horse running on the grassland, you will feel free and relaxed as well. If you get a chance to get close to the nature, it will heal you both physically and mentally. I enjoy that feeling so much.

大家会发现除了顺序有所调换，核心段落依然是 An outdoor activity、Personal feeling 及 A healthy habit。

以下这张话题卡和上一张本质上来说没有差别，所以请大家使用核心素材尝试自己解决一下：



**Describe something good for the health that you would recommend to others.**

**You should say:**

**who you would recommend it to**

**what it is**

**what equipment is needed for this**

**and explain why you would recommend it to this person.**

现在我们再来看与活动密切相关的话题卡：



**Describe a sporting event you enjoyed watching.**

**You should say:**

**what event it was**

**what happened at this event**

**who you watched it with**

**and explain why you enjoyed watching this event.**





### 参考回答

Well, I went to an equestrianism competition this year with my mother, because I had watched the video of the last year's competition and I thought it was so wonderful. This year, the game was held in Hong Kong for the local college students to participate in. And it gave me so much fun to watch. The horses were very smart and the weather was great! In the end, a girl won the champion of the year, which was quite amazing. This event combined all of my favourite elements.

First of all,

#### **An outdoor activity**

I like equestrianism (or horse riding) the most among all other kinds of outdoor activities. Personally, it makes me feel relieved and free. You know, equestrianism has a high demand for skills and patience. The co-operation between the rider and his saddle horse is also worth mentioning, which often takes years of practice and bonding. This is not something easy for either of them.

Also,

#### **A healthy habit**

Outdoor activities and sunny days make people healthy. When people are watching or doing outdoor activities, it is very important to be sunny. You know, so that we could have a great mood, it is very different from the indoor game. People can enjoy the views outside, the fresh air and the sunlight as well. All of those fill you with energy. This is the reason why I like outdoor games so much. It's more vivid and energetic.

Besides,

#### **Favourite weather**

My favourite weather is sunny day, while a lot of Chinese people are afraid of the sunny weather, especially girls, because they believe that white skin is the beauty. They are afraid of getting tanned. But I like sunny weather very much, as it is bright and it makes me cheerful. Also, I love outdoor activities which require sunny weather as an important factor. It is very hard to enjoy them when it rains, right?

So, I will definitely go to this competition again next year.



以上话题相对比较简单，而以下话题和上一题中唯一的不同就是时态，请大家注意对比。



**Describe a sports event that you want to watch.**

**You should say:**

**what the event is**

**where it will be held**

**who you want to watch it with**

**and explain why you want to watch this event.**



### 参考回答

Well, I want to go to an equestrianism competition this year with my mother, because I saw the video of the last year's competition. Wow, it was such a wonderful competition. The horses in the video were very smart and the weather was great! In the end, a girl won the champion of last year, which was quiet amazing. For this year, it will be held in Hong Kong for the local college students to participate in. And it would be so much fun to watch. This event combines all of my favourite elements.

First of all,

#### An outdoor activity

I like equestrianism (or horse riding) the most among all other kinds of outdoor activities. Personally, it makes me feel relieved and free. You know, equestrianism has a high demand for skills and patience. The co-operation between the rider and his saddle horse is also worth mentioning, which often takes years of practice and bonding. This is not something easy for either of them.

Also,

#### A healthy habit

Outdoor activities and sunny days make people healthy. When people are watching or doing outdoor activities, it is very important to be sunny. You know, so that we could have



a great mood, it is very different from the indoor game. People can enjoy the views outside, the fresh air and the sunlight as well. All of those fill you with energy. This is the reason why I like outdoor games so much. It's more vivid and energetic.

Besides,

### **Favourite weather**

My favourite weather is sunny day, while a lot of Chinese people are afraid of the sunny weather, especially girls, because they believe that white skin is the beauty. They are afraid of getting tanned. But I like sunny weather very much, as it is bright and it makes me cheerful. Also, I love outdoor activities which require sunny weather as an important factor. It is very hard to enjoy them when it rains, right?

So, I will definitely go to this competition this year.

细心的“烤鸭”一定已经发现除了时态和部分语序的调整，其他内容几乎是没有变化的。这样我们就顺利地解决了以上两张话题卡。

接下来我们来看与天气气候相关的三张话题卡：



**Describe your favourite part of the day.**

**You should say:**

**when it is**

**what you do at this time**

**who is usually with you at this time**

**and explain why it is your favorite part of the day.**



### **参考回答**

I like afternoon the best, as I like sunshine very much and the sunlight in the afternoon is really the nicest. You know, it is strong enough to make you feel warm and comfortable, but not strong enough to give you sunburns, so I always go out to do some outdoor activities during the afternoons.

Many people think it's weird that



**Favourite weather**

My favourite weather is sunny day, while a lot of Chinese people are afraid of the sunny weather, especially girls, because they believe that white skin is the beauty. They are afraid of getting tanned. But I like sunny weather very much, as it is bright and it makes me cheerful. Also, I love outdoor activities which require sunny weather as an important factor. It is very hard to enjoy them when it rains, right?

If you ask me, things I like to do most in the afternoon should be lying on the lawn or doing some sports under the beautiful sunlight.

**Personal feeling**

I really think it is important to keep close to the nature and animals, and that's why I always enjoy the daylight in the afternoon, you know, as it is so bright and warm. Just imagine, if you see a wild animal, such as a horse running on the grassland, you will feel free and relaxed as well. If you get a chance to get close to the nature, it will heal you both physically and mentally. I enjoy that feeling so much.

Let's just say, one relaxing afternoon really has that power on me.

以上话题卡使用了三段核心素材，而以下话题卡和上面话题卡的答案几乎完全重复，但是大家注意答案开头的部分修改，否则很容易造成跑题。



**Describe your favourite weather.**

**You should say:**

**what kind of weather it is**

**when this weather usually occurs**

**what you usually do during this weather**

**and explain why you like this type of weather.**

**参考回答**

My favourite weather is sunny, as I like sunshine very much and the nicest sunlight always appears in the autumn afternoon. You know, it is strong enough to make you feel warm and



comfortable, but not strong enough to give you sunburns, so I always go out to do some outdoor activities during the afternoons of fall.

Many people think it's weird that

### **Favourite weather**

My favourite weather is sunny day, while a lot of Chinese people are afraid of the sunny weather, especially girls, because they believe that white skin is the beauty. They are afraid of getting tanned. But I like sunny weather very much, as it is bright and it makes me cheerful. Also, I love outdoor activities which require sunny weather as an important factor. It is very hard to enjoy them when it rains, right?

If you ask me, things I like to do most in the afternoon should be lying on the lawn or doing some sports under the beautiful sunlight.

### **Personal feeling**

I really think it is important to keep close to the nature and animals, and that's why I always enjoy the daylight in the afternoon, you know, as it is so bright and warm. Just imagine, if you see a wild animal, such as a horse running on the grassland, you will feel free and relaxed as well. If you get a chance to get close to the nature, it will heal you both physically and mentally. I enjoy that feeling so much.

Let's just say, sunny days has that power on me.

细心的同学恐怕已经发现，上一张话题卡除了最喜欢的天气，连季节也一并解决了。我们一起看看下一张话题卡：



**Describe your favourite season or time of the year.**

**You should say:**

**when this time is**

**what the weather is like at this time**

**what you usually do at this time**

**and explain why it is your favourite time of the year.**





### 参考回答

My favourite season is autumn, as I like sunshine very much and the nicest sunlight always appears in the autumn afternoon. You know, it is strong enough to make you feel warm and comfortable, but not strong enough to give you sunburns, so I always go out to do some outdoor activities during the afternoons of fall.

Many people think it's weird that

#### Favourite weather

My favourite weather is sunny day, while a lot of Chinese people are afraid of the sunny weather, especially girls, because they believe that white skin is the beauty. They are afraid of getting tanned. But I like sunny weather very much, as it is bright and it makes me cheerful. Also, I love outdoor activities which require sunny weather as an important factor. It is very hard to enjoy them when it rains, right?

If you ask me, things I like to do most in the afternoon should be lying on the lawn or doing some sports under the beautiful sunlight.

#### Personal feeling

I really think it is important to keep close to the nature and animals, and that's why I always enjoy the daylight in the afternoon, you know, it is so bright and warm. Just imagine, if you see a wild animal, such as a horse running on the grassland, you will feel free and relaxed as well. If you get a chance to get close to the nature, it will heal you both physically and mentally. I really enjoy that feeling so much.

Let's just say, autumn has that power on me.

以上三张和天气相关的话题卡得以解决后，现在再看一张差别较大的话题卡：



**Describe a time when you came close to a wild animal (from your country).**

**You should say:**

**what it looked like**

**where you saw it**

**what you were doing when you saw it**

**and explain how you felt when you saw it.**





### 参考回答

Well, I did see some wild animals before. Most of them are birds, but I encountered with some wild horses, you know, the white ones with black tail and mane. They were truly beautiful, just like a picture.

#### A wild animal

I like horses. They are very strong and intelligent, so it is such an enjoyment to watch them trotting outdoors. I remember I saw some wild horses on the grassland when I was travelling with my parents to Inner Mongolia. They clearly had a leader, because the rest of the horses just followed it wherever it went. This shows the intelligence of the horse and how similar they could be like human beings. I was obsessed with what I saw and later started to learn horse riding during the weekends.

#### Personal feeling

I really think it is important to keep close to the nature and animals, and that's why I always enjoy the daylight in the afternoon, you know, as it is so bright and warm. Just imagine, if you see a wild animal, such as a horse running on the grassland, you will feel free and relaxed as well. If you get a chance to get close to the nature, it will heal you both physically and mentally. I enjoy that feeling so much.

Running into the wild horses did change me in a way. I used to like computer games more before the trip to Inner Mongolia, but now I do outdoor games much more often.

#### A healthy habit

Outdoor activities and sunny days make people healthy. When people are watching or doing outdoor activities, it is very important to be sunny. You know, so that we could have a great mood, it is very different from the indoor game. People can enjoy the views outside, the fresh air and the sunlight as well. All of those fill you with energy. This is the reason why I like outdoor games so much. It's more vivid and energetic.

以上素材有机地结合了我们的核心素材，顺利解决野生动物这一颇具难度的话题。





### Describe a sport you want to try



#### 参考回答

Actually, I love a lot of different outdoor games, such as cycling and tennis, but I really want to try equestrianism.

#### A Wild Animal

I like horse, horses are very strong and intelligent, so it is such an enjoyment to watch them trotting outdoors. I remember I saw some wild horses on the grassland when I was travelling with my parents to Inner Mongolia. They clearly had a leader, because the rest of the horses just followed it wherever it went. This shows the intelligence of the horse and how similar they could be like human beings. I was obsessed with what I saw and later decided someday in the future, I should start to learn horse riding (during the weekends).

#### An outdoor activity

I like equestrianism and horse riding the most among all other kinds of outdoor activities. Personally, they make me feel relieved and free. You know, equestrianism has a high demand for skill and patience. The co-operation between the rider and his saddle horse is also worth mentioning, which often takes years of practice and bonding. This is not something easy for either of them.

#### Personal feeling

I really think it is important to keep close to the nature and animals, that's why I always enjoy the daylight in the afternoon, you know, it is so bright and warm. Just imagine, if you see a wild animal, such as a horse running on the grassland, you will feel free and relaxed as well. If you get a chance to get close to the nature, it will heal you both physically and mentally. I really enjoy that feeling so much.

Another reason why I want to try equestrianism was because of the benefits. As we all know.



### A healthy habit

Outdoor activities and sunny days make people healthy. When people are watching or doing outdoor activities, it is very important to be sunny. You know, so that we could have a great mood, it is very different from the indoor game. People can enjoy the views outside, the fresh air and the sunlight as well. All of those fill you with energy. This is the reason why I like outdoor games so much. It's more vivid and energetic.

至此，户外活动这一个 Part 2 大类就先讲到这里。本小结的内容帮助大家学习了如下 10 个 Part 2 话题卡。大家有没有觉得很超值呢？

1. Describe an outdoor activity that you like doing (or do regularly).
2. Describe something you do that is good for your health.
3. Describe something good for the health that you would recommend to others.
4. Describe a sporting event you enjoyed watching.
5. Describe a sports event that you want to watch.
6. Describe your favourite part of the day.
7. Describe your favourite weather.
8. Describe your favourite season or time of the year.
9. Describe a time when you came close to a wild animal (from your country).
10. Describe a sport you want to try.

如果大家不想使用“马术”这个活动作为素材，只需扫描二维码，关注东东老师的微信公众平台“谢绍东 Shadow”并回复关键词“谢绍东的 999 条英语口语素材”即可收到大量活动素材的相关资料。



## 08 | IELTS 学术科目类

### 1 如何选择并制作自己 DIY 的素材

学术科目是中国考生普遍觉得比较难的一类题目，主要是因为这一类话题中需要使用各学科的相关单词，而中国考生除非在高中选修 AP、A-Level 或者 SAT II 的相关科目，否则很难有足够的词汇

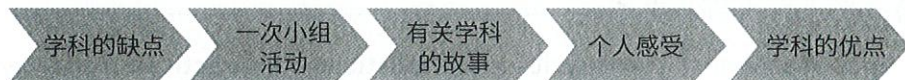


量来描述学术科目下的话题，进而对其口语表现造成了很不利的影响。

因此，提前准备核心素材及话题合并就显得尤其重要了。我们以物理这门学科为例，按照 4S 黄金法则进行分析。

### Step ① 要刻意地选择符合雅思口语考题的学术科目主题

“学术科目”的准备和“工作事件”有很高的相似性，也是以流程图的形式准备出一个完整的故事线索，按照自己现场抽中的题目选择完整故事中的一段即可，详情请大家看下图：



针对这个流程图的话题合并非常简单，请大家看这个故事：

#### 例

我以前和很多人一样不喜欢物理，觉得这个科目特别无聊，净是些数字和规律。但是后来经过一次小组活动，我们讨论并重做了一遍伽利略的重力加速度实验。我不仅学到了学科相关知识，更从一个不同的视角审视了物理这个学科，我再也不像以前那样讨厌物理了。相反，我对科学家们独树一帜的见解和勇敢的精神所鼓舞和感动，希望以后我还能再学一些其他的物理知识。

相信大家已经明白我们的故事要如何开始了。

### Step ② 具体科目选定后要多留意以下单词及信息

具体科目选定后，我们要准备如下相关单词。不过东东老师在这里要特别建议“烤鸭”们不要粗犷地大量背诵学科单词，一定要先按照话题合并的原则构思好故事，再按照构思好的故事选择需要的单词背诵即可。

我们以物理这门学科以及伽利略的故事为例，看看在与物理相关的上千个专业单词中，到底哪些可以帮助我们解题呢？

核心单词	针对物理这门科目
学科的缺点 disadvantage of physics	physics / unrealistic / impractical / blame / method / geek / repeating / memorizing / textbooks / guidance books / numbers / rules / be fond of / science subjects
一次小组活动 group activity	instruction / divided into / material / helpful / present / redo / experiment / assign / unfamiliarity
有关学科的故事 story of Galileo	1589 / scientist / Galileo / Gravitational acceleration / Tower of Pisa / solid / lead / balls / Free-falling Experiment



学科的优点 advantage of physics	data / constant / society / relay / better way / more advanced / touch screen / spiritual level / devote / time / energy / make a point / truth / perseverance / admire
-------------------------------	---

**Step ③** 把以上单词串联成独立的自然段，Step 2 学会的单词马上可以用到了

### Disadvantage of physics

Many people think that **physics** is **unrealistic** and **impractical**. Well, they really shouldn't be **blamed** for that, as the **method** of teaching **science subjects** in China is basically **repeating** and **memorizing** things from the **textbooks** and **guidance books**. They are full of **numbers** and **rules** and really hard to **be fond of**. Well, the answer could be yes if you are a **geek**, but who else would have the heart for those kinds of things, right?

### Group activity

With the **instruction** of our physics teacher, we were **divided into** small groups and asked to find **material** that maybe **helpful**. In that case, we had to work within the group and tried to find out the best way to **present** and **redo** the **experiment** that we were **assigned** to. Despite of the **unfamiliarity**, we were actually kind of looking forward to it, you know, as we would have a chance to do something on our own rather than sit in the classroom and listen.

### Story of Galileo

In the year of **1589**, the famous **scientist Galileo** made himself well-known for the Galileo's **Free-falling Experiment** on the **Tower of Pisa**, which is a very important event in the history of physics. He used two **solid lead balls** to prove the **gravitational acceleration** is the same for everything. The two balls were both solid, but one of them was heavier than the other one. People had thought the heavier one would fall more quickly and hit the ground earlier, but in fact they were wrong. The two balls hit the ground at the same time.

### Advantage of physics

Although physics is formed by concepts, rules and methodologies, you know, all about



**data** and **constant**, our **society** really **relays** on it, not only when it comes to finding a **better way** to design faster cars or having a **more advanced touch screen** for iPads, but also how it works on the **spiritual level**. Most scientists **devote** their **time, energy**, sometimes even life to **make a point** to the world. They care about the **truth**, and their **perseverance** is what I **admire** the most.

以上就是一个从“不喜欢”物理到经历一次事件,即小组活动,进而“喜欢”上物理这门学科的故事。

#### Step ④ 练习用四句话描述自己对物理这门科目的个人感受

同样,大家需要用四句话来描述自己的个人感受。和 Part 2 其他话题大类中的 Personal feeling 段落一样,本段也是本大类话题中的万能段落,几乎每个与学术科目有关的话题都可以适当使用。



#### Personal feeling

1. I think this event is so important, not only because it is a milestone in physics, but also because how it influences people generation by generation.
2. You know, Galileo was doubted by a lot of people.
3. They called him liar, weirdo and lunatic, but he never gave up, and he stuck to his ideas.
4. Finally, he proved himself to others. I was so inspired and encouraged by him.

以上内容基本上很好地涵盖了伽利略在物理学的造诣之外,令人赞许和值得学习的要点,是许多话题结尾的必备段落。

## 2 如何实际运用自己 DIY 的素材

现在,有了以上的核心素材,下面的这些题目均可迎刃而解。我们以“An important event in the history”为例,大家试着把 Story of Galileo, Personal feeling 及 Advantage of physics 三个自然段连起来,是不是可以连成一篇完整且完全符合雅思口语考试高分标准的素材呢?



**Describe an important event in the history.**

**You should say:**

**what event it was**

**when it occurred**

**who were involved**

**how you know about this event**

**and explain why you think it was important.**





### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about an important event in the history. I learnt it from my physics class in high school.

#### Story of Galileo

In the year of 1589, the famous scientist Galileo made himself well-known for the Galileo's Free-falling Experiment on the Tower of Pisa, which is a very important event in the history of physics. He used two solid lead balls to prove gravitational acceleration is the same for everything. The two balls were both solid, but one of them was heavier than the other one. People had thought the heavier one would fall more quickly and hit the ground earlier, but in fact they were wrong. The two balls hit the ground at the same time.

#### Personal feeling

I think this event is so important, not only because it is a milestone in physics, but also because how it influences people generation by generation. You know, Galileo was doubted by a lot of people. They called him liar, weirdo and lunatic, but he never gave up, and he stuck to his ideas. Finally, he proved himself to others. I was so inspired and encouraged by him.

#### Advantage of physics

Although physics is formed by concepts, rules and methodologies, you know, all about data and constant, our society really relays on it, not only when it comes to finding a better way to design faster cars or having a more advanced touch screen for iPads, but also how it works on the spiritual level. Most scientists devote their time, energy, sometimes even life to make the point to the world. They care about the truth, and their perseverance is what I admire the most.

以上内容除了第一段话，剩余的内容都来自于我们准备的核心段落。小试牛刀后，我们来看看与学术科目最为相关的几个话题卡：





**Describe a science subject that you studied in high school (such as biology, chemistry or physics).**

**You should say:**

**the name of the subject**

**what you did in this class**

**how the teacher taught it**

**and explain how you felt about this subject/this class.**



### 参考回答

Alright, let me tell you something about a science subject in my high school that I studied. It's physics. I learnt a lot of things in class, for I had a wonderful teacher back then. He required group work and presentations in his class, both of which were extremely impressive for me.

### Group activity

With the instruction of our physics teacher, we were divided into small groups and asked to find material that maybe helpful. In that case, we had to work within the group and tried to find out the best way to present and redo the experiment that we were assigned to. Despite of the unfamiliarity, we were actually kind of looking forward to it, you know, as we would have a chance to do something on our own rather than sit in the classroom and listen.

With all the group work and tasks that I did back in the high school, I actually liked physics in a way.

### Advantage of physics

Although physics is formed by concepts, rules and methodologies, you know, all about data and constant, our society really relays on it, not only when it comes to finding a better way to design faster cars or having a more advanced touch screen for iPads, but also how it works on the spiritual level. Most scientists devote their time, energy, sometimes even life to make a point to the world. They care about the truth, and their perseverance is what I admire the most.



开头点题需要考生根据话题自己造句，但是核心素材 Group activity 及 Advantage of physics 的使用减少了考生大量的负担。“A science subject”和以上内容完全一样，以下这个话题和上面的话题也基本一样，请大家自己练习，这里不再赘述。



**Describe a class or training session that you enjoyed.**

**You should say:**

**what the teacher (and the students) did**

**when& where you had this class**

**what you learned in this class or training session**

**and explain why you enjoyed it.**

而接下来这个话题则使用了 Group activity 及 Disadvantage of physics。这两个核心素材的使用大大减少了考生的负担。



**Describe a project or some work that you did with others.**

**You should say:**

**what the project or work was**

**who was with you**

**how easy or difficult it was**

**and explain why you did this with other people.**



### 参考回答

Well, speaking of a project, I really want to say something about a physics experiment that I did with my high school classmates. I had a wonderful teacher back then. He required group work and presentations in his class, both of which were extremely impressive for me. The project that I remembered the best was about Galileo's Free-falling Experiment on the Tower of Pisa.

#### Group activity

With the instruction of our physics teacher, we were divided into small groups and asked to find material that maybe helpful. In that case, we had to work within the group and tried to find out the best way to present and redo the experiment that we were assigned to. Despite of the unfamiliarity, we were actually kind of looking forward to it, you know, as we would have a chance to do something on our own rather than sit in the classroom and listen.



I think the reason we had to do it in a group is probably because this would make physics more fun for us. Our teacher really taught us in a bottom-up way, so that we wouldn't hate physics like most students did back in high school.

### Disadvantage of physics

Many people think that physics is unrealistic and impractical. Well, they really shouldn't be blamed for that, as the method of teaching science subjects in China is basically repeating and memorizing things from the textbooks and guidance books. They are full of numbers and rules and really hard to be fond of. Well, the answer could be yes if you are a geek, but who else would have the heart for those kinds of things, right?

So all those projects in class actually made physics more interesting. I am totally into it.

以下三个话题卡分别是“不喜欢”、“从不喜欢到喜欢”以及“很喜欢”。大家会发现我们都将用物理这个学科和我们的核心段落来解决这三个话题。

首先来看“不喜欢”这个话题卡：



**Describe a subject that you didn't like in high school.**

**You should say:**

**the name of the subject**

**what you did in this class**

**how the teacher taught it**

**and explain why you didn't like this subject.**



### 参考回答

OK, I hate physics. There, I said it. I don't even know where to begin. Let's just say I share some “common thoughts” about it with other “haters”.

### Disadvantage of physics

Many people think that physics is unrealistic and impractical. Well, they really shouldn't



be blamed for that, as the method of teaching science subjects in China is basically repeating and memorizing things from the textbooks and guidance books. They are full of numbers and rules and really hard to be fond of. Well, the answer could be yes if you are a geek, but who else would have the heart for those kinds of things, right?

And also, I had the worst physics teacher ever. He just read things from the books and asked us to copy them. I remember there was this one experiment of Galileo. Instead of letting us do some activities, he just asked us to memorize the whole thing. I can still remember the details of the story. And it goes like this.

### Story of Galileo

In the year of 1589, the famous scientist Galileo made himself well-known for the Galileo's Free-falling Experiment on the Tower of Pisa, which is a very important event in the history of physics. He used two solid lead balls to prove the gravitational acceleration is the same for everything. The two balls were both solid, but one of them was heavier than the other one. People had thought the heavier one would fall more quickly and hit the ground earlier, but in fact they were wrong. The two balls hit the ground at the same time.

It was so boring! I guess my physics teacher is the main reason why I hate the subject so much.

同学们肯定注意到了，Story of Galileo 这个核心素材中有大量删减的部分，这么做是因为这里只需要给考官留下一种“物理十分枯燥”的印象，因此简略说几句就可以了，没必要全段复述，否则会有跑题的嫌疑。

接下来我们来看“从不喜欢到喜欢”这张话题卡：



**Describe a subject that you didn't like but like now.**

**You should say:**

**the name of the subject**

**what you did in this class**

**how the teacher taught it**

**and explain why you change your idea about this subject.**





### 参考回答

Speaking of a sudden change of attitude in a subject, I think physics is definitely one good example for me. Like many of my friends, I used to hate physics so much, you know.

#### Disadvantage of physics

Many people think that physics is unrealistic and impractical. Well, they really shouldn't be blamed for that, as the method of teaching science subjects in China is basically repeating and memorizing things from the textbooks and guidance books. They are full of numbers and rules and really hard to be fond of. Well, the answer could be yes if you are a geek, but who else would have the heart for those kinds of things, right?

However, everything changed after I met my physics teacher in high school. Usually, he required group work and presentations in his class, both of which were extremely impressive for me.

#### Group activity

With the instruction of our physics teacher, we were divided into small groups and asked to find material that maybe helpful. In that case, we had to work within the group and tried to find out the best way to present and redo the experiment that we were assigned to. Despite of the unfamiliarity, we were actually kind of looking forward to it, you know, as we would have a chance to do something on our own rather than sit in the classroom and listen.

With all the group works and tasks that I did back in the high school, now I actually like physics in a way.

#### Advantage of physics

Although physics is formed by concepts, rules and methodologies, you know, all about data and constant, our society really relays on it, not only when it comes to finding a better way to design faster cars or having a more advanced touch screen for iPads, but also how it work on the spiritual level. Most scientists devote their time, energy, sometimes even life to make a point to the world. They care about the truth, and their perseverance is what I admire the most.



对于“从不喜欢到喜欢”这个话题卡，内容需要涵盖解释为什么以前“不喜欢”，然后描述发生了什么，最后再说现在如何“喜欢”。这个话题卡是使用核心素材最多而且需要正确顺序的答案，可以说是 Part 2 话题大类中比较有难度的一类。

最后我们来看学术科目中“很喜欢”这个主题：



**Describe a subject that you want to learn in the future.**

**You should say:**

**the name of the subject**

**what you did in this class**

**how the teacher taught it**

**and explain why you didn't like this subject.**



### 参考回答

The subject that I want to learn in the future is physics. Frankly speaking, I have already learnt a lot of things in my high school physics class, because my physics teacher required group work and presentations in his class, both of which were extremely informative for me.

#### Group activity

With the instruction of our physics teacher, we were divided into small groups and asked to find material that maybe helpful. In that case, we had to work within the group and tried to find out the best way to present and redo the experiment that we were assigned to. Despite of the unfamiliarity, we were actually kind of looking forward to it, you know, as we would have a chance to do something on our own rather than sit in the classroom and listen.

With all the group work and tasks that I did back in the high school, I actually liked physics in a way.

#### Advantage of physics

Although physics is formed by concepts, rules and methodologies, you know, all about data and constant, our society really relays on it, not only when it comes to finding a better



way to design faster cars or having a more advanced touch screen for iPads, but also how it works on the spiritual level. Most scientists devote their time, energy, sometimes even life to make a point to the world. They care about the truth, and their perseverance is what I admire the most.

This is why I want to learn physics in the future.

大家一定要注意开头段的调整，虽然微小但是非常重要，否则就有跑题的嫌疑。

另一个和学术科目有关且让考生极其崩溃的话题则是“物理实验”，当然，在我们这样的话题合并下就迎刃而解了。



**Describe a physics experiment you ever did.**

**You should say:**

**when and where you did it**

**what kind of experiment you did**

**what was the process**

**and explain why you like the experiment.**



### 参考回答

Well, the physics experiment that I like is called the Free-falling Experiment. I had a wonderful physics teacher back in high school. He required group work and presentations in his class, and this experiment was one of those tasks that he gave us.

#### Group activity

With the instruction of our physics teacher, we were divided into small groups and asked to find material that maybe helpful. In that case, we had to work within the group and tried to find out the best way to present and redo the experiment that we were assigned to. Despite of the unfamiliarity, we were actually kind of looking forward to it, you know, as we would have a chance to do something on our own rather than sitt in the classroom and listen.

We went through the background story and replicate the whole thing. I can still remember it very clearly.



### Story of Galileo

In the year of 1589, the famous scientist Galileo made himself well-known for the Galileo's Free-falling Experiment on the Tower of Pisa, which is a very important event in the history of physics. He used two solid lead balls to prove the gravitational acceleration is the same for everything. The two balls were both solid, but one of them was heavier than the other one. People had thought the heavier one would fall more quickly and hit the ground earlier, but in fact they were wrong. The two balls hit the ground at the same time.

### Personal feeling

I think this event is so important, not only because it is a milestone in physics, but also because how it influences people generation by generation. You know, Galileo was doubted by a lot of people. They called him liar, weirdo and lunatic, but he never gave up, and he stuck to his ideas. Finally, he proved himself to others. I was so inspired and encouraged by him.

其他和学术科目相关的话题往往比较冷门，例如：



### Describe a club that you are part of.

**You should say:**

**what and where it is**

**when you joined in**

**what the group does**

**and explain why you enjoy being part of this group.**



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about the physics club that I participated in when I was in high school. It was very popular back then. We do a lot of things in the club, such as group work and presentations, both of which were extremely impressive for me. We would do one experiment each week, so I learnt a lot in the club. For instance, I learnt so much more about the Galileo's Free-falling Experiment.

We went through the background story and replicate the whole thing. I can still remember it



very clearly.

### Story of Galileo

In the year of 1589, the famous scientist Galileo made himself well-known for the Galileo's Free-falling Experiment on the Tower of Pisa, which is a very important event in the history of physics. He used two solid lead balls to prove the gravitational acceleration is the same for everything. The two balls were both solid, but one of them was heavier than the other one. People had thought the heavier one would fall more quickly and hit the ground earlier, but in fact they were wrong. The two balls hit the ground at the same time.

### Personal feeling

I think this event is so important, not only because it is a milestone in physics, but also because how it influences people generation by generation. You know, Galileo was doubted by a lot of people. They called him liar, weirdo and lunatic, but he never gave up, and he stuck to his ideas. Finally, he proved himself to others. I was so inspired and encouraged by him.

Also, I have a deeper understanding about physics through this experiment.

### Advantage of physics

Although physics is formed by concepts, rules and methodologies, you know, all about data and constant, our society really relies on it, not only when it comes to finding a better way to design faster cars or having a more advanced touch screen for iPads, but also how it works on the spiritual level. Most scientists devote their time, energy, sometimes even life to make a point to the world. They care about the truth, and their perseverance is what I admire the most.

虽然以上话题卡比较偏门，但是我们的核心素材依然帮我们解决了这个问题。请大家用以上答案尝试解决以下这个话题“Describe a club that is popular in the school or university”。

除此之外，我们还把交流方式合并在学术科目大类之下，请大家看以下话题卡：





**Describe your favourite method of communication.**

**You should say:**

**what it is**

**who you usually communicate with**

**how often you communicate with them**

**and explain why you prefer this method.**



### 参考回答

Alright, I like face-to-face communication the most, as it is very direct and time-saving. I use this when it comes to school assignments and other situations that requires more than 2 people to participate in and discuss. For example, I remember there was this one time in high school that my classmates and I needed to do a physics experiment called Free-falling Experiment and I insisted that we should use face-to face communication to solve it at that time.

### Group activity

With the instruction of our physics teacher, we were divided into small groups and asked to find material that maybe helpful. In that case, we had to work within the group and tried to find out the best way to present and redo the experiment that we were assigned to. Despite of the unfamiliarity, we were actually kind of looking forward to it, you know, as we would have a chance to do something on our own rather than sit in the classroom and listen.

There were 6 people in the group, and we could discuss about what to bring and what to prepare. According to the background research that we did, there were a lot of materials that we needed to get ready for in advance. For instance,

### Story of Galileo

In the year of 1589, the famous scientist Galileo made himself well-known for the Galileo's Free-falling Experiment on the Tower of Pisa, which is a very important event in the history of physics. He used two solid lead balls to prove the gravitational acceleration is



the same for everything. The two balls were both solid, but one of them was heavier than the other one. People had thought the heavier one would fall more quickly and hit the ground earlier, but in fact they were wrong. The two balls hit the ground at the same time.

All of those details about “who brings what” were solved within 5 minutes during our first face-to-face meeting, and you can imagine how much trouble you will get yourself into if you use any other ways to discuss. That’s why I would like to stick to face-to-face communication when it comes to a group discussion in the future.

以上这个话题的改动相对其他话题要多，所以可以算是我们话题合并当中较难的一个话题，希望大家注意。

我们再来看一个话题卡：



**Describe an interesting speech that you heard.**

**You should say:**

**who gave the talk**

**what the talk was about**

**where you heard it**

**and explain why the talk was interesting.**



### 参考回答

Well, let me tell you something about an interesting speech that I heard in my physics class in high school. It was given by my physics teacher in his first class and he inspired me from the very beginning. The speech was about the story of Galileo's Free-falling Experiment and I learnt so many things from it.

#### Story of Galileo

In the year of 1589, the famous scientist Galileo made himself well-known for the Galileo's Free-falling Experiment on the Tower of Pisa, which is a very important event in the history of physics. He used two solid lead balls to prove the gravitational acceleration is



the same for everything. The two balls were both solid, but one of them was heavier than the other one. People had thought the heavier one would fall more quickly and hit the ground earlier, but in fact they were wrong. The two balls hit the ground at the same time.

### **Personal feeling**

I think this event is so important, not only because it is a milestone in physics, but also because how it influences people generation by generation. You know, Galileo was doubted by a lot of people. They called him liar, weirdo and lunatic, but he never gave up, and he stuck to his ideas. Finally, he proved himself to others. I was so inspired and encouraged by him.

After hearing this speech, I had a very different perspective about physics as a subject.

### **Advantage of physics**

Although physics is formed by concepts, rules and methodologies, you know, all about data and constant, our society really relies on it, not only when it comes to finding a better way to design faster cars or having a more advanced touch screen for iPads, but also how it works on the spiritual level. Most scientists devote their time, energy, sometimes even life to make a point to the world. They care about the truth, and their perseverance is what I admire the most.

And all this positive energy springs from the speech of my physics teacher. That's why I found it interesting.

大家会发现常用的段落还是那几个。另一个和学术科目有关的话题是：



### **Describe a rule in your school.**

**You should say:**

**what is the rule**

**what do students in your school do to obey to rule**

**did any of you disobey the rule**

**and explain do you think it is a positive or negative rule.**





### 参考回答

Well, every school has its own rules, like asking students to wear school uniform under any circumstances or having certain ways of haircut. But there was one rule in my high school, and it was very different from other schools. The rule was like this. Every teacher had to ask at least one student to give a speech in front of the class every week. The speech should be related with the class and within 15 to 20 minutes. So the students would learn more efficiently and become more participated in the classroom. I like this rule very much, as I love giving speech in front of people. The speech that I delivered for the first time was about the story of Galileo's Free-falling Experiment and I learnt so many things when I was preparing for it.

#### Personal feeling

I think this event is so important, not only because it is a milestone in physics, but also because how it influences people generation by generation. You know, Galileo was doubted by a lot of people. They called him liar, weirdo and lunatic, but he never gave up, and he stuck to his ideas. Finally, he proved himself to others. I was so inspired and encouraged by him.

After hearing my speech, I think many of my classmates, including me, had a very different perspective about physics as a subject.

#### Advantage of physics

Although physics is formed by concepts, rules and methodologies, you know, all about data and constant, our society really relays on it, not only when it comes to finding a better way to design faster cars or having a more advanced touch screen for iPads, but also how it works on the spiritual level. Most scientists devote their time, energy, sometimes even life to make the point to the world. They care about the truth, and their perseverance is what I admire the most.

And all this positive energy springs from the speech according to the school rule. That's why I think this rule has a quite positive effect on me.

相信大家已经很习惯我们的合并技巧，请大家再来看一个区别比较大的题目：





**Describe your secondary school.**

**You should say:**

**what school it was**

**was it far from your home**

**what the teachers were like**

**and explain how you felt about this school.**



**参考回答**

OK, my secondary school is an experimental school called Huaxia Experimental Secondary School. I went there because it had a great reputation in the local area and only took me 5 minutes to walk there from my home.

I think the teachers there were really the best ones that people can find in my hometown. Among them, I liked my physics teacher the most, 'cause I learnt a lot of things in his class. He required group work and presentations in his class, both of which were extremely impressive for me.

**Group activity**

With the instruction of our physics teacher, we were divided into small groups and asked to find material that maybe helpful. In that case, we had to work within the group and tried to find out the best way to present and redo the experiment that we were assigned to. Despite of the unfamiliarity, we were actually kind of looking forward to it, you know, as we would have a chance to do something on our own rather than sit in the classroom and listen.

I liked my high school so much because of the teachers and classmates that I met.

(下面借用地点类题目中 Local people 的描述)

**Local people**

I think most people there were very nice and friendly, you know, they were genuinely good people. But most importantly, they were very polite in their daily lives. It was shown through really small things, such as a handshake, a smile and a helping hand when you were in need. People there were true ladies and gentlemen.



以上这个话题最明显地体现了我们话题合并的特点，大家会发现不仅同一个 Part 2 大类下的核心素材可以互相借鉴使用，后期准备的熟练后，不同话题大类间的核心素材也是可以互相借鉴和使用的。

请再看下一个话题，这是一个有关“书”的话题卡，很多考生会直接把它合并到媒体类题目中，但是就像我刚刚提到过的，如果后期使用熟练，不同话题的类型区分会越来越不明显，核心素材也可以互相借鉴使用：



**Describe a book about history you recently read.**

**You should say:**

**what book it was**

**when you read it**

**why you read this book about history**

**and explain what you liked about the book.**



### 参考回答

I read a lot of books, and my favourite one is about the famous scientists around the world. The book was recommended by my best friend Wang Rui. There are a lot of important events in the history about science in the book, and I just began to read it again several days ago. My favourite history story in the book is about Galileo.

#### Story of Galileo

In the year of 1589, the famous scientist Galileo made himself well-known for the Galileo's Free-falling Experiment on the Tower of Pisa, which is a very important event in the history of physics. He used two solid lead balls to prove the gravitational acceleration is the same for everything. The two balls were both solid, but one of them was heavier than the other one. People had thought the heavier one would fall more quickly and hit the ground earlier, but in fact they were wrong. The two balls hit the ground at the same time.

#### Personal feeling

I think this event is so important, not only because it is a milestone in physics, but also because how it influences people generation by generation. You know, Galileo was doubted by a lot of people. They called him liar, weirdo and lunatic, but he never gave up, and he stuck to his ideas. Finally, he proved himself to others. I was so inspired and encouraged by him.



Also, I have a deeper understanding about physics through Galileo's story.

### Advantage of physics

Although physics is formed by concepts, rules and methodologies, you know, all about data and constant, our society really relays on it, not only when it comes to finding a better way to design faster cars or having a more advanced touch screen for iPads, but also how it works on the spiritual level. Most scientists devote their time, energy, sometimes even life to make a point to the world. They care about the truth, and their perseverance is what I admire the most.

我们使用学术科目这个话题解决了 Part 2 媒体类的一个话题，那么如果我们对语言组织能力有信心的话，可以换一个差别比较大的话题，比如：



**Describe a character from a story you read or heard in your childhood.**

**You should say:**

**who the character was**

**when you heard or read this story**

**what the character looked like**

**what the character did in the story**

**and explain what influence this character had on you.**



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about a character in my childhood story. Well, my uncle is a high school physics teacher, so he never stopped trying to feed me with all the stories about scientists in physics when I was still a primary school student. Among all of them, one scientist actually impressed me the most. And his name is Galileo.

### Story of Galileo

In the year of 1589, the famous scientist Galileo made himself well-known for the Galileo's Free-falling Experiment on the Tower of Pisa, which is a very important event in the history of physics. He used two solid lead balls to prove the gravitational acceleration is the



same for everything. The two balls were both solid, but one of them was heavier than the other one. People had thought the heavier one would fall more quickly and hit the ground earlier, but in fact they were wrong. The two balls hit the ground at the same time.

The reason why I remember this story so well is because of the meaning behind it.

### Personal feeling

I think this event is so important, not only because it is a milestone in physics, but also because how it influences people generation by generation. You know, Galileo was doubted by a lot of people. They called him liar, weirdo and lunatic, but he never gave up, and he stuck to his ideas. Finally, he proved himself to others. I was so inspired and encouraged by him.

Also, I have a deeper understanding about physics through Galileo's story.

### Advantage of physics

Although physics is formed by concepts, rules and methodologies, you know, all about data and constant, our society really relays on it, not only when it comes to finding a better way to design faster cars or having a more advanced touch screen for iPads, but also how it works on the spiritual level. Most scientists devote their time, energy, sometimes even life to make a point to the world. They care about the truth, and their perseverance is what I admire the most.

这个话题卡的答案内容与上面的核心素材基本保持一致。



A good personality of yours



### 参考回答

I think one good quality of mine is perseverance. Some people call it “stubborn”, but I really think this is a positive personality that I have acquired ever since I was a child. You know, my mother used to tell me bedtime stories before I went to bed, and Galileo's story impressed me the



most among all.

### Story of Galileo

In the year of 1589, the famous scientist Galileo made himself famous for the Galileo's Free-falling Experiment on The Tower of Pisa, it is a very important event in the history of physics, he used two solid lead balls to prove the Gravitational acceleration is the same for everything, the two balls were both solid, but one was very heavy, the other one was not. People thought the heavy one would fall quicker and hit the ground earlier, but they were wrong. The two balls hit the ground at the same time.

### Personal feeling

I think this event is so important, not only because it is a milestone in the physics, but from the spiritual level. You know, Galileo was doubted by a lot of people. They called him a liar, a weirdo, a lunatic, but he never gave up and he stuck to his ideas, so am I. Finally, he proved himself to others. I was so inspired and encouraged by him.

### Advantage of physics

Although physics are formed by data and constant, our society really relays on it. Not only when it comes to finding a better way to design faster cars or having a more advanced touch screen for iPad, but in a spiritual level. Most scientists devote their time, energy, sometimes even lives to make a point to the world. They care about the truth and their perseverance is what I admire the most.

I think I got my "stubbornness", a.k.a. perseverance from Galileo.

至此，学术科目这一个 Part 2 大类就先讲到这里。本小结的内容帮助大家学习了如下 16 个 Part 2 话题卡。大家有没有觉得很超值呢？

1. Describe an important event in the history.
2. Describe a science subject that you studied in high school.
3. Describe a class or training session that you enjoyed.
4. Describe a project or some work that you did with others.
5. Describe a subject that you didn't like in high school.
6. Describe a subject that you didn't like but like now.
7. Describe a subject that you want to learn in the future.



8. Describe a physics experiment you ever did.
9. Describe a club that you are part of.
10. Describe your favourite method of communication.
11. Describe an interesting speech that you heard.
12. Describe a rule in your school.
13. Describe your secondary school.
14. Describe a book about history you recently read.
15. Describe a character from a story you read or heard in your childhood.
16. A good personality of yours.

如果大家不想使用物理这门学科作为素材，只需要扫描二维码，关注东东老师的微信公众平台“谢绍东 Shadow”并回复关键词“谢绍东的 999 条英语口语素材”即可收到大量学术科目的相关资料。









# 第拾章

---

## Part 3 初体验



在经历了 Part 1 及 Part 2 的准备后，大家终于要进入雅思口语考试最具难度的 Part 3 部分了。Part 3 的话题分布之广、问题难度之高让很多考生望而却步。但是只要掌握正确的方法，一定可以在较短的时间之内将其攻克。本章将从以下几个方面介绍 Part 3：

- Part 3 基本介绍
- Part 3 考题结构及数量分布
- Part 3 三大题型分类及答题 3R 法则



## IELTS | 01 Part 3 基本介绍

Part 3 的难度是三个部分中最高的，总时长与 Part 1 一样，4～5 分钟，形式也与 Part 1 一样（问答），但是主题与 Part 2 相关（基于 Part 2 的主题进行发散提问）——只是相关，一般不会过多追问 Part 2 的细节。Part 3 的主题包含超过 20 个核心主题，但是在这里我们把它们和 Part 2 有机结合在一起，总结成八大类（即 Part 2 的八类话题），原因在 Part 2 中解释过，这里不再赘述。

考官可以根据自己的喜好发问，所以 Part 3 题目范围广泛，不拘泥于题库范围。因此一般的口语预测也不包含关于 Part 3 的内容。

虽然 Part 3 问题数量不固定，问题内容没有限制，考官在这里有绝对的主动和自主权，但是根据我的近万名学生的考试经验来看，Part 3 的题目总数量一般在六个左右，所以每个问题回答的时间长度大约 30～40 秒，即 6～8 句话。

## IELTS | 02 Part 3 考题结构及数量分布

Part 3 的题目设计基于 Part 2，同时高于 Part 2；Part 3 的问题有大约 20～30 个，因此 Part 3 的问题总量是整个雅思口语题库中最为庞大的。如果说针对 Part 1 和 Part 2 我们还能按照具体题目进行地毯式清扫的话，Part 3 则几乎没有这种可能性。因此，为了能够有条理地备考 Part 3，我建议大家全面了解 Part 3 的考查目标、备考方法及常见题型，这样方能以不变应万变。

Part 3 的考查目标从本质上来说就是测上限（upper limits），对“烤鸭”们回答的长度（length）、连贯性（coherence）和词汇、语法（advanced vocabulary and grammar）的应用都有了新的要求。如果是第一次接触雅思考试，我建议“烤鸭”们使用以下套路来回答问题。

回答问题的策略（总分总结构，类似于小学生写作文时常用的结构）：

**总：**开头第一句话总起全文。

**分：**分论点一；

分论点二；

分论点三。

**总：**回答将要结束时总结自己的内容。

请看以下 Part 3 问答示例：



**问题：** What kind of qualities do you think a good teacher should have?

**答案：**

**总起开头：** I think there are some/ a few/ several qualities that are important.

**分论点一：** Firstly, a teacher should be responsible. If he is not responsible, he may not be willing to take care of the students with care and tenderness.

**分论点二：** Besides, he should be humorous, so that the students will be more focused and paying more attention to him during the class.

**分论点三：** What's more, knowledge is a must, so he should be knowledgeable. What will he teach if he knows nothing at all?

**总结：** As a result, those are the qualities that I think are important for a teacher to possess.

这样的回答虽然有一些僵硬，但是对于基础薄弱和没有备考经验的“烤鸭”们确实是必经的道路，因为它为考生提供了中肯的示范和快速的入门。而基础特别好或者有备考经验的考生则对于这种套路需求不大。

针对这种套路性的回答，我为大家提几点建议：

### ① 句型的使用

每个问题答案中开头的句子尽量不要使用从句，但是中后期都可以使用从句，不会显得过于突兀，万万不要出现“写作句型乱入口语”的情况。如果大家一定要在开头使用从句，也请使用以下这些符合口语化表达的从句：

- That's the reason why \_\_\_\_\_.
- People believe that \_\_\_\_\_.
- One reason is that \_\_\_\_\_.
- What I like most about it is that \_\_\_\_\_.
- That's why \_\_\_\_\_. What else is that \_\_\_\_\_.

### ② 数字的使用

除非你非常确定自己只有两个理由或者三个原因，否则 Part 3 总起开头的时候尽量不要去说具体数字，如：“I have two reasons.” “There are three factors.” 等。考生这样操作后时常不能自圆其说，非常尴尬。建议大家使用以下短语和词组作为 Part 3 的“总起开头”：

- There are some/ a few/ several reasons/ factors/ points.
- I have some/ a few/ several reasons/ factors/ points.



为了避免与数字有关的尴尬，还可以把问题转化成陈述句的形式来做开头，这样也可以避开数字的使用：

—What do you think is the most serious social problem in China?

—I think the most serious social problem in China is \_\_\_\_\_.

### ③ 收尾的句型

Part 3 的收尾句不一定非要是一个长句或者从句，如：“As a result, those are the factors that I think are important for a teacher to have.” 大家可以使用简短的句子为自己的回答进行一个干练的收尾，例如：

- That's what I think.
- This is how I feel.
- That's my answer.
- That's all.



以上句子虽短，但也包含简单句、复杂句，因此能在一定程度上满足语法这个评分点的需要。

### ④ 准备一些套句

我很反对考生在 Part 1 和 Part 2 这两部分准备套句，因为这两部分内容非常简单，实在没有必要。但是 Part 3 的难度较高，我还是建议考生适当准备几个口语表达中的套句。因为在口语考试的过程中，回答套路优先级排序是这样的：

直接回答问题 > 套句 + 回答问题 > 套句 > 长停顿

由此可见，最好的答题策略是直接回答问题，而套句是次优的选择，最不好的情况是出现长停顿。需要注意的是，套句不是答案！考生最终还是要说出答案来的。套句只是为了填补考生思考时的谈话空白而出现的句子，它的作用有以下三点：

- 为自己赢得宝贵的时间，让自己的表达更加自然、生活化。
- 掩盖因短暂的停顿及思考导致的不连贯。
- 显示自己听懂问题了，只是问题比较难回答，需要时间思考一下。

我向大家建议的套句有以下两大类：

#### (1) 针对优缺点型的插入语

● Frankly speaking, it is very complex to say, because different people have different ideas about this.

● As a matter of fact, I am not sure; you know, people really think differently from their own perspectives.



- I don't know yet, you know, because sometimes when people change their positions, their ideas can change from time to time.

### (2) 针对自己不熟悉的话题

- I don't have a chance to encounter with this kind of question before, but if you ask me, I guess...

- Wow, that is a very tough question. I have never thought about that before. Let me think about it.

- I am not familiar with this topic, but I will try my best to answer it.

以上句子能各记一到两个即可，多记无益。

## 03 | IELTS Part 3 三大题型分类及答题 3R 法则

为了不给大家增添难度，我对 Part 3 问题的分类非常简单，这样方便大家掌握。Part 3 的问题可大致分为以下三种题型：

(1) 条件型问题：同一个主题在不同条件下的对比。

e.g. Do you think different age groups do different things when they visit a garden?

(2) 优缺点型问题：主要进行优缺点的陈述和展开。

e.g. What kind of advantages and disadvantages do you think social media will have?

(3) 列举型问题：论述主体的要素、要点，或者下定义。

e.g. What do you think a good student should have?

以上每一个问题类型，都有一条黄金法则，而三条黄金法则（3 Rules）就是 Part 3 的 3R 法则。下一章节中我们将详细讲解 Part 3 的题目，所以本章先不赘述。



# 第拾壹章

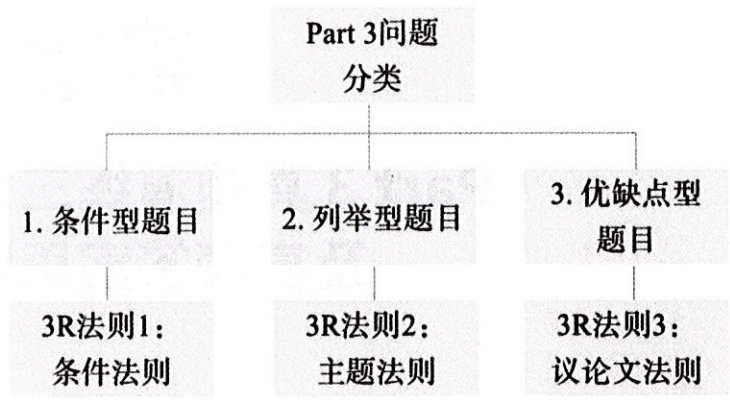
---

## Part 3 真题演练三大题型 及高频答案思路串讲



上一章节中，我们介绍了雅思口语 Part 3 总的回答套路——总分总原则，并简单提到了“3R 法则”的概念。本章节将集中为大家讲解 Part 3 的三大类题型如何应用“3R 法则”进行解答、每一类题型的特点及常用理由。

Part 3 问题的分类及对应的“3R 法则”，请大家看以下表格：



考生按照分类进行准备即可。



# IELTS | 01

## 条件型问题

在口语 Part 3 的考题当中，经常会出现同一个主题在不同条件下的对比分析。主题有时是人，有时是事物，例如：

**同一主题在不同性别条件下的对比分析：**Are boys and girls interested in the same games or sports?

**同一主题在不同年代条件下的对比分析：**How have children's games changed in the past few decades?

**同一主题在不同年龄条件下的对比分析：**Compare the films that older people like to watch with those that younger people like to watch.

以上这些题目都是条件型题目的典型，特征包括：主题明确（运动、儿童游戏及电影）及条件清晰（性别、年代及年龄等）。条件型题目对于考生来说其实是比较容易听懂的，因为这种问题要点突出而且发问方法比较有限，要注意的无非是“先出现主题还是先出现对比条件”而已。

只要按照上一章中我们提到过的，按照“总分总原则”来回答即可。我们来看一个范例：

### ① Are boys and girls interested in the same games or sports?

**答案：**

**总起开头：**Well, usually it depends on the individuals, but generally speaking, they do have the tendency to like different sports or games.

**分论点（条件）一：**For boys, they do like the sports with a little bit more running and sweat, such as American football or basketball, as they are physically strong and more dynamical, relatively speaking.

**分论点（条件）二：**For girls, they probably like swimming or dancing, you know, the slower and romantic ones. As they are more careful and patient, they can notice the small movements and details.

**总结：**After all, boys and girls do sports very differently.

虽然条件型题目包含几千道不同的题目，但是我们还是不难发现它们的规律，即条件型题目的对比条件非常有限。考试中常出现的对比条件只有以下六种，也就是说只要准备好以下六种对比条件的常见回答及思路，条件型问题就不会再对“烤鸭”们造成威胁。

**常见对比条件：**

1. 性别上的对比（男性 VS 女性）



2. 年龄上的对比 (成人 VS 孩子、老年人 VS 年轻人)
3. 金钱上的对比 (有钱 VS 没钱、富人 VS 穷人)
4. 地点上的对比 (城市 VS 农村)
5. 国情上的对比 (国内 VS 国外)
6. 时间上的对比 (过去 VS 现在、现在 VS 未来)

以上对比条件中,最简单却最常考的是 1 和 2。相信大家一定非常喜欢这样的组合,所以建议大家一定要优先准备这两个大类。

另外,大家会发现男性的优缺点与年轻人的优缺点类似,女性的优缺点与老年人的优缺点类似。这样主要是为了减少大家需要背诵的内容,方便考生备考,希望大家不要上纲上线。

我已经帮助大家总结了常见的回答和思路,请大家参考:

## 1 性别上的对比 (男性 VS 女性)

### ① 男性的优点: Males have a lot of great qualities.

dynamical 有能量的

straight-forward 直爽的

brave 勇敢的

physically strong 体力好

### ② 男性的缺点: There are some disadvantages about men.

stubborn 固执的

impulsive 冲动的

careless 不小心的

reckless 莽撞的

### ③ 女性的优点: Females are good at a lot of things.

careful 细心的

patient 耐心的

thoughtful 体贴的

romantic 浪漫的

tender 温柔的

### ④ 女性的缺点: Women have some disadvantages in them.

physically weak 体力差

emotional 情绪化

hesitating 爱犹豫

conservative 保守

## 2 年龄上的对比 (成人 VS 孩子、老年人 VS 年轻人)

### ① 年轻人的优点: Young people have a lot of great qualities.

dynamical 有能量的

brave 勇敢的



straight-forward 直爽的  
physically strong 体力好

open-minded 思想开化的  
good memory 记性好

⑩ 年轻人的缺点：There are some disadvantages about young people.

careless 不小心的  
impulsive 冲动的

inexperienced 没有经验的  
reckless 莽撞的

⑪ 老年人的优点：Old people are good at a lot of things.

careful 细心的  
thoughtful 体贴的  
tender 温柔的  
experienced 有经验的

patient 耐心的  
mature 成熟的  
bad memory 记性差

⑫ 老年人的缺点：Old people have some disadvantages in them.

stubborn 固执的  
physically weak 体力差  
hesitating 犹豫的

emotional 情绪化  
conservative 保守



### 3 金钱上的对比（有钱 VS 没钱、富人 VS 穷人）

金钱上的对比往往和价值观的考题画上等号，出现频率适中，常见理由如下：

⑬ 有钱的好处：It is wonderful to be a rich person.

1. Rich people can buy a lot of things that they want, and it makes them feel so happy.
2. The level and quality of people's life will be improved when they have more money. You know, they can purchase goods with better qualities without worrying about the price.
3. The living standard of people can be improved when they have money. For instance, they can move to better communities and go to better schools.
4. People can go to a lot of different places and see different lives there.
5. Rich people can buy a lot of gifts for their families and friends.

⑭ 有钱的坏处：Being rich is a curse.

1. Some bad guys will try to take advantage of the rich people, such as girls marrying boys for money or the other way around. It happens in movies all the time.
2. Rich people always have more pressure and it is hard to handle.



3. People will become greedier once they have a taste of the rich life; they want more.
4. Money will corrupt the moral standard of people.
5. It is hard for rich people to make friends.
6. Rich people always suspect others when they are making friends; they don't know the true purpose of them.

④ 没钱的好处 : **Sometimes, a simple life can be amazing.**

1. People are simple and pure with less money.
2. People are happier when they have less money; they don't worry a lot.
3. People are easy to be satisfied when they have less money, and that's why they feel happiness easier.

④ 没钱的坏处 : **People have a lot of worries when they don't have money.**

1. The quality of people's life is very poor.
2. It is very stressful, because they will always worry about the bills that they have to pay.
3. Sometimes poverty turns people into the worse version of themselves. And there will be more material girls and boys in the world.
4. People may look down upon those guys who don't have a lot of money.
5. It may be really hard for a man to find a girlfriend when he doesn't have a lot of money.

#### 4 地点上的对比 (城市 VS 农村)

第4类及第5类对比条件实质上都和地点有关系,因此它们有一些相似的地方,常见回答理由及思路如下:

④ 城市的好处 : **It is amazing to live in the urban area.**

1. The quality of education in the urban area is better.
2. There are more job opportunities in the city than in the rural area.
3. The public transportation is better in the city.
4. There are more entertainment facilities in the city, such as KTV and cinema.
5. People can enjoy a higher living standard in big cities.

④ 城市的坏处 : **There are some disadvantages of living in the city.**

1. The crime rate there is higher than the rural area.
2. The air is very dirty and the environment there is not nice.



3. It is so crowded in the city and nobody like crowded places.
4. Everything is more expensive in the city.
5. I have to wait in a line for everything, such as buses, subways or even elevators.

④ **农村的好处：There are a lot of wonderful things about living in the rural area.**

1. The environment there is amazing, you know, the air is very fresh and clean.
2. The people there are very nice and friendly.
3. It is less crowded in the rural area, and there is less traffic jam.
4. I don't have to wait for a long time or in a queue.
5. Most things in the rural area are cheaper.

④ **农村的坏处：It sometimes can be very inconvenient to live in the rural area.**

1. There are a lot of daily goods that people can't get access to easily in the rural area, which would be very inconvenient.
2. There are very few entertainment facilities.
3. People are more conservative in the rural area, and not open to new things.
4. People earn less money in the rural area than in the cities.

**5 国情上的对比（发展中国家 VS 发达国家）**

④ **发达国家的好处：It is amazing to live abroad.**

1. The quality of education abroad is better.
2. The public transportation is better abroad.
3. People can enjoy a better living condition abroad.
4. The environment there is amazing, you know, such as the air is very fresh and clean.
5. It is less crowded abroad, and there are less traffic jams.
6. I don't have to wait for a long time or in a queue.
7. Some products are cheaper abroad.

④ **发达国家的坏处：There are some disadvantages of living abroad.**

1. The crime rate there is rather higher.
2. Even the nearest supermarket in the area is so far from home that people have to drive there to buy daily goods. It is very inconvenient.
3. Most things are more expensive abroad.



4. There are very few entertainment facilities.

④ **发展国家的好处：There are a lot of wonderful things about living in China.**

1. My families and friends live in China, so it is nice living here comparing to living abroad.
2. There are more job opportunities in China, as people are more familiar with how things are working out here in China.
3. The people here are very nice and friendly.
4. People can enjoy the tasty meals in China than abroad.

④ **国内的坏处：It sometimes can be very inconvenient to live in China.**

1. It is so crowded in China and nobody likes crowded places.
2. I have to wait in a line for everything, such as buses, subways or even elevators.
3. The air in most cities is very dirty and the environment is not nice.
4. People are generally more conservative in China, They are not open to new things.
5. For people who work for same positions, they earn less money in China than abroad.

**6 时间上的对比（过去 VS 现在、现在 VS 未来）**

时间上的对比与以上五种对比条件又很明显的不同，是比较有难度的一种对比条件。主要是因为即使时间这个条件固定了，题目依然会有许多的主题变化，从而很难让考生掌握规律。我为大家简单总结了几类常见的主题与时间条件配对后可能的回答，供大家参考。

④ **过去的优点：Living in the past sometimes can be so cool.**

人： People in the past were unsophisticated.

They had a closer relationship with their family members.

People were happier in the past, because they had less pressure.

环境： The environment in the past was clean and beautiful.

交通： The traffic in the past was smooth.

科技： The technology in the past were based on scientific research and reasons, which was simple and pure. People were just interested in the science itself, but now it's all about money and revenues.

④ **过去的缺点：Life in the past is somehow boring.**

人： People didn't have a lot of money and their material life is very poor.

环境： People had little defense against the natural disasters, and they didn't have



contingency plan.

交通：The roads were not well constructed and were very bumpy.

There were very few types of public transportations.

科技：The technology in the past was not well developed, so many things were not convenient.

### ⑩ 现在（未来）的优点：We have so much more in our lives than before.

人：People now have more money, so they can buy a lot of things if they want to.

People now have more chance to go to different places and see the world.

环境：People have more ways to reduce the harm of the natural disasters, you know, there is always a contingency plan to help people recover from them.

交通：The public transportation is more developed, and covers almost every part of the city. The function of public transportations has developed so much more, and they offer better user experiences. For example, the air conditioner on buses and subways are better than before.

科技：The goal and development of science is customer-oriented, and that's why people feel convenience in their daily life more and more.

### ⑪ 现在（未来）的缺点：We lose so much than before.

人：People are not happy, because they have a lot of pressure.

There is a huge gap between the rich and the poor.

环境：It is heavily polluted and the air is very dusty and dirty.

There are more natural disasters now than before.

交通：There is always a traffic jam now and it makes people feel very frustrated.

科技：The side-effect of technology now damages the environment badly, such as the manufacture process of many high technology products contaminating rivers and lakes.

现在给大家 15 道条件型问题作为练习：

Step 1：请大家首先找出每个问题的对比条件和主题分别是什么？

Step 2：按照总分总结构构思答题框架。

Step 3：使用以上常用理由或者将以上常用理由变形后回答以下问题。



**条件类题目**

1. Is there any difference between the types of news that young people are interested in and the news that older people, such as your parents, are interested in?
2. What are some of the differences between Chinese art forms such as painting and foreign art?
3. How has the way Chinese people spend their holidays changed in the past few decades?
4. Do young people prefer to travel abroad or travel within their own country?
5. Do you think there are any differences when men are friends with each other and when women are friends with each other?
6. Are the TV programs in China very different to TV programs in the West?
7. How have games changed in the past few decades?
8. Compare how waste is disposed of today and how it used to be disposed of many years ago.
9. Do you think old people produce as much waste as young people?
10. Do you think people's tastes in music change as they grow older or do old people today still like the same music they liked when they were young?
11. Compare the toys that kids have today with the toys that kids had 20 or 30 years ago.
12. In China, what changes have occurred in advertising in the past 20 or 30 years?
13. Are the attitudes of young people today towards old people the same as the way young people's attitudes in the past?
14. Are the people who live in small places the same as the people who live in big cities?

## 02 | IELTS 列举型问题

Part 3 中的列举型题目主要是让考生陈述主题的要素、要点，或者要求考生下定义。往往是比较抽象的主题，例如政府职责或某个职业所需要的技能等。例如：

对好考生需要具备的品质下定义：What kind of qualities do you think a good student should have?

对杂志这种商品的进行定义：What kind of factors do you think a magazine need in order to be successful?



以上是两道典型的列举型题目，其特点是需要考生来进行定义、说明题目中主题的要点或者特点。列举型题目本身其实比较有难度，尤其对于想冲击7分或以上的考生来说更是必争之地。

回答的套路依然是“总分总原则”，按照“第一、第二、第三”的逻辑顺序开始论证。但是我建议为每一条分论点提炼关键词，然后解释每一个关键词。

针对列举型题目，我把它们节能型细化，分为以人为主体的和以物为主体的两种情况，这样大家就会有一个基本的套路，也就可以避免出现思路断层的情况了。



从上图不难看出，列举型问题所倡导的主题法则其实就是希望考生能够在听到问题后及时分类。下面先通过“以人作为主体”的类型看看列举型问题的回答步骤。

第一步：确定问题主题，看问题是以人为主体的还是以物为主体的。

例如“What kind of qualities do you think a good student should have?”是很明显的以人为主体的题目。因为这个问题的主题是“a good student”。

而“What kind of factors do you think a magazine need in order to be successful?”则是很明显的以物为主体的问题，因为这个问题主题是“a magazine”。

第二步：确定问题中的两个分论点。

以人为主体的问题，两个分论点为：



1. 从精神层面论述
2. 从身体层面论述

第三步：按照总分总问题回答问题。我们来看个范例：

⑨ What qualities do you think a good student should have in order to succeed?

答案：

总起开头：I think a good student should possess the following qualities.

分论点 1（精神层面）：On spiritual level, he should be positive, optimistic and enthusiastic.

分论点 2（身体层面）：On physical level, a good student should be healthy, strong and energetic.

我帮助大家总结了列举型问题以人为主体的问题答案中常用的关键词：

精神层面（常用）：positive, optimistic, enthusiastic, compassionate

身体层面（常用）：healthy, strong, energetic

大家请看以下两个例子：

⑩ What is your definition of a good journalist?

总起开头：I think a journalist should have possess the following qualities.

分论点 1（精神层面）：On spiritual level, he should be positive, optimistic and enthusiastic.

分论点 2（身体层面）：On physical level, a good journalist should be healthy, strong and energetic.

⑪ In general, what do parents usually teach their children?

总起开头：I think parents can teach children in two different aspects.

分论点 1（精神层面）：For instance, they teach their kids to be positive, optimistic and enthusiastic.

分论点 2（身体层面）：Also, parents should require their children to do some exercise or sports, you know, so their kids could be healthy, strong and energetic.

不难发现连续三个很不一样的列举型问题都可以用以上罗列的常用单词解答。当然，书本知识起到引导的作用，我鼓励大家能够以这些素材为基础，再进行单词的二次替换和创作。

现在我们再来看列举型题目中“以物为主体”的回答步骤。



第一步：确定问题主体，在此不再赘述。

第二步：确定问题中的两个分论点。

以物为主体的问题，两个分论点为：

1. 对个人的影响。
2. 对社会的影响。

第三步：按照总分总问题回答问题。我们来看一个范例：

### ⑩ Do you think that national celebrations are a waste of government money?

**答案：**

**开头点题：** I think it really depends on what kind of influence those national celebrations have on people, but I think most of them are really necessary.

**分论点 1 (对个体的影响)：** Some national celebrations can provide great opportunity for family gatherings and meals. I can unite with my beloved ones, and it really helps me to relax myself.

**分论点 2 (对社会的影响)：** Also, national celebrations can provide people with job opportunities. For instance, you know, the decoration of the streets requires a lot of human labour.

**总结：** So I don't think they are a waste of government money.

我帮助大家总结了列举型题目以物为主体的问题答案中常用的关键词：

对个体的影响（常用）：relaxing, entertainment, happy

对社会的影响（常用）：job opportunity, cooperation, inspiring

现在给大家 15 道列举型问题作为练习：

Step 1：请大家首先确认每个问题的主题分别是以人为主还是以物为主。

Step 2：按照总分总结结构构思答题框架。

Step 3：使用以上常用理由或者将以上常用理由变形后回答下列问题。

#### 列举型题目

1. What can news bring to us?
2. What role does law play in society?
3. Do you think historic sites are important as places for tourist to visit?



4. Do you think friendship is important? (Why?)
5. Do you think it's important for people to join groups or be a part of (be an active member of) a community? (Why?/ Why not?)
6. Do you think it's necessary to have government controls on what is shown on TV?
7. Do you think TV program producers have a responsibility to reflect the traditional culture and values of society?
8. What do you think is the most serious environmental problem in China? (Why?)
9. Do you think it is the government's responsibility to solve environmental problems or is it the responsibility of each individual?
10. Is music an important part of the culture in your country?
11. What is the importance of the historical places for people today?
12. What do you think is the value of teaching history in school?
13. What would you say is the “national food” of China?
14. Do you think it's important to preserve the skills of making traditional handicrafts?
15. Do you think it's very important for a city to have such facilities as museums and exhibitions?
16. What do you think is the importance (or, the value) of art forms such as ballet and drama?

## 03 | IELTS 优缺点型问题

优缺点型的题目其实有两个大类。

- 一元比较型：一件事情的两个方面（A 的好处或坏处）
- 二元比较型：两个不同的主题进行优缺点对比

例如：“咖啡有什么优缺点？”就是非常明显的一元比较型题目。而“咖啡和茶你更喜欢哪一个？”则是二元比较型题目。但是本质上都是需要考生来阐述问题主题的优缺点，只要大家能够完成这个任务即可。

优缺点型问题和 Part 1 的论证型问题本质上来说是一样的，之所以在 Part 3 换了称呼主要是因为 Part 3 对问题的思路及答案要求更长也更深入。为了不让大家产生错觉，才有了这个新的称谓，而且



Part 3 的优缺点型问题与雅思写作大作文的思路有许多相似的地方，所以也算是论证型问题的升级版。

写作大作文当中常用的双边论述（讨论话题的优缺点）和单边讨论（只讨论话题的优点或缺点）是解决优缺点性问题的法宝，而且在思路上也可以借鉴大作文里的让步反驳法，即简短讨论一边后马上大量讨论另一方面并在态度上赞成后者。

### 常见的优缺点型题目有：

**双边讨论型：**What kind of advantages and disadvantages do you think social media will have?

**单边讨论型（优点）：**What benefits are there for society when people obey the law?

**单边讨论型（缺点）：**Are there any possible dangers for children being taught by their parents before they start school?

优缺点型问题的回答套路非常明确，双边讨论需要有优缺点各一条；单边讨论则需要两个同向分论点。按照总分总原则，我们来看以下例子：

### ④ What are the advantages and disadvantages of a traditional family?

**答案：**

**开头点题：** I like traditional family, but I think it is quite important for people to see both sides of this question.

**分论点 1：** For the good parts, it is very stable and tight. Every family member has a very close relationship with each other. They know each other very well, such as what they do and what they like. People usually have a strong sense of belonging.

**分论点 2：** For the bad parts, sometimes you will feel suffocated a little bit, you know, less free, as you are restricted by the family. The traditional family has a fixed idea about what is right and what is wrong. They will not tolerate you when you are out of the line, but those ideas sometimes could be too traditional and restricted.

**总结：** That's why people argue about it all the time.

以上题目都是 Part 3 考题中的优缺点型题目。当然，常见的优缺点型题目往往带有标志性词汇，因此极好识别。我为大家总结了常见的优缺点问题常出现的词汇：

形容好处	good point / benefit / positive side / strength / advantage / strong point / merit / virtue
形容坏处	harms / bad parts / negative side / flaw / drawback / weakness / shortcoming / disadvantage / weak point / demerit / defect / danger



熟知以上词汇更能帮助大家快速识别优缺点型问题，这样可以减少问答间思考停顿导致的扣分。

至于优缺点型问题的常见回答，我帮大家专门总结了“雅思口语 Part 1 & Part 3 的万能理由”，并单独安排在本书的第十一章，大家届时查看并复习即可。

现在给大家 15 道优缺点型问题作为练习：

Step 1：请大家首先划出每个问题是双边讨论型问题还是单边讨论型问题。

Step 2：按照总分总结构构思答题框架。

Step 3：使用第十一章“雅思口语 Part 1 & Part 3 的万能理由”或者常用理由变形后回答以下问题。

### 优缺点型题目

1. What benefits are there for society when people obey the law?
2. Do you think visiting art galleries is beneficial for children?
3. Are there any possible dangers for children being taught by their parents before they start school?
4. Do you think it would be good to increase the use of computers in education and, as a result, reduce the amount of face-to-face interaction between teachers and children?
5. What are the benefits of travelling with a friend?
6. Do you think Chinese culture might be affected as more and more foreign tourists come here?
7. What benefits do children get from doing sports (one of the examples you just mentioned)?
8. What do you think are the advantages and possible disadvantages of sports for children?
9. Do you think competition is a good thing?
10. What benefits can people get from joining groups?
11. What social benefits can adults get from playing games with other people?
12. Do you think the influence of Western music in China has been a negative or a positive influence?
13. Do electronic toys have any disadvantages?
14. What do you think are the positive and the negative aspects of advertisements in our lives?
15. What are some of the benefits and possible bad points of children playing outdoors?

以上三大类问题是 Part 3 的根本，只要掌握好以上三种方法，Part 3 的题目对于大家来说难度都



是极小的。

不少同学发现 Part 3 当中有许多问题没有关键词，不知道该如何归类这些问题，进而不知道如何回答。

其实这些问题是最简单的，因为这种问题把回答的主动权交到了考生的手里，考生可以选择以上三种回答方法的任意一种来回答问题。

我们来看以下几个例子：

### ④ What is your opinion about one-child policy?

**题目分析：**这个问题很不好界定是条件型问题还是列举型问题，但恰恰因为这样，大家的可选择余地反而更大。我们先按照条件型问题回答。这个题目只有一个主题“one-child policy”。我们可以给它加上一个条件，例如时间上的对比。于是这个问题就可以按照时间对比条件来回答了。

#### 思路一

**开头点题：** Well, I think it really depends on what kind of situation and time that we are in at the moment.

**分论点 1：** If we were in the 1970s, one child policy is really important and reasonable, as we had so many difficulties in offering enough food and space for people, and the quality of people's lives will be damaged by the raising population.

**分论点 2：** But now, I think one child policy should be loosen up a little bit, as we are in an aging society right now, and the young generation now have much more burden to feedback the old generation. What's more, the old-age care in China is immature.

**总结：** All in all, I think one-child policy was a suitable plan 40 years ago, but not anymore.

但是如果大家没有想到条件型题目的回答思路，我们也完全可以按照列举型问题回答来回答这个问题。

**题目分析：**既然这个题目只有一个主题“one-child policy”，那么很显然这个问题是以物为主题的列举型的题目。我们可以从这个政策对于“自己”的影响和对于“社会”的影响两方面来说。

#### 思路二

**开头点题：** Well, I think it is really hard to say, you know.

**分论点 1：** For me, I am the only child in the family, so I feel lonely sometimes. I have friends, but it's not the same.

**分论点 2：** For the society, I think it has more positive influences. Frankly speaking, we now



have a relatively smaller population and less competition now, which means more job opportunities. This is all because of the one-child policy.

**总结：** Therefore, I think it may be not good for me, but it truly benefits the society as a whole.

大家看以上答案不难发现，以前缺少思路甚至没有思路的情况变成了一个问题可以有几种不同的回答思路，只要能做到这样，Part 3 必然不在话下。

### ④ What do you think is the most serious social problem in China?

**题目分析：** 这个题目可以让考生自由发挥，并且考生应该在雅思大作文的准备过程当中有所思考，如教育问题、环境问题、人口问题或者医疗问题等。考生只需要选择自己擅长的一个方面描述即可。我们可以试试优缺点型题目的回答思路。

#### 思路一：环境问题

**开头点题：** I personally believe that the most serious problem in China right now is the environmental problem.

**分论点 1：** I think environmental problems harm people's health. You know, the haze in Beijing is really bad, so it is impossible for people to stay healthy in that dusty air. Their eyes and lungs will suffer.

**分论点 2：** Environmental problems also reduce people's interests in investment, since no company or individual would love to open branches or headquarters in a heavily polluted area.

**分论点 3：** What's more, environmental problems will have to be dealt with by government with a huge amount of money, which is much larger than the cost of environment protection.

**总结：** So I believe the environmental problems are the most serious problems that should be dealt with.

#### 思路二：教育问题

**开头点题：** The quality of education in China is a huge problem right now. There are several things that need to be improved.

**分论点 1：** The teachers, for example, must be improved in both academic level and moral aspects. They should learn more about the subjects and be more responsible and gentle.

**分论点 2：** The teaching facilities should be boost into a new standard. There are so many



schools in the rural area that has no desks or chairs for students. Sometimes even the textbooks are rare, not to mention computers.

**分论点 3 :** The testing system should be more diverse. We have merely the college entrance exam to define the students, which is not enough. What about the students who have talent in the subjects that are not tested in CEE, such as art and music? Right?

**总结 :** If these problems can't be solved properly, there will be huger education problems in the near future.

### ④ What do you think the goal of travelling should be?

**题目分析 :** 我们可以在这个问题上加一个条件, 构成条件型题目。这个条件可以是男性和女性的对比, 即性别上的对比, 也可以是老年人和年轻人的对比, 即年龄上的对比。大家选择自己擅长的领域进行描述即可。

**思路 :** 性别对比

**开头点题 :** Travelling has many different meanings for different people.

**分论点 1 :** For men, they are very dynamical, so travelling means to see the world in a different perspective and meet new people and friends from all over the world.

**分论点 2 :** For women, they have the sense of romance in their hearts, so they took tons of photos along the way, and it really is a great way to relax and go shopping, you know. They love to buy local handicrafts and cosmetics.

**总结 :** So different gender really has different goals about travelling, but they all feel relaxed afterwards.



#### 练习题

从“地域对比”(城市 VS 农村)来阐述以上问题。

### ④ What role does tourism play in your country's economy?

**题目分析 :** 这个题目可以按照列举型题目回答, 大家需要描述他的重要性, 因此可以举例说出旅游业对两三个领域的影响。

**开头点题 :** Tourism is one contributing factor for our economy.

**分论点 1 :** For Chinese, we could travel domestically, which means that we can spend money in other cities and contribute to the economy there, and hence the local economy will be improved.



分论点 2: For foreigners, they will come to China and exchange currency. It will increase the foreign holdings of our country, which is a necessary part for a nation's economy.

总结: As you can see, it is definitely very important for our economy.



### 练习题

按照“条件型问题”回答上题，加上一个条件，如“过去 VS 现在”或者“城市 VS 农村”。

以上答案内容较多，长度适合语速较快的考生，大约 40 秒钟。而语速较慢的考生则会占用 1 分钟的时间，建议适当删减内容。

另外需要说明的是，Part 3 不仅需要考生英语水平高，更要求考生有基本的常识和对各种事件的认知，而这些东西恰恰是考生要在课下积累的。我建议大家经常观看一些美国的日间、夜间脱口秀，了解小到日常生活知识、大到国家大事的同时练习听力。

建议观看的脱口秀节目如下：

Conan Show

The Daily Show

Jimmy Kimmel Live

Saturday Night Live

The Ellen Degeneres Show

希望经过一段时间的练习，大家可以顺畅地完成 Part 3 的问答。



# 第拾贰章

考前冲刺



# 01 | IELTS 雅思口语模拟测试题

## Test 1

### Checking ID:

Hello, my name is Paul. I am your examiner today.

1. What's your full name please?
2. What should I call you?
3. Where do you come from?
4. May I see your ID please?

### Part 1:

Thank you, that's fine. In the first part, I would like to ask you some general questions about yourself.

Let's talk about

### Your work or school

1. Do you work or are you a student?
2. What school/ university do you go to?
3. Why did you choose to go there?
4. What do you do when you have a problem (or difficulty) with your studies?
5. What do you plan to do after you finish your studies?

### Noise

1. Do you prefer a quiet environment or an environment with some sounds? Why?
2. What natural sound do you like (the most)? (Why?)
3. Do you think that cities will become noisier in the future?
4. What sounds remind you of your childhood?

### Birds

1. Do you like birds?
2. What kinds of birds are there where you live?



3. In your country, do different birds represent different things?
4. Are there any birds (in your country) that have disappeared?
5. Do you think we should protect (wild) birds?

### Part 2:

OK, let's move on to part 2. In part 2 I will give you a topic, and I would like you to talk about it for 1 to 2 minutes. Before your talk, you will have 1 minute to prepare for what you are going to say. You may make some notes if you wish. Do you understand?

Here are some paper and a pen for you to make notes (hand a piece of paper and a pen to the candidate). And here is your topic (hand the following note to the candidate). I would like you to describe **a person you helped**.



**Describe a person you helped.**

**You should say:**

**who this person is**

**when did you help him/her**

**what did you help him/her**

**and explain how you helped him/her.**

**You will have to talk about the topic for one to two minutes.**

**You have one minute to think about what you are going to say.**

**You can make some notes to help you if you wish.**

### Part 3:

OK, thank you. Now let's move on to part 3. You have been talking about **a person you helped**, and I would like to ask you 1 or 2 more general questions related to this.

So let's consider first of all:

1. Do you think it's important for people to have friends? Why?
2. What kind of qualities should a good friend have?
3. How do people in your country meet (make) new friends?
4. Do young people and old people in your country make friends in the same way?



5. What kind of factors will stop people from being friends?

Thank you. That is the end of the speaking test.

## Test 2

### Checking ID:

Hello, my name is Britney. I am your examiner today.

1. What's your full name please?
2. What should I call you?
3. Where do you come from?
4. May I see your ID please?

### Part 1:

Thank you. That's fine. In the first part, I would like to ask you some general questions about yourself.

Let's talk about

### Hometown

1. What's your hometown?
2. Is that a small town or a big city?
3. Do you prefer big cities or small towns?
4. Is there anything famous about your hometown?
5. If you had a chance to live in a different city, what would it be? (Why?)

### Flower

1. Do you like flowers?
2. What kind of flowers do you like?
3. Are there any flowers that Chinese people like?
4. Do you prefer (to see) flowers indoors or outdoors?
5. Do you like plastic flowers?

### Concerts

1. Have you ever been to a concert?
2. Do you like to go to a concert?



3. Why do people like to go to a concert?
4. Do you think we should have the concert for free?

**Part 2:**

OK, let's move on to part 2. In part 2 I will give you a topic, and I would like you to talk about it for 1 to 2 minutes. Before your talk, you will have 1 minute to prepare for what you are going to say. You may make some notes if you wish. Do you understand?

Here are some paper and a pen for you to make notes (hand a piece of paper and a pen to the candidate). And here is your topic (hand the following note to the candidate). I would like you to describe **an old person you would like to meet again**.



**Describe an old person you would like to meet again.**

**You should say:**

**who he/she was**

**how much you contact**

**how he/she affected you**

**and explain why you want to meet him/her again.**

**You will have to talk about the topic for one to two minutes.**

**You have one minute to think about what you are going to say.**

**You can make some notes to help you if you wish.**

**Part 3:**

OK, thank you. Now let's move on to part 3. You have been talking about **an old person you would like to meet again**, and I would like to ask you 1 or 2 more general questions related to this.

So let's consider first of all:

1. In China, what is the attitude towards old people?
2. Who do you think should take responsibility for looking after old people?
3. What are the main problems facing old people in China today?
4. In your country, at what age do people usually retire from work?
5. Do you think this is a suitable age to retire?
6. In your country, what do old people do after they retire?





Thank you. That is the end of the speaking test.

## Test 3

### Checking ID:

Hello, my name is Paul. I am your examiner today.

1. What's your full name please?
2. What should I call you?
3. Where do you come from?
4. May I see your ID please?

### Part 1:

Thank you. That's fine. In the first part, I would like to ask you some general questions about yourself.

Let's talk about

### Working

1. Do you work or are you a student?
2. What work do you do?
3. Why did you choose to do that kind of work (or, that job)?
4. What do you do in this job?
5. Do you plan to continue in this job?

### Name

1. What's the meaning of your name?
2. Is there any special tradition about naming babies in your country?
3. Do Chinese people attach a lot of importance to (their) names?
4. Do you think it is easy to change people's names in China?

### Gifts

1. Do you often give gifts to people?
2. Do you and your friends or family members give each other gifts?
3. When do people in China give gifts? (On what occasions? / In what situations?)
4. Have you ever given someone a gift you made yourself?



**Part 2:**

OK, let's move on to part 2. In part 2 I will give you a topic, and I would like you to talk about it for 1 to 2 minutes. Before your talk, you will have 1 minute to prepare for what you are going to say. You may make some notes if you wish. Do you understand?

Here are some paper and a pen for you to make notes (hand a piece of paper and a pen to the candidate). And here is your topic (hand the following note to the candidate). I would like you to describe **a hotel you visited or have seen**.



**Describe a hotel you visited or have seen.**

**You should say:**

**where it was**

**what the name of the hotel was**

**what the hotel looked like**

**and explain why people choose to stay at this hotel.**

**You will have to talk about the topic for one to two minutes.**

**You have one minute to think about what you are going to say.**

**You can make some notes to help you if you wish.**

**Part 3:**

OK, thank you. Now let's move on to part 3. You have been talking about **a hotel you visited or have seen**, and I would like to ask you 1 or 2 more general questions related to this.

So let's consider first of all:

1. When people are travelling away from home, what choices do they have for places to stay?
2. Which of these is the most popular?
3. What facilities should a good hotel have?
4. What do you think of 4- and 5-star hotels?
5. What are some of the things that guests can do in a hotel, both in their rooms and out of their rooms?
6. In general, how can tourism contribute to the economy of the place where tourists go?



Thank you. That is the end of the speaking test.

## Test 4

### Checking ID:

Hello, my name is Britney. I am your examiner today.

1. What's your full name please?
2. What should I call you?
3. Where do you come from?
4. May I see your ID please?

### Part 1:

Thank you. That's fine. In the first part, I would like to ask you some general questions about yourself.

Let's talk about

#### Accommodation

1. Do you live in a house or a flat?
2. Tell me something about it.
3. Would you say it's a comfortable (or, pleasant) place to live?
4. What's your favourite place in your home?
5. In the future, what sort of home (flat, house etc. ) would you like to live in?

#### Map

1. Do you (ever) use a map?
2. When do you use a map?
3. Have you ever asked others for directions?
4. Who taught you how to use a map?

#### Museum

1. Are there many (or, any) museums in your hometown?
2. Do you often visit a museum?
3. Do you think museums should sell things to visitors?
4. When was the last time you visited a museum?



**Part 2:**

OK, let's move on to part 2. In part 2 I will give you a topic, and I would like you to talk about it for 1 to 2 minutes. Before your talk, you will have 1 minute to prepare for what you are going to say. You may make some notes if you wish. Do you understand?

Here are some paper and a pen for you to make notes (hand a piece of paper and a pen to the candidate). And here is your topic (hand the following note to the candidate). I would like you to describe **a special gift that you gave to someone.**



**Describe a special gift that you gave to someone.**

**You should say:**

**what the gift was**

**who the gift was for**

**when and where you bought it**

**and explain why it was special.**

**You will have to talk about the topic for one to two minutes.**

**You have one minute to think about what you are going to say.**

**You can make some notes to help you if you wish.**

**Part 3:**

OK, thank you. Now let's move on to part 3. You have been talking about **a special gift that you gave to someone**, and I would like to ask you 1 or 2 more general questions related to this.

So let's consider first of all:

1. Besides special occasions such as birthdays and festivals, what are some other reasons why people give presents to others?
2. Do advertisements influence people's choices when they are buying gifts?
3. Who (do you think) gets more pleasure, the gift giver or the gift receiver? (Why?)
4. Do you think people in China should give presents on western festivals such as Christmas?
5. Can people in China learn anything from western festivals?

Thank you. That is the end of the speaking test.



# 雅思口语 9 天冲刺复习计划(搭配预测使用)

IELTS 02

时间	Part 1 (每天三个话题)	Part 2 (每天一篇模板)	Part 3 (三天一个大类)	谢绍东的视频
Day 1	三大必考题目: Study/ Work, Hometown, Accommodation	人物类题目模板 背诵	1. 复习对比型回 答思路	雅思口语考试的 四个评分标准
Day 2	Part 1: Topic 4-6	地点类题目模板 背诵	每天 10 道真题思 路分析	雅思口语模拟考 试 6.5 分标准
Day 3	Part 1: Topic 7-9	媒体类题目模板 背诵	每天 10 道真题思 路分析	雅思口语模拟考 试 5.5 分标准
Day 4	Part 1: Topic 10-12	工作事件类题目 模板背诵	2. 复习优缺点型 回答思路	雅思口语模拟考 试 6 分标准
Day 5	Part 1: Topic 13-15	家庭事件类题目 模板背诵	每天 10 道真题思 路分析	雅思口语模拟考 试 7.5 分标准
Day 6	Part 1: Topic 16-19	物品类题目模板 背诵	每天 10 道真题思 路分析	雅思口语模拟考 试 8.5 分标准
Day 7	Part 1: Topic 20-23	学术科目题目模 板背诵	3. 复习列举型回 答思路	“雅思口语 DNA 系列”视频 1
Day 8	Part 1: Topic 24-27	户外活动类题目 模板背诵	每天 10 道真题思 路分析	“雅思口语 DNA 系列”视频 2
Day 9	Part 1: Topic 28-30	其他类题目模板 背诵	每天 10 道真题思 路分析	“雅思口语 DNA 系列”视频 3

备注:

- 每天需要大约 1.5 个小时。
- Part 1 的复习题目在预测中, 随着预测的变化而变化。



- Part 2 的复习模板已经在学生手中，随预测的变化而不同。
- Part 3 的题目分析在本书第十章。
- “雅思口语模拟考试及点评系列”在 v.xdf.cn 中输入“谢绍东”即可找到。“雅思口语 DNA 系列”

在优酷网上输入“谢绍东”即可找到。

谢绍东雅思资料专题页（有所有视频的链接）：

<http://www.51ielts.com/zhuanti/ieltsdna/ieltsdna.htm>

## IELTS | 03 雅思口语预测的使用方法（视频）

## IELTS | 04 雅思口语预测听不懂考官说话 应该怎么办（视频）

## IELTS | 05 雅思成绩是如何计算的（视频）

以上三个主题东东老师已经帮大家拍好了视频，大家只需要扫描二维码，关注东东老师的微信公众平台“谢绍东 Shadow”并回复“考前冲刺三”、“考前冲刺四”或“考前冲刺五”即可收看。





## 一、雅思考试相关规定及条款

### 1. 考生必须 ...

• 在报名时提供身份证件（护照或者身份证）。请参考《中国地区雅思考试考生须知》内关于身份证件的求，在境外参加考试的考生必须出示护照。

• 在考试当日出示与报名时完全一致且有效的身份证件原件，否则考生将被取消考试资格和考试成绩，并得转考、退考或退费。

• 准时到达考点，迟到考生将无法参加任何科目考试，不得转考、退考或退费，已完成科目成绩将被取消。

• 将所有个人物品放置在指定区域。考生仅允许将个人身份证件及一瓶除去标签的饮用水带入考试教室。有的电子设备及手表均必须关闭后放置在指定个人物品区域。考生可能在考试当中任何阶段接受电子扫描检查是否随身携带违禁物品。违规考生将被取消考试资格，无法收到考试成绩，并不得转考、退考或退尽管考点将采取合理措施保证放置在指定区域的个人物品安全，但无法对其遗失负责。考生必需药品经人员批准后可以带入考试教室。

• 同意在考试报名及考试当日接受身份确认，包括：

- 在考试当日参加现场照相。照相时需要暂时取下头面部遮挡物。如果考生拒绝拍照，将被取消考试资并不得转考、退考或退费。考试当天拍摄的数码相片将打印在考试成绩单上。未能参加现场照相的考生无法收到考试成绩。

- 提供个人签名。

- 接受指纹扫描。

• 考生桌子上只允许保留如下物品：身份证件、一瓶除去标签的饮用水。

• 纸笔考生如果认为收到的试卷类型有误、试卷不完整或者印刷质量不佳；机考考生如果认为电脑屏幕显示的考试科目有误，或者显示质量不佳，请立即通知监考人员。

• 如果考生有任何疑问，需立即举手通知监考人员。考生不得向监考人员提问、监考人员亦不会回答任何试题相关的问题。

• 完整参加所有四项科目考试。如果考生没有完成所有四项科目，将无法收到考试成绩。如有特殊情况，生需要在报名时提出申请并等待书面批准。如果考生任何科目缺席，将无法参加后续科目考试，不得转退考或退费，已完成科目的成绩将被取消。



• 在整场考试过程中,如考生感觉身体不适、认为考场内有任何干扰因素、或出现其他情况影响自己考试发挥,需在考试当天通知监考人员。考生如对考试当天服务不满意,请务必于离开考点之前以书面形式投在考试日期之后将不再受理任何关于考试当天服务质量的投诉。

• 考试结束后,考生离场时不得带走任何考试材料,根据考生参加的不同考试科目,考试材料包括笔试试卷、口试题卡、答题纸及草稿纸。试图将考试材料带出教室的考生将无法收到考试成绩。

## 2. 考生严禁 ...

- 在考试开始后与其他考生交谈或者干扰其他考生
- 与其他考生互相借用文具
- 在考试教室内吃食物或者吸烟
- 未经监考人员许可在考试当中离开教室
- 未经监考人员许可在考试尚未结束时离开教室
- 对考场工作人员有着装不得体、使用不礼貌言语、肢体冒犯或攻击等行为
- 参与有可能危害雅思考试公正性和安全性的任何形式的作弊行为。作弊行为包括并不限于：
  - 试图以任何形式作弊,包括使用任何形式及来源的参考材料
  - 协助他人作弊
  - 代替他人考试或者请他人替考
  - 抄袭其他考生答案
  - 机考考生恶意干扰电脑设置
  - 扰乱考场秩序
  - 以任何媒介复制任何部分的考试材料
  - 试图篡改成绩单上面任何信息
  - 在考试前或考试当天试图在考点藏匿电子设备或者参考材料
  - 窃取或试图窃取考试材料
  - 撕毁试卷或答题纸
  - 将试题内容及答案透露或试图透露给他人
  - 提前打开试卷
  - 考试结束时不按要求立即停笔
  - 其它监考人员认为属于违规或舞弊的情况

• 违规及作弊考生将被取消继续考试的资格,无法收到考试成绩。如果在考试成绩发放之后发现考生曾在试当天参与作弊,该考生的考试成绩将被取消。有违规作弊行为的考生不得转考、退考或退费,并有可禁止参加任何雅思考试。考生的违规作弊行为将被报告给全球各个政策主管机构,并有可能承担相应的责任。



## 二、雅思成绩单

• 雅思成绩单由英国文化教育协会发放，参加雅思考试纸笔考试的考生，成绩单发放时间通常为考试之后 13 天。参加雅思考试机考的考生，成绩公布时间通常为笔试日期后第 3 天，成绩单寄送时间通常为笔试日后第 4 天。

• 考生会收到一份成绩单原件，请妥善保管。

• 考试成绩单上面显示的考生姓名为考生报名时提供的身份证件姓名。如果考生发现成绩单上的出生地或语有误，需联系教育部考试中心雅思考试全国服务热线（电子邮箱：ielts@mail.neea.edu.cn，电话：082345671（服务时间：周一到周五：8:30 - 17:00；周六、周日：08:30-13:00（如遇因国家法定节假日调休需上班：8:30-17:00）；国家法定节假日除外））并提供相应证明材料。如果考生在收到考试成绩后更改了姓名，成绩单上面的姓名将不能做出相应的更改。

• 如果雅思考试合作方认为有必要重新核查考生成绩或者相关考务流程，考生的成绩单有可能无法按时发放。考生有可能被要求提供笔迹及声音样本协助调查。在特殊情况下考生有可能被要求重考单项或全部试。

• 如果在成绩单发放后发现任何异常情况，考生成绩可能被取消。考生有可能被要求重考单项或全部考试。考生的考试成绩将被提供给考生申请的成绩认可机构，以便于此类机构核实考试成绩或者对可疑作弊行展开调查。

• 如果考生或考生代理递交给成绩认可机构的考试成绩单涉嫌任何形式的篡改，考生的原始成绩有可能被消。

• 考生本人无权要求在考试之后接触到在雅思考试过程中完成的全部笔试答卷及口试录音录像。

## 三、退考或转考

• 在报名截止日期之前，考生可以登录教育部考试中心雅思报名网站个人主页，在“查看已注册考试”界办理转考（仅限于更改考试日期和 / 或考点）或退考手续并支付手续费。手续费为不超过 25% 的考试用。请注意用于雅思考试机考考位有限，考生可否转考成功取决于选定日期是否提供机考以及是否有剩考考位。

• 不同考试（雅思考试 - 纸笔、雅思考试 - 机考、用于英国签证及移民的雅思考试 - 纸笔、用于英国签证及民的雅思考试（学术类）- 机考、雅思生活技能类考试）之间无法直接转考，如您需要报考其他考试，请报名截止日期之前取消已经注册的考试后重新报考。

• 在报名截止日期之后考生因为医疗以外的原因申请退考将无法受理。如果考生因为医疗原因需要在报名止日期之后申请退考，需在笔试考试日期前联络教育部考试中心雅思考试全国服务热线（电子邮箱：ielts@mail.neea.edu.cn，电话：010-82345671（服务时间：周一到周五：8:30 - 17:00；周六、周日 08:30-13:00（如遇因国家法定节假日调休需上班：8:30-17:00）；国家法定节假日除外））提



出退考申请,并按照规定要求在规定的时限内提供医疗证明材料。考生只有罹患严重的疾病才可以申请退考,且需要写明在考试当日无法出席考试的医疗证明原件。教育部考试中心雅思考试全国服务热线保留审查考生证料并决定是否批准部分退款的权利。笔试考试日期之后、或考生已经参加任何考试科目之后将不再受理退考申请。

- 在报名截止日期之后不再受理转考申请。

#### 四、考生个人信息使用

- 雅思考试合作方关注并尊重考生的个人隐私。
- 雅思考试合作方将考生的个人信息用于执行考试及发放考试成绩单。这将便于考生向成绩认可机构提交成绩单,并供成绩认可机构核实考试成绩。
- 额外成绩单可以在成绩发放之后寄送到雅思考生指定的成绩认可机构。考生向成绩认可机构提交考试成绩单意味着同意成绩认可机构核实其考试成绩。
- 雅思考试合作方及其授权代表有可能将考生信息数据,包括并不限于考试表现、笔试答卷、口试录音录像、考试成绩、考试现场照片及全程录像等提供给教育院校、政府部门、签证部门、专业团体及商业机构成绩认可机构,或者法律机构及监管部门。此举的目的是核查考生身份、防止任何形式的作弊违规行为。如果考生在考试当天接受了指纹扫描,指纹信息仅由雅思考试方共享,不会提供给其他任何机构。
- 雅思考试合作方将保留考生在考试过程中完成的全部笔试答卷及口试录音录像用于质量监控及可疑作弊为调查。雅思考试分数及考试答案可能以匿名的方式用于信息收集、学术研究、数据统计及考官培训。

#### 五、中国地区雅思考生须知

《中国地区雅思考试考生须知》("考生须知")是《雅思考试报名表》和《考生注意事项:雅思考试相关条款》("规定及条款")不可分割的一部分。雅思考生须在完成网上报名前阅读并了解以下条款。如有任何疑问,请咨询教育部考试中心雅思考试全国服务热线(电子邮箱:ielts@mail.neea.edu.cn,电话:010-82345671(服务时间:周一到周五:8:30-17:00;周六、周日:08:30-13:00(如遇因国家法定假日调休需上班:8:30-17:00);国家法定节假日除外))。报名手续完成意味着考生已仔细阅读并同本"考生须知",本"考生须知"同时对考生产生法律效力。

##### 1. 雅思考试报名

在中国大陆地区,考生需要通过教育部考试中心(NEEA)雅思报名网站报考雅思考试。考生同时可报考场考试,但任意两场考试日期必须间隔7天以上。每场雅思考试的报名、转考和退考截止日期详见报名网站。



## 雅思分手指南—口语篇

考生本人对于选择注册何种雅思考试（包括雅思考试 - 纸笔、雅思考试 - 机考、用于英国签证及移民的雅考试 - 纸笔、用于英国签证及移民的雅思考试（学术类） - 机考、雅思生活技能类考试 A1 级别、雅思生活技能类考试 A2 级别或雅思生活技能类考试 B1 级别）负有全部责任。教育部考试中心及英国文化教育协会对生错误选择考试不承担任何责任。

### 2. 报名证件要求

雅思考试网上报名仅接受以下身份证件：

- 中国大陆考生凭有效的二代身份证或护照报名
- 中国香港、澳门考生凭有效的身份证，护照或港澳居民居住证报名
- 中国台湾考生凭有效的台湾居民来往大陆通行证（台胞证）或台湾居民居住证报名
- 非中国籍考生凭有效的护照报名。

### 3. 不接受的报名证件

雅思考试网上报名不接受的身份证件包括并不限于：一代身份证、户口本、户籍证明、公安机关身份证机动车驾驶证、学生证、工作证、中华人民共和国来往港澳通行证、港澳居民来往内地通行证（回乡证）、港签证身份书、社保卡、军官证、任何过期证件等等。

### 4. 准确提交个人信息

考生务必确保网上报名时提交的个人信息与身份证件上的信息完全一致。如果报名时提交的个人信息与当天身份证件个人信息不相符，考生将被取消考试资格和考试成绩，并不得转考、退考或退费。

### 5. 口语考试

纸笔口语考试通常会安排在笔试前一周至笔试后一周的任意一天，机考口语考试通常会安排在笔试当天与笔试日期尽可能相邻的日期。根据考务安排的需要，在特殊情况下，口试日期有可能超出此区间，英化教育协会保留调整口试安排的权利。口语考试有现场对话口试和视频通话口试两种方式，考生在报名以查询自己所报名场次的口试方式。根据考务安排的需要，在特殊情况下，口试方式可能会调整，英国教育协会保留调整口试方式的权利。考生最终的口试安排将显示在准考证上，且不能按照考生的要求进改。

### 6. 打印准考证

雅思考试 - 纸笔考生须于笔试之前 10 天登录雅思报名网站个人主页打印准考证。雅思考试 - 机考考生须于试之前 3 天登录雅思报名网站个人主页打印准考证。请考生核对准考证上的个人信息并检查考试安排（包考试类型、考号、口试时间、口笔试场地、口笔试地址、口笔试教室等等）。请注意如果未能及时打印证，可能导致考生错过口语考试。口笔试场地和地址有可能不同于考点场地和地址。如果准考证打印时所变化，教育部考试中心雅思报名网站将发布公告。请考生务必随时关注最新通知。

### 7. 考试当天证件要求

考生须携带与报名时完全一致的有效身份证件原件和准考证到考点报到候考。

有以下情况的考生将被取消考试资格和考试成绩，并不得转考、退考或退费：



- 在规定的笔试或口试入场截止时间前无法出示有效的身份证件。
- 在考试期间的任何环节出示不被接受的身份证件。
- 在考试当日出示与网上报名不一致的身份证件。
- 其它监考人员认为属于身份无法确认的情况。

## 8. 考生身份确认

无论在考试之前、考试期间或者考试之后，英国文化教育协会保留包括并不限于以下权利核实考生身份

- 向考生提问、收集个人资料及其他信息并录音录像以确认考生身份
- 要求考生在规定时限内提供其它身份证明文件

如果主考官对考生身份有疑义，或考生拒绝配合以致其身份不能得到满意确认，该考生将被取消考试考试成绩、不得转考、退考或退费，并有可能被永久取消雅思考试资格。如果考生对此决定有异议，可试后第一个工作日下午联系英国文化教育协会，预约一次全面的身份确认。如果考生的身份经确认属实考生将在指定日期获得免费重考一次。

使用伪造、涂改身份证件参加考试，代替他人参加考试，伪造或篡改考试成绩单的考生将被当场取消考格，或在考后取消考试成绩，作废成绩单，并不得转考、退考或退费。考生本人及替考者将被永久取消雅思考试资格，英国文化教育协会保留向相关成绩认可机构、使领馆、执法机构、监管部门、其他考试方和考试中心报告处理及追究相应法律责任的权利。

## 9. 检查考试安排

考试当天如有必要，英国文化教育协会保留在事先未通知考生的情况下，根据实际情况调整笔试科目顺或口试时间的权利。所有考试安排均以考试当天通知为准，准考证考试安排信息仅供参考。

考试当日在考试开始之前，考生应再次确认桌卡上的个人信息和考试安排。考生如认为个人信息和考试安有误，请立即举手通知监考人员并服从监考人员安排。考试开始后将不接受任何更改要求。

## 10. 考试入场开始时间

• 参加雅思考试纸笔考试的考生：请于笔试当天 07:30 前到达考点报到候考，进行个人物品置放、身份验证、指纹验证、检录入场、考场规则讲解、听力设备试音、填写答题纸个人信息等一系列重要考前准备作。入场截至时间为 08:30。

• 参加雅思考试机考的考生：

上午场笔试：请于笔试当天 08:00 前到达考点报到候考，进行个人物品置放、身份证查验、指纹验证、入场、考场规则讲解、机考机考系统登录等一系列重要考前准备工作。入场截至时间为 08:30。

下午场笔试：请于笔试当天 13:00 前到达考点报到候考，进行个人物品置放、身份证查验、指纹验证、检入场、考场规则讲解、机考系统登录等一系列重要考前准备工作。入场截至时间为 13:30。

晚场笔试：请于笔试当天 17:00 前到达考点报到候考，进行个人物品置放、身份证查验、指纹验证、检录场、考场规则讲解、机考系统登录等一系列重要考前准备工作。入场截至时间为 17:30。



• 口试：请考生于口试时间前 30 分钟到达考点报到候考，进行签到、个人物品置放、考场规则讲解、指描、现场照相、身份证查验、检录入场等一系列重要考前准备工作。口试截止入场时间为口试时间前 15 钟。

### 11. 考试成绩及成绩单

#### (1) 雅思考试 - 纸笔

正常完成雅思考试 - 纸笔四项考试科目及现场照相的考生成绩单通常将于笔试后第 10 个工作日通过快递寄考生报名时提供的成绩单寄送地址（仅限于中国大陆地区服务）。受公共假期影响，成绩单寄送日期会有变化。请考生务必保证所提供的成绩单寄送地址至少在笔试之后一个月内有效。

完成报名后至笔试日期后 5 天内，考生可以自行登录教育部考试中心雅思报名网站个人主页更改成绩单寄地址。未能在此时限内提交的成绩单寄送地址修改申请有可能无法受理。

考生通常可以在笔试后第 10 个工作日登录教育部考试中心雅思报名网站查看考试成绩和快递运单号码。共假期影响，成绩查询日期会有所变化。考试成绩以最终收到的成绩单为准，报名网站成绩信息仅供参考考试成绩无法以电话、传真或电子邮件形式通知考生，英国文化教育协会亦无法提供成绩单复印或成绩对服务。

任何四项科目考试、未能按照要求在考试结束之前完成现场照相、因违规在考试中被取消考试资格或在后被取消考试成绩的考生均无法收到考试成绩单。如因考生口试录音录像质量问题或其他原因导致评分正常进行，英国文化教育协会 将为考生提供一次免费口语考试。如果考生拒绝参加免费口语考试，成绩将无法正常发放。

#### (2) 雅思考试 - 机考

正常完成雅思考试 - 机考四项考试科目及现场照相的考生成绩通常将于笔试后第 3 天公布，成绩单将于笔后第 4 天通过快递寄往考生报名时提供的成绩单寄送地址（仅限于中国大陆地区服务）。受公共假期影响成绩单寄送日期会有所变化。请考生务必保证所提供的成绩单寄送地址至少在笔试之后一个月内有效。完成报名后至笔试日期当天 24:00，考生可以自行登录教育部考试中心雅思报名网站个人主页更改成绩单送地址。未能在此时限内提交的成绩单寄送地址修改申请有可能无法受理。

考生通常可以在笔试后第 3 天登录教育部考试中心雅思报名网站查看考试成绩和快递运单号码。受公共假影响，成绩查询日期会有所变化。考试成绩以最终收到的成绩单为准，报名网站成绩信息仅供参考。考试绩无法以电话、传真或电子邮件形式通知考生，英国文化教育协会亦无法提供成绩单复印或成绩核对服务。

任何四项科目考试、未能按照要求在考试结束之前完成现场照相、因违规在考试中被取消考试资格或在后被取消考试成绩的考生均无法收到考试成绩单。如因考生口试录音录像质量问题或其他原因导致评分正常进行，英国文化教育协会 将为考生提供一次免费口语考试。如果考生拒绝参加免费口语考试，成绩将无法正常发放。



## 12. 特殊考试安排

英国文化教育协会将尽最大可能满足有身体障碍的考生需要, 为其提供纸笔考试形式的特殊安排。考生特殊考试安排, 请于考试日期前至少三个月联络教育部考试中心雅思考试全国服务热线 (电子邮箱: [ielts@mail.neea.edu.cn](mailto:ielts@mail.neea.edu.cn), 电话: 010-82345671 (服务时间: 周一到周五: 8:30 - 17:00; 周六、周日 08:30-13:00 (如遇因国家法定节假日调休需上班: 8:30-17:00); 国家法定节假日除外)) 提交特殊考申请及 2 年内由正规医院出具的相关医院证明和 / 或残疾证明。请务必在得到英国文化教育协会确认后, 再进行报名并付费。

## 13. 未成年考生 (11 周岁 (含 11 周岁) 以上, 不满 18 周岁)

未成年考生 (11 周岁 (含 11 周岁) 以上, 不满 18 周岁) 在报名雅思考试时, 需要其监护人协助完成监护人款确认及未成年人保护声明。《雅思考试未成年考生监护人确认书》(" 确认书 ") 需完整填写并由考生本人监护人签字后, 上传至教育部考试中心雅思报名网站。如果考生未能在报名截止日期之前按照要求上传完整的 " 确认书 ", 将无法完成报名流程。考生同时有可能被要求在考试当天提供 " 确认书 " 签字原件。考天, 雅思考务人员将在开考前、考试过程中以及考试结束后全程照看未成年考生。未成年考生将由陪考同前往口试房间。口试过程中, 陪考员将在口试房间内全程陪同未成年考生。口试结束后, 由陪考员陪开口试房间。

## 14. 不可抗力

雅思考试合作方将尽其所能提供一贯优质的考试服务。若考试由于不可抗力原因被中断、取消或延误, 合作方将竭尽全力尽快恢复正常服务。然而, 考试合作方对于由不可抗力原因所造成之任何间接及连带恕不负责。英国文化教育协会对此类情况所负之责任仅限于退还考试报名费或在指定日期安排免费重考次。

我已阅读并完全理解以上《考生注意事项: 雅思考试相关规定及条款》及《中国地区雅思考试考生须知并保证完全遵守所有规定及条款》。我在此确知并同意任何违反以上 " 规定及条款 " 和 / 或 " 考生须知 " 规定的为将导致本人成绩被取消或者作废, 和 / 或被取消本次考试资格甚至有可能被永久取消所有雅思考试资格

## 六、雅思考点信息

关于雅思考试考点信息, 请登录雅思考试官方网站 <https://ielts.neea.cn/> 进行查询。也可以关注东东老师的微信公众平台 " 谢绍东 Shadow " 后回复关键词: " 雅思考点信息汇总 " 即可查询。请注意, 由于考点信息会不断更新, 请大家一切以雅思考试官方信息为准。





## Part 1

本次“剑 10”口语 Part 1 的 4 个话题分别为：Weekends, Music, Travel, School。“剑 10”与之前的真题系列相比，在口语方面并没有太多新意，也没有发生难度上的变化，基本还是常见的考题。

不过剑桥雅思真题系列的口语题目长期以来一直给广大考生一个误导，那就是 Part 1 话题及题目的数量过少。在剑桥雅思真题系列中，每一套口语题目 Part 1 配备的都是 1 个话题（如：Test 1 中的 Weekends，每一个话题下一般有 4 个问题），但正式考试时 Part 1 往往是由 3 个话题组成的，题目数量也就相应地变成了 12 个左右。所以东东老师要在这里提醒各位“烤鸭”，注意这个重要的差别。

我按照本书第六章中讲解的 Part 1 题型对“剑 10”的口语题目进行了标签，大家可以按照我讲过的内容进行练习和回答。另外，这四个话题都是我在本书第七章介绍过的题目，大家如果需要可以随时查阅我在书中为大家提供的思路。当然，为了让大家更直观地感受问答，我也在这里为大家撰写了一套答案，供大家参考。

### ① Test 1 Weekends

（请参考本书第七章第二节选考话题 Weekends）

#### 1. How do you usually spend your weekends? [Why?] 事实信息型题目

Well, usually I just stay at home and go online, because I am not a very social person. Most of my friends would go to clubs or bars, but I'd rather have a cup of tea and read a nice book.

#### 2. Which is your favourite part of the weekend? [Why?] 举例型题目

I think my favourite part of weekend is Saturday, you know, I can cook for myself at home instead of ordering fast food, and I don't have to worry about the alarm clock the next morning. Saturday is the best!

#### 3. Do you think your weekends are long enough? [Why?/ Why not?] 论证型题目

Not really, I always think weekends could be longer, 'cause people need relaxation after hard work. However, in China, students not only have to study during the weekdays, but their weekends are occupied by cram schools and homework. Not to mention their parents also need to work overtime.



#### 4. How important do you think it is to have free time at the weekends? [Why?] 论证型题目

Actually, I think to have free time during the weekends is a must for people, and I think holidays in China should be longer, as people have the right to do things that they like in their spare time. You know, it helps them to release the pressure and refresh themselves. My sister is studying abroad right now, and she told me that there are so many holidays abroad, such as Spring break.

### ② Test 2 Music

(请参考本书第六章第二节选考话题 Music)

#### 1. What types of music do you like to listen to? [Why?] 举例型题目

I am kind of cheesy, so I like pop music. I know many people think pop music is like bubble gum, you know, it doesn't last long, but I don't care. I need to be true to myself and like the things that I like.

#### 2. At what times of day do you like to listen to music? [Why] 事实信息型题目

I think it depends. Time doesn't affect me much on this. I mostly listen to music when I am on a bus or in the subway, so it could be in the morning or late at night.

#### 3. Did you learn to play a musical instrument when you were a child? [Why/ Why not?] 举例型题目

No, I didn't. I wish I had, but the classes were too expensive for my family. We didn't have that much money, so I never learnt to play a musical instrument. Had I got a chance though, I would choose piano.

#### 4. Do you think all children should learn to play a musical instrument? [Why/ Why not?] 论证型题目

I believe this depends on the interests of the kids. If they are interested in this or have the talent, then they should be encouraged to learn; but parents must understand that people are different, as well as their interests. We should not force them to learn.

### ③ Test 3 Travel

(请参考本书第六章第二节选考话题 Travelling)

#### 1. Do you enjoy travelling? [Why/ Why not?] 论证型题目

Absolutely, I love travelling, you know, going to different places and meeting different people there. Through travelling, I can appreciate wonderful scenes, taste delicious food, and gain some



knowledge I would never know in daily life, and the sense of fulfillment.

**2. Have you done much travelling? [Why/ Why not?] 事实信息型题目**

Yes. I love travelling, so I have been to many countries, like the United States, Japan, Thailand and Singapore. I plan to go travelling at least once a year.

**3. Do you think it's better to travel alone or with other people? [Why?] 论证型题目**

I think it depends. For instance, if you want to spend some time with your family or friends, of course you should go with others. But for me, sometimes I go on a trip when I feel upset or overstressed. In that case, I would love to travel all by myself.

**4. Where would you like to travel in the future? [Why?] 举例型题目**

I plan to go to Iceland, which is said to be one of the most beautiful and mysterious destinations for tourists. It is a little bit far away and the cost is quite expensive, so I am still saving money for it.

**④ Test 4 School**

(请参考本书第六章第二节选考话题 School)

**1. Did you go to secondary/ high school near to where you lived? [Why/ Why not?] 事实信息型题目**

Yes, my secondary school is two blocks away from my home, so it took me 10 minutes to walk from home to school, which is really a bless. You know, some of my classmates had to take bus and spend 1 hour on the road.

**2. What did you like about your secondary/ high school? [Why?] 举例型题目**

I think the teachers there are very responsible and kind. I could ask them about anything in study. Also, I like the facilities in my school. It was one of the first schools to have computers and overhead projectors in classrooms.

**3. Tell me about anything you didn't like at your school. [Why?] 举例型题目**

I never liked the cafeteria of my school. The taste of the food is really bad; it was either too salty or too spicy. Besides, I think the menu is too simple. We didn't have too many choices about the dishes.

**4. How do you think your school could be improved? [Why/ Why not?] 论证型题目**

I think they could hire some new chefs and management teams. The food is a major concern for both students and parents. The school board should pay more attention to it.



## Part 2 + Part 3

### Part 2

本次的 Part 2 题目也是考生接触雅思口语时最基本的考题，基本没有难度可言，我在本书的 Part 2 相关章节中也有详细的解析。不过仔细看来倒也暗藏玄机，很多考生看完这四张话题卡肯定觉得这次人物题的比重比较大，Test 1 和 3 的这部分话题卡都是人物题，但在东东老师看来，本次依然是人、地、事、物四大类题目各占其一。请大家看以下列表：

事：Describe someone you know who does something well. (Test 1)

地：Describe a shop near where you live that you sometimes uses. (Test 2)

人：Describe a child that you know. (Test 3)

物：Describe something you don't have now but would really like to own in the future. (Test 4)

Test 1 的 Part 2 话题卡：Describe someone you know who does something well. 这道题比较 tricky，既需要考生描述人物，又需要考生描述事件，但总体来说还是事件占比高，因此学生还是要花相当的精力来描述事件，这也是为什么我在本书第八章第一节的人物题中加了一个专门描述事件的段落，好让大家防患于未然。

### Part 3

虽然正式考试时 Part 3 的随机性非常强，考官可以即兴提问，但是如果将剑桥雅思真题系列的 Part 3 和 Part 2 连起来看的话，还是可以帮助大家更好地了解考试时 Part 2 及 Part 3 是如何一步一步推进的。

另外，我在本书的第十章讲述了如何回答 Part 3 问题的策略，我将问题的类型标注在后面，这样大家可以简单测试一下看看这些 Part 3 的回答策略如何使用。当然，就像我在本书第十章强调过的，Part 3 中的很多问题可以有不同的划分，大家一定要注意灵活使用我们的回答技巧。

## Test 1

### Part 2

(请参考本书第八章第一节)

**Describe someone you know who does something well.**

**You should say:**

**who this person is**

**how you know this person**

**what they do well**

**and explain why you think this person is so good at this.**





### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about my favorite actor Liao Fan. I think he is very good at acting. He just won the Best Actor in 64th Berlin Film Festival. He is one of the most popular actors in China right now, but he is also a comedian, as he has this unique sense of humour, and he shows his comic talent by the lines and facial expressions. For instance, he was so funny in the Jackie Chan's movie CZ12.

He is a natural comedian in my heart. Every time he speaks a line or when he tries to do something serious, I just can't help laughing. For instance, in CZ12, he used a famous line from the computer game Counter-Strike, saying "Fire in the hole" when he was fighting the international criminals. People in the cinema all laughed.

Besides, he can also use his facial expressions to show his feelings, and it is very amusing in the comedic movies like CZ12, as people won't expect him to be serious. In an island scene, he had to fight the soldiers who were after him, he moved very awkwardly. But it made people laugh.

What's more, he speaks both English and Chinese, so both Chinese and foreigners can enjoy his movie in the original flavour. People from all over the world respect him and love him for his hard work and sense of humour.

### Part 3

#### 1. What skills and abilities do people most want to have today? Why? 列举型题目

I think the most popular skills that people want to have nowadays are related with daily life.

You know, the ability to use computer well, which is not only a necessary skill at work, like using softwares such as PPT or Excel, but also a practical skill at free time, such as ordering goods on the Internet and chat with friends online.

Besides, the ability to take good pictures is a plus, as people really like to take pictures and upload them on the social websites. Good photographers are always popular among their friends.

#### 2. Which skills should children learn at school? Are there any skills which they should learn at home? What are they? 条件型题目

I think it depends, for kids in urban areas, they learn all kinds of things at school, not just knowledge, but many other skills, such as swimming and even dancing at some schools.

For kids from rural areas, they not only learn knowledge at school, but they learn how to work on their farms at home with parents.



That's why they learn different things at schools, but they both learn one thing, family education, at home, which is irreplaceable.

**3. Which skills do you think will be important in the future? 列举型题目**

I think the skills that really matters in the future are social networking skills, such as how to make a good first impression or how to interact with friends. I consider those skills more important than skills like conducting experiments in the lab.

You know, just now in my part 2 I mentioned Liao Fan. I think even for a successful actor like him, those skills are still applicative. He also needs to make a good impression to his fans and interact with friends in this industry.

**4. Which kinds of jobs have the highest salaries in your country? Why is this? 列举型题目**

Well, I can think of 3 jobs right now.

The first one is doctor. Being a doctor requires many professional skills, so it is very hard to become one. That's why they have higher salaries.

And the second one is lawyer. Just like doctors, lawyers also need many years of training and practice, so their bonus is really high.

Thirdly, bankers or investors. People who work in the financial area always have relatively higher income than other people, as they have more income resources.

**5. Are there any other jobs that you think should have high salaries? Why do you think that? 列举型题目**

Frankly speaking, I think teachers should have higher salaries, because they really have to devote many extra hours and energies into their work like doctors and lawyers. They deserve more income.

Also, in my mind, policemen should have better income as well, as their jobs are very dangerous, and their daily routines are irregular and harmful to their health.

**6. Some people say it would be better for society if everyone got the same salary. What do you think about that? Why? 优缺点型题目**

I think this plan is ill-concerned. And I can think of two disadvantages right away. One fact is that people's jobs require different skills, some of which are hard to acquire. For instance, a doctor spend at least 5 years at a medical school and another several years as an intern in a hospital. It is unfair for him to get the same salary as a waitress, which requires little training.

Also, motivation stimulates creativity. I always believe that people's pay should be based on the value of their work. I think the developer of Microsoft ware should have higher salary than other mediocre programmer. Otherwise people will feel their work is not properly rewarded, and



they will feel less motivated.

Both those factors have bad influence on our society, so people should receive their pay according to their work performance.

## Test 2

### Part 2

(请参考本书第八章第二节)

**Describe a shop near where you live that you sometimes use.**

**You should say:**

**what sorts of product or service it sells**

**what the shop looks like**

**where it is located**

**and explain why you use this shop.**



### 参考回答

Let me tell you something about a souvenir shop, which is located on the Ellis Island, the shop is inside of a museum with all kinds of souvenirs of the Statue of Liberty, such as the fridge magnet and postcards cut into the shape of it.

That shop really helped me to solve the problem that I had at the moment, you know, I want to buy some gifts for my families and friends, but I couldn't decide what to buy until I saw the mini figure in that shop. There was a shelf full of mini figures of Statue of Liberty.

The statue is the Roman goddess of freedom, who bears a torch and a tabula ansata upon which is inscribed the date of the American Declaration of Independence, July 4, 1776. A broken chain lies at her feet. The statue is an icon of freedom and of the United States: a welcoming signal to immigrants arriving from abroad.

It is a perfect souvenir for me. It is a representative of the spirit of America. As an American icon, the Statue of Liberty has been depicted on the country's coinage and stamps. Every time people look at the mini figure, they will think of the United States.



### Part 3

#### 1. What types of local business are there in your neighbourhood? Are there any restaurants, shops or dentists for example? 列举型题目

Well, I live in the city centre, so there are many restaurants and shops nearby, such as Chinese restaurants, Japanese restaurants and Western restaurants. We have many options if we want to go out for dinner.

But we don't have dentists in the district, the nearest dentist is 30 minutes' walk away from my home. Since we only visit the dentists once a month, it is acceptable.

#### 2. Do you think local businesses are important for a neighbourhood? In what way? 优缺点型题目

I think so. Local businesses have quite some positive effects on the community.

One good thing is that they offer some job opportunities for people, you know, some people can find a job near their home.

Another positive thing is that local businesses always provide convenience to us, you know, you can get daily goods in 5 minutes' walk rather than driving for half an hour.

#### 3. How do large shopping malls and commercial centers affect small local business? Why do you think that is? 优缺点型题目

Admittedly, shopping malls and plaza definitely disperse the costumers from small shops and create pressure for them, because there are more products in shopping centres, in other words, more options for people.

However, I don't think small shops or restaurants will be replaced forever. I mean, can you imagine people go to shopping malls just for a pack of cigarettes? The convenience that community small shops offer will never be replaced by shopping malls ten blocks away.

#### 4. Why do some people want to start their own business? 优缺点型题目

Well, for me, I think it is really easy to understand. People's dreams are different. Some people simply don't like to work for others. I think the freedom and the sense of being in control are what they value the most.

Also, government encouragement has something to do with it as well, as it is beneficial to the economy. We all know big companies aren't always like that. They start from small ones, and then gradually grow into middle-sized or big ones.

When people's dreams meet the environment that government creates, starting people's own business seems to be so reasonable.



**5. Are there any disadvantages to running a business? Which is the most serious? 优缺点型题目**

Well, it is risky for sure. You know, there is no guarantee that small business owners will succeed. There is a good chance that they could fail, for so many reasons, such as the lack of funding, the wrong location or even the decoration that is not what the costumers' like.

Thus, the families of the small business owners will be affected. Once the business goes down, the investment will be gone and it takes time to restore the normal and usual financial conditions of the owners' families. I think this is the most serious disadvantage.

**6. What are the most important qualities that a good business person needs? Why is that? 列举型题目**

Actually, I think there are two qualities that a good business person needs.

Firstly, he should be sensitive about the economic environment, so that he could know when to start and when to quit. I don't think business man is a job for everyone.

Secondly, he should have integrity. Sensitivity might help him to get a good start, but what really matters is one's spirit and morality. Integrity makes his business last.

## Test 3

### Part 2

(请参考本书第八章第一节)

**Describe a child that you know.**

**You should say:**

**who this child is and how often you see him or her**

**how old this child is**

**what he or she is like**

**and explain what you feel about this child.**



### 参考回答

Well, let me tell you something about my nephew Mike. He is 6 years old, and I think he is the cutest boy in the world.

Mike is very generous and funny, so he has many friends in the neighborhood. Also he likes



doing many sports, and he is taller than most of his friends in the kindergarten. My sister used to send him over during the weekends when she and my brother-in-law had to go out.

As we spent more time together, I found out that we had a lot in common, you know, we both love sports and video games, also we share similar personalities. Both of us are easy going and dorky, so we sometimes did stupid things together. Most of them were just pranks; almost every family member has got a little taste of that. We once told my sister Mike failed the math test at school. She was so furious that she shouted at him for like 20 minutes till we told her the truth. It was a good time.

We haven't seen each other for more than 2 years, as he went to Britain with my sister. He is very lovely, and I missed him so much. Maybe next year I will go there and pay him a visit.

### Part 3

#### 1. How much time do children spend with their parents in your country? Do you think that is enough? 条件型题目

I think it depends. In the urban area, kids generally spend more time with their parents, especially during the weekends. It's not ideal, but their conditions are better than those in rural areas. In most rural areas, due to the lack of job opportunities, many parents have to go to other cities to earn money, so they rarely see their kids, maybe once or twice a year at most. I think this is definitely not enough and this will pose a threat to the psychological development of the kids.

#### 2. How important do you think spending time together is for the relationships between parents and children? Why? 优缺点型题目

I think it is very important, as it is very beneficial for the kids. Family education is acquired basically by spending time with parents and imitating parents' behaviour. So the more time kids spend with parents, the better it will be for them. Another good thing is about the psychological development of kids I just mentioned. The absence of parents really is bad for kids' mental growth. There are tons of articles to support this theory. As a result, it is really important for kids to spend time with their parents.

#### 3. Have relationships between parents and children changed in recent years? Why do you think that is? 条件型题目

Definitely, the relationship between parents and children in the past was very traditional and sometimes depressing, as children have to be obedient all the time. However, now they have more open and relaxing relationships. Most of the time they can communicate with each other and



discuss things, and make decisions together.

**4. What are the most popular free-time activities with children today?** 列举型题目

Well, I think most kids, just like my nephew Mike, love to play computer games and stuff like that in their free time. They are really popular. Mike is really into fighting games, such as Street fighter. Some people think maybe it is a little bit aggressive, but I think this kind of game can help develop kids' brain. You know, they react fast and they learn strategy as well.

**5. Do you think the free-time activities children do today are good for their health? Why is that?** 优缺点型题目

I think so, just like I said before. Kids can actually learn things from their leisure time activities, but I also think they need to do all kinds of things, and stick to one thing only is never a good sign. For instance, they can play computer games, but they also need to go out and do some sports, otherwise this is not good for their health. As long as there are some balances, I think all kinds of activities are good.

**6. How do you think children's activities will change in the future? Will this be a positive change?** 条件型题目

I think they will be even more into the computer games, because the technology is evolving every day and the user experience is better and better. It is really hard to resist something so attractive. For instance, people can already play tennis game in living room through Wii. 20 years from now, I can't even imagine how the technology will develop. It benefits the users and pushes the development of technology forward, so, of course, this is positive.

## Test 4

### Part 2

(请参考本书第八章第六节)

**Describe something you don't have now but would really like to own in the future.**

**you should say:**

**what this thing is**

**how long you have wanted to own it**

**where you first saw it**

**and explain why you would like to own it.**



**参考回答**

I really want to buy a jot pro stylus in the future. It is a very popular product in China, which is a capacitive pen for tablets and touch screens, such as iPad. I have waited for almost a month. I didn't want to ask money from my parents, so I am saving for it now.

The reason why I want to buy it is because that it can help me to take notes on my iPad much better than before. Since I downloaded an app called Noteshef accidentally during the free app day, I realized that I could turn my iPad into a serious note-taking machine, which is no longer served as an e-book reader anymore. But there is just one problem about that, you know, typing words is not convenient and is really time consuming on iPad. I wished I could write on the screen like on the paper-made notebook, and it can be time saving and much easier. As a consequence, I started to search on the Internet for solutions.

At last, I found a jot pro stylus in an online shop. According to the comments and recommendations, I like it the best, although it is very pricey, you know, about 400 RMB in average. It has a lot of advantages, for instance, the durable aluminum and steel gives jot superior conductivity and craftsmanship comparable to other capacitive pens. Besides, there is a thin and clear disc on the tip which enhances the accuracy when used. What's more, there is a magnet in it so that you can attach it to the tablet easily when jot is taking a break. That's why I really want to buy it.

**Part 3**

**1. What types of thing do young people in your country most want to own today? Why is this?** 列举型题目

I think fancy gadgets like mobile phones are definitely on the top of the list. People use mobile phones a lot, so it is understandable that they want to have better ones. Also, I think cars are popular as well, since many cities in China now are just very big, and it is inconvenient living without a car.

**2. Why do some people feel they need to own things?** 列举型题目

The sense of importance is one major reason. Some people think owning things, especially the expensive ones will gain themselves the sense of importance. Besides, certain things are very necessary in our daily life, such as cups or shoes. We own them because without them our lives would be so troublesome.



**3. Do you think that owning lots of things makes people happy? Why? 优缺点型题目**

Sometimes yes, people feel upset when there are too many necessary and basic things missing in their life, and that's why poor people feel sad, as they own little. However, I don't think owning things itself will make people happy. Some billionaires are so rich that they can have everything that they want, but still, they are troubled by the things in their life. I think material things can only get you that far; there are always things which cannot be solved by money and procession.

**4. Do you think television and films can make people want to get new processions? Why do they have this effect? 优缺点型题目**

Definitely. I bought a camera after watching the movie Yes Man. First of all, there are many product placements in movies. They all have been perfectly displayed, so they look extremely attractive. Also, the TV or movie stars will use those products when performing, and their influence should not be underestimated.

**5. Are there any benefits to society of people wanting to get new processions? Why do you think this is? 优缺点型题目**

I really don't think so. Many of my friends like to follow the trend and buy new iPhones, but this is really unnecessary, as their old phones are still okay. Their desires are aroused for the things that they don't need. I think this is a waste of money and waste of energy, which is definitely not good for the society.

**6. Do you think people will consider that having lots of processions is a sign of success in the future? Why? 条件型题目**

I think it depends. If people are living in the developed countries, they probably would not think like this 20 years from now, as the more developed an area is, the less people pay attention to this kind of things. Look at European countries, which are highly developed, but they don't value this kind of things as much as people in developing countries.

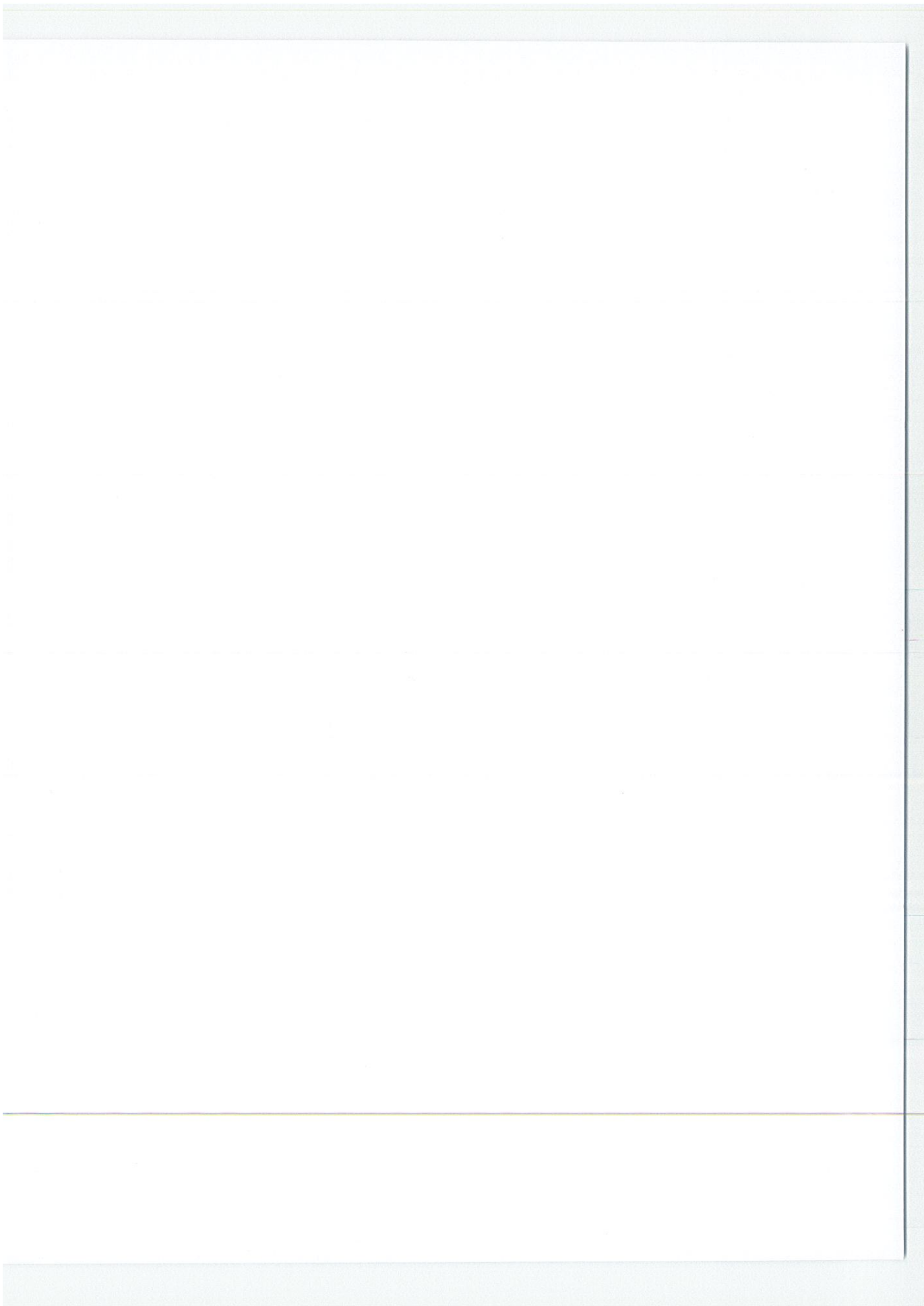
















扫码关注微信公众号“考虫烤鸭”  
干货、经验贴、海外文化俯拾即是



扫码关注官方微博@考虫雅思  
课程上线、抽奖等信息精彩纷呈